

NEW SPANISH VICEROY RECEIVES ORDERS FROM MADRID, SPAIN

Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo received orders from the Spanish government that supported the actions of Chief Pilot Esteban Jose Martinez but the viceroy was to release the captured British vessels and provide compensation to the Associated Merchants for salaries and provisions American trading ship *Fair American* was allowed to quietly sail out of San Blas so Spanish-American relations would not suffer -- early 1790 British Royal Navy Captain (on leave of absence) James Colnett was told Associated Merchants' ships *Argonaut* and *Princess Royal* would be returned to the Associated Merchants

SPANISH VICEROY PREPARES A SMALL FLEET FOR SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND)

Santa Cruz de Nuca (Nootka Sound) was to be reoccupied by the Spanish but Spain wanted no repetition of Esteban Jose Martinez's aggressive actions without just cause Newly appointed 52nd Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo took steps to reestablish the Spanish colony at San Lorenzo Commandant of San Blas Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra issued instructions to occupy and fortify the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) Spanish officers were also ordered to:

- prevent foreign encroachment on the colony;
 - explore and claim "Nueva Galicia" (the west coast);
 - collect data on the Pacific Northwest flora and fauna;
 - conduct scientific meteorological experiments and obtain mineral samples;
- equally as important they were to establish friendly relations with the local Indians and study their culture

Mexican copper sheets were provided to use in the trade for sea otter pelts

NEWS ABOUT THE EVENTS AT NOOTKA SOUND REACHES LONDON

Great Britain's King George III and Prime Minister William Pitt (the Younger) soon learned of the British ships *Iphigenia Nubiana*, *Princess Royal* and *North West America* belonging to the Associated Merchants for trading to the Northwest Coast of America each being captured by Spain's Esteban Jose Martinez British Captain James Colnett and his crew were being held as prisoners at the Spanish naval base at San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)¹ James Colnett's arrest was particularly troublesome in England he was, after all, still an officer of the British Royal Navy on leave of absence Accounts of events surrounding the Nootka Sound Controversy were embellished in England by Captain John Meares and his Associated Merchants partner Richard Cadman Etches

¹ Locations noted in parenthesis (for example Mexico) were not known by that name at the time.

to escalate anti-Spanish sentiment in England to the crisis level

COMMANDANT FRANCISCO DE ELIZA ORGANIZES A SPANISH FLEET FOR SAN LORENZO

Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza was the most senior officer available at San Blas, New Spain
he was promoted to Commandant of Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca

Commandant Eliza was placed in charge of the fleet to be sent north to defend Spain's San Lorenzo
to strengthen the settlement there, chart the waters of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

explore the North Pacific and return the *Princesa Real* (former *Princess Royal*) to the British
Commandant Eliza carried instructions to dislodge any foreigners found at San Lorenzo

Commandant Francisco de Eliza's fleet consisted of four ships:

- Eliza's flagship, *Concepcion*, was a clumsy shallow-draft ship not very good for northern waters
but the frigate was the largest vessel the Spanish had at San Blas;
- Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo commanded the small armed launch *San Carlos* which was assigned
to explore the coast north of San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) and enter (Alaskan) waters;
- Ensign Jacinto Caamano sailed the *Nuestra Senora del Rosario* (or *La Princesa*)
this ship was sometimes called a frigate and sometimes a corvette -- both were three-masted
Caamano would sail directly to San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) but did not sail beyond
- Ensign Alferes Manuel Quimper served as commander of the *Princesa Real*
this was British captain and businessman John Meares' confiscated *Northwest America*
she was to be returned to the British when Royal Navy Captain James Colnett
arrived at San Lorenzo

All of the Spanish officers had instructions to explore, build forts, establish relations with the natives,
convert the natives to the Catholic religion and prevent encroachment of foreigners,
but they were not to molest the Russians in the North Pacific

SEVENTY-SIX SPANISH SOLDIERS ACCOMPANY COMMANDANT ELIZA'S FLEET

In addition to the officers and crewmen of Eliza's expedition

seventy-six soldiers of the First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia (a community in Spain)
under the command of Senior Captain of the Spanish Army Pedro d'Alberni
were to restore Esteban Jose Martinez' old fortifications and barracks at Fort San Miguel
and defend the Spanish colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca if necessary
against incursions by the British and, in particular, the Russians
they brought artillery for the fortified post with them
eighty other men also from Catalonia also were transported to establish the colony

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK ARRIVES IN MACAU, CHINA

Kendrick sailed the *Lady Washington* into Dirty Butter Bay near Macau, China -- January 26, 1790
there he re-rigged the single-masted sloop into a two masted brigantine

that featured a square-rigged front sail and sloop-rigged rear sail
this transformation took so long that most of the year's trading season was lost
part of the time Kendrick had been desperately ill
part of the time he had spent refitting the *Lady Washington*

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS BETWEEN BRITAIN AND SPAIN DETERIORATE

After Esteban Jose Martinez had returned to New Spain (Mexico) with the British ships he had seized then-Viceroy of Mexico Don Manuel Antonio Flores reported a somewhat inaccurate account of Martinez' activities to the Spanish government in Madrid, Spain picking up rumors of an international insult, the outraged British charge d'affaires in Madrid communicated with British Prime Minister Pitt (the Younger) promptly there followed an exchange of stiff notes between the two world powers, but the bristling was done in diplomatic privacy

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY CONDUCTS TRADE IN CANTON, CHINA

As Captain Gray was preparing to sail for Boston near the end of January 1790 he received a letter from Captain John Kendrick his trading partner who had just put into Dirty Butter Bay near Macau, China by return letter Gray suggested that Kendrick hold onto the pelts as the market was depressed In Canton Captain Gray met with agents of the newly established firm of Shaw and Randall to acquire a cargo for Barrel, Bulfinch & Company to transport to Boston

Bill of lading for the shipment was most unique: **Shipped by the grace of God, in good order and condition, by Shaw and Randall, in and upon the good ship called the *Columbia*, whereof is master under God, for this present voyage, Robert Gray, and now riding at anchor at Wampoa, and by God's grace bound for Boston, in America -- to say, 220 chests of Bohea tea, 170 half-chests, do, 144 quarter-chests, do, to be delivered unto Samuel Parkman, Esq. or to his assigns; and so God, send the good ship to her desired port in safety, Amen. Dated at Canton, February 3rd, 1790²**

PRINCESA REAL SETS SAIL FOR SAN LORENZO

It was necessary to speed the Spanish expedition to San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) as quickly as possible -- before any other countries could settle at Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca *Princesa Real* commanded by Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper was the first vessel to leave San Blas -- February 3, 1790 although small, the *Princesa Real* (Associated Merchants former *North West America*) was in better condition than any of the other ships this thirty-nine-foot vessel was armed with seven guns Lieutenant Francisco Eliza on the *Concepcion*, Lieutenant Jacinto Caamano on the *La Princesa*

² Rev. I.D. Drover, D.D., Oregon Pioneer Association, Transactions of the Fifteenth Annual Reunion, 1887, P. 72.

and Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo aboard the armed launch *San Carlos*
would follow as quickly as practical

SPANISH PREPARATIONS CONTINUE ON THE REMAINDER OF ELIZA'S FLEET

Commandant Francisco de Eliza's four-ship fleet was the largest Spanish force
yet to be sent to the northwest

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper's *Princesa Real* had already sailed to San Lorenzo
Eliza's remaining ships prepared to sail without taking many of the necessary supplies
they were loaded with three month's supply of hardtack and other provisions
to permanently establish a colony at Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca
they also carried artillery to fortify Esteban Jose Martinez's abandoned Fort San Miguel

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY DEPARTS FROM CHINA

Captain Gray sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* from Canton, China to Boston -- February 12, 1790
Sailing down the Pearl River Captain Gray passed within sight of Captain John Kendrick's anchorage,
but the two men did not meet as bad weather prevented the possibility
(or so Gray later told the Barrel, Bullfinch and Company owners)

SPANISH FLEET ARRIVES AT SAN LORENZO

Commander of the expedition Commandant Francisco de Eliza sailed the frigate *Concepcion*
accompanied by Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo's armed launch *San Carlos*
and Ensign Jacinto Caamano with *La Princesa*

Eliza, Fidalgo and Caamano arrived at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) -- April 4, 1790
they anchored at the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca

fortunately for Spain no vessels from unfriendly nations had arrived in the area

Commandant Eliza established three lines of defense for the little settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca:

- 300-ton frigate *Concepcion*,
- soldiers under Spanish Army Captain Pedro d'Alberni on land and on the frigate,
- rebuilding of Fort San Miguel and barracks at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

that had been abandoned by Esteban Jose Martinez on San Miguel Island was undertaken

SPANISH SETTLEMENT OF SANTA CRUZ DE NUCA IS ESTABLISHED

Eighty men from Catalonia had been transported north by Commandant Eliza
to re-establish the colony of Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca

Seventy-six soldiers of the First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia
under the command of Senior Captain of the Spanish Army Pedro d'Alberni
began to rebuild Fort San Miguel

Construction of Fort San Miguel and various buildings was difficult

as the fort was located at the top of the small, steep, rocky island

openings and slits in the rock walls of the fort had to be made for the muskets and cannons
it took four days to place eight large cannons -- later six smaller cannons were added

Fort San Miguel was not large enough for eight additional large cannons

Commandant Eliza had brought so they were they were placed in storage on the mainland
Spanish colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca was thus fortified by Fort San Miguel

Other tasks were undertaken to secure the Spanish possession:

- some of the men were put to work planting a garden;
- exploring expeditions were organized;
- Concepcion* carried parts of the *Santa Gertrudis la Magna* (former *North West America*)
which had been dismantled in San Blas
these pieces were used to construct the schooner *Santa Saturnina* named for Eliza's wife
this was the third incarnation of the *North West America*
(*Santa Saturnina* will be used to explore the Strait of Georgia [1791]);
- exploring expeditions were organized

COMPANY OF VOLUNTEERS OF CATALONIA ARE STATION AT SAN LORENZO

Senior Captain of the Spanish Army Pedro d'Alberni commanded the seventy-six soldiers
permanently stationed at San Lorenzo in defense of the Spanish colony if necessary

Army Captain d'Alberni cultivated the first garden in (today's British Columbia)
each week he carefully sowed a row each of many different kinds of vegetables
in order to determine the best sowing times

all of the plants he tried he grew successfully with the exception of wheat and maize (corn)
clearly Pedro d'Alberni expected Spain to be there for a long time

SPANISH EFFORTS TO IMPROVE NATIVE RELATIONS BRING ONLY LIMITED SUCCESS

Nootka Indians remembering the [1789] killing of Maquinna's son Callicum
did not welcome the Spanish when they returned to San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Eliza attempted to improve relations with local natives
however, several hostile encounters initiated by the Spanish occurred

planks were stolen from the houses of Nootka Indians for use by the Spanish
on another occasion five Indians were killed during their attempt to steal some water casks
through diplomacy and hard work Commandant Eliza was able to improve somewhat

Spanish relations with the people of Chief Maquinna

at least some of the Nootka Indians grew friendlier and provided assistance to the Spanish
Eliza focused his attention on preparing the settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca for the (coming winter)

BRITISH CAPTAIN AND BUSINESSMAN JOHN MERES ARRIVES IN LONDON

(Captain John Meares had sailed from Canton, China [December 15, 1789] to deliver in person news of the seizing ships belonging to Richard Cadman Etches Associated Merchants and land Meares claimed to have purchased)

John Meares arrived in London -- April 23, 1790

he suddenly interjected himself into the international furor that London was experiencing
he began to confirm various rumors regarding Spanish aggression in Nootka Sound

Meares hired a press agent

he claimed to have purchased land from Maquinna in exchange for two pistols and trade goods
which had been taken by the Spaniards,

he claimed he constructed a building on this land which was destroyed by the Spanish,
he condemned Esteban Jose Martinez for the killing of Chief Maquinna's son Callicum
and for having forced British Royal Navy Captain James Colnett's Chinese artisans
to work in mines in New Spain (Mexico)

Newspaper articles began to appear: **“A correspondent says, the Spaniards have seized three British vessels, in the fur trade, at King George’s, or Nootka Sound, on the Western Coast of North America, which acted under a sanction of a licence from the East-India and South Sea Companies, and their crews are sent to Mexico in irons. A memorial of the transaction has been transmitted and presented to the Government by a Mr. Meares....”**³

Captain Meares turned the full force of his considerable talents to preparing a suitable expense account
“and in the fullness of time produced one that ranks as a triumph of imaginative literature”⁴

he claimed that his ships were “hulldown” with otter skins when seized;

he inflated the going price for skins;

he stretched his claim to an incredible \$653,000 (1790 Spanish dollars)

Spanish policy of keeping all documents secret regarding her exploration activities

led contemporary writers, including some Spaniards, to accept Meares' version of events

JOHN MEARES PREPARES A *MEMORIAL* FOR THE BRITISH PARLIAMENT

Captain and businessman John Meares and Richard Cadman Etches of the Associated Merchants
jointly began to prepare a Memorial to the British Parliament -- April 30, 1790

Their rendition of the seizing of Associated Merchants' three ships and John Meares' land
was written in terms that heavily favored the their (British) position

John Meares asked for an amazing \$653,000 (1790 Spanish dollars) in damages

PRINCESA REAL ARRIVES AT SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND)

Princesa Real commanded by Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper was an extremely slow ship

³ *The General Evening Post* and *The Whitehall Evening Post*, May 1, 1790

⁴ Murray C. Morgan, *The John Meares Expedition*, P. 22.

although she was the first to sail from San Blas, she arrived last at San Lorenzo -- May 1790
Spain's Fort San Miguel at San Lorenzo was already re-armed,
the settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca was partially built
and a vegetable garden planted
Repairs on the *Princesa Real* were undertaken throughout the month of May
in anticipation of returning British Captain Thomas Hudson's *Princess Royal*
and British Captain John Meares *North West America*

GREAT BRITAIN DELAYS AN EXPEDITION TO THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST

Preparation were underway in England to send a ship to the Pacific coast
George Vancouver was to have sailed on this voyage as second officer to Captain Henry Roberts
who, like Vancouver, accompanied Captain James Cook on his third expedition [1776-1780]
This effort was postponed by the British government when John Meares returned from Nootka Sound
with news that the Spanish had seized British ships and property there -- May 1790

SPAIN'S LIEUTENANT SALVADOR FIDALGO SAILS FROM OF SAN LORENZO FOR ALASKA

Once established at Santa Cruz de Nuca in San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)
Commandant Francisco Eliza dispatched cartographer (map maker) Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo
on the armed launch *San Carlos* to explore the north Pacific Ocean (Alaska)
Lieutenant Fidalgo sailed from San Lorenzo -- May 4, 1790
under orders to conduct a detailed exploration of the coastline
and to investigate the extent of Russian involvement in (Alaska), counter the Russian presence
and reestablish the Spanish claim to the area

BRITISH KING GEORGE III ESCALATES THE NOOTKA SOUND CONTROVERSY

British King George III sent a message to Parliament -- May 5, 1790
His Royal Majesty noted that three ships flying the British flag had been taken by the Spanish
and the Spanish government had established an exclusive right to trade on the Pacific coast
This message provoked an even greater public uproar of anti-Spanish sentiment in England

JOHN MEARES PRESENTS A MEMORIAL TO THE BRITISH HOUSE OF COMMONS

British captain John Mears and businessman Richard Cadman Etches presented a Memorial
which stirred up the members of Parliament -- May 13, 1790

Meares listed Spanish insults to the British flag:

- Supercargo William Douglas' arrest and the banishment from Nootka Sound
of the *Iphigenia Nubiana*;
- seizing of the *Northwest America* under Mr. Robert Funter;
- seizing of the *Princess Royal* under Captain Thomas Hudson;

- seizing of the packet boat *Argonaut* under Royal Navy Captain James Colnett;
- and the kidnapping of one hundred Chinese and Hawaiian artisans, carpenters and laborers

BRITAIN TAKES ADVANTAGE OF THE NOOTKA SOUND CONTROVERSY

Spanish seizures of British Associated Merchant's ships and John Meares' land at Nootka Sound and the detaining of a British Royal Navy captain during a time of peace were an insult to Britain and an offense against the law of nations

Angered by the incidents at Nootka Sound

and by ongoing competition with Spain for the Pacific Northwest

Great Britain's government escalated the Nootka Sound Controversy

satisfaction was demanded by British government for the wrongs inflicted on its citizens

Utmost indignation was felt and expressed in England regarding Spanish insults to the British flag

John Meares' charges gave Britain an opportunity to demolish Spain's claims to North American that had existed since a [1493] Papal Bull established Spain's claim to the New World

JOHN MEARES' ACCOUNTS OF EVENTS AT NOOTKA SOUND COME UNDER DISPUTE

Spain strongly disputed Captain Meares' claims noting they lacked substance:

- Chief Maquinna subsequently denied that any purchase of land had been made by Meares, Maquinna said that the Spanish had the only rightful claim to land at Nootka Sound (facts regarding the amount and ownership of land have not been established to this day);
- Meares' house had been pulled down by British Supercargo William Douglas -- not the Spanish;
- several versions of the killing of Maquinna's son identified several possible killers;
- there were no Spanish mines in New Spain to occupy the Chinese artisans

These conflicting claims became key points in the Nootka Sound Controversy

NOOTKA SOUND CONTROVERSY BECOMES THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS

British Captain John Meares' private woes ballooned into public anguish when the British government issued his *Memorial* as a device to stir up even more popular indignation

Confident though Captain John Meares was he nonetheless must have been surprised

to find the British Foreign Office was already actively involved with the Spanish government

Meares was ushered straightaway into the office of no less a personage

than Prime Minister William Pitt (the Younger) himself

Prime Minister Pitt realized Great Britain could use the Nootka Sound incident to extort from Spain

recognition of the British right to make settlements in any unpopulated area claimed by Spain

Britain did not acknowledge the Spanish Crown's ownership of the Pacific coast

Britain recognized no Spanish claims of sovereignty along the Pacific coast

British diplomacy, if it was successful, could very well

break Madrid's economic and political monopoly on the Americas

EFFORTS TO RESOLVE THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS ONLY MAKE IT WORSE

Spain's most effective statesman, Chief Minister of Spain Jose Monino y Redondo, and Prime Minister William Pitt (the Younger) both became involved in the Nootka Sound Crisis. Pitt demanded that Britain had the right to conduct trade in any Spanish territory they desired despite Spanish laws to the contrary. Pitt knew this claim was indefensible and would likely lead to war, but he felt driven by public cries of outrage directed toward the Spanish government. Britain in an ultimatum to Spain demanded compensation for the insulting actions undertaken by Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza initiating the Nootka Sound Crisis. Prime Minister Pitt went on record as being ready to wage war to sustain the right of British merchants to conduct trade in Asia and the Pacific Northwest.

CAPTAIN JAMES COLNETT HAS BEEN HELD BY THE SPANISH AT MEXICO CITY

British Royal Navy Captain (on leave of absence) James Colnett received word from the Viceroy of New Spain that Associated Merchants company's two ships would be returned. British Royal Naval Captain Colnett's *Argonaut* was in San Blas but the *Princesa Real* (Captain Thomas Hudson's *Princess Royal*) was with Spanish Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper in the north. Captain Colnett was told he could retrieve *Princesa Real* if he sailed the *Argonaut* to San Lorenzo (Nootka) Sound to collect it.

BRITISH ROYAL NAVY CAPTAIN JAMES COLNETT LEAVES MEXICO CITY

Captain James Colnett was returned to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico) -- May 1790 where the *Argonaut* was to be returned to his command but the *Princess Royal* was on her way to Nootka Sound with Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper and was now known as the *Princesa Real*. Captain Colnett began work refitting his ship (he will remain in San Blas until [July]).

SPANISH LIEUTENANT SALVADOR FIDALGO EXPLORES PRINCE WILLIAM SOUND

Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo on the armed launch *San Carlos* entered the Gulf of Alaska. He reached Prince William Sound and investigated (today's Orca Inlet) in a solemn ceremony Fidalgo raised a large wooden cross and re-asserted Spanish sovereignty over the sound which he called "Puerto Cordova" -- May 1790 (the city of Cordova, Alaska located there today retains the name). His explorations found no signs of any Russian presence.

SPAIN MAKES PREPARATIONS FOR WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN

Spain declined to pay compensation to the British for damages during the Nootka Sound incident
war between Spain and Great Britain seemed imminent
Spain had modernized her navy producing new 74-gun ships
and huge 112- and 120-gun three-decker warships
Despite constant shortages of trained crews the Spanish naval force was not to be under-estimated
British naval officers did not do so although British political leaders were less cautious

BRITISH GOVERNMENT MAKES PREPARATIONS FOR WAR

Britain's King George III informed both houses of Parliament
that resolution of the Nootka Sound Crisis could not be reached -- May 25, 1790
Spain was preparing to enforce her claim to Nootka Sound and the Pacific coast
His British Royal Majesty demanded Parliament support the Crown
and maintain the independence of the British flag
British Royal Navy undertook preparations for combat
preparations were begun to construct a fleet of forty warships
which became known as the "Great Spanish Armament of 1790"
Britain's Prime Minister William Pitt (the Younger) contacted both the Dutch Republic and Prussia
asking them to provide support to the British as allies
Dutch Republic, long an ally of France against the British, promised naval support to Britain
this resulted in a shift in Dutch alliance from France to Great Britain
Prussia also agreed to provide military support giving rise to the "Triple Alliance"
of Britain, Holland and Prussia

SPAIN SOUGHT FRENCH AID IN THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS

Spain became alarmed by the actions of the British
angrily Spain called on Louis XVI of France for assistance
under the terms of the Family Compact between the two nations
France had already shifted her support to Britain
also, France was coping with the early stages of the French Revolution [1789-1797]
France would not be able to fight for Spain in an armed conflict
without the French, Spain could not realistically securely hold
their massive North and South American territories in the event of war with Britain

UNITED STATES IS PROTECTED FROM EUROPEAN EVENTS

United States, isolated along the eastern seaboard, was protected from European aggression
however, America's frontier had barely advanced westward from the Appalachian Mountains
toward the Old Northwest region of the Ohio River, Mississippi River and Great Lakes
United States' northern boundary with Canada had not been defined

in the region of the head waters of the Mississippi River and the Great Lakes
Canadian fur traders who occupied the area inspired Indians to trap for them
and to take American scalps

Pacific Northwest coast was a remote mystery a year's voyage removed from the United States.
an unmapped and unexplored route over an unknown continent for an unknown distance
lay between the newest states and the Far West

Spain maintained control over the North American West, Far West and Florida
but the Spanish government was weak, overextended and poorly administered

France, formerly a Spanish ally, had shown little interest in North America
since their defeat during the French and Indian War [1754-1763]

Russia claimed the Far West coast but did not appear to be a serious threat
as the capital city of Moscow was half a world away from the Pacific coast
Great Britain was now exerting pressure to dominate the same region

SPAIN DISPATCHES AN EXPEDITION TO EXPLORE THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

After a month of repairs at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound), *Princesa Real* was made ready to sail
but there was no sign of the British arriving to collect Meares' confiscated (*Princess Royal*)
Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza dispatched Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper
aboard the *Princesa Real* on a two-month exploration of the Strait of Juan de Fuca
which Esteban Jose Martinez believed was the Northwest Passage across North American
Ensign Quimper was accompanied by Gonzalo Lopez de Haro, the first pilot on the *Concepcion*
and Juan Carrasco who served as second pilot

Princesa Real sailed from San Lorenzo to explore the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- May 31, 1790

Quimper followed the earlier route to the Strait of Juan de Fuca

established by Jose Maria Narvaez on the *Santa Gertrudis la Magna* [1789]

(this was John Meares original *North West America*)

sailing south from San Lorenzo Quimper conducted trade with the (Vancouver Island) Indians
they reached the Tla-o-qui-aht Indian village of Opitsaht

where Maquinna had exiled himself after the killing of his son Callicum [1789]

Quimper encouraged the Indian chief to return to San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper sailed *Princesa Real* into Clayoquot Sound

where he undertook its exploration and charted the sound

Ensign Quimper left Clayoquot Sound and began a careful examination the west side (outside)
of (today's Vancouver Island)

SPAIN MAKES INQUIRES TO THE UNITED STATES FOR ASSISTANCE

Spain now without allies in Europe asked for America's support in fighting the British
this provided a good opportunity for America to negotiate with Spain for Florida

and the Western lands
American frontiersmen felt that Eastern United States interests were opposed to supporting them
Northern boundary had not been defined along the head waters of the Mississippi River
and the Great Lakes
Secretary of State Thomas Jefferson's Democrat-Republican Party (anti-British)
supported the West and Far West in their need for a secure international boundary
Jefferson believed Great Britain would win the Nootka Sound Crisis
Britain would surround America and block the national expansion of the United States
this possible encirclement by the British posed a serious threat
Secretary of Treasury Alexander Hamilton's Federalist Party (pro-British)
was not interested in expansion or in opening the Mississippi River and Great Lakes
to trade and commerce

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE PREPARES FOR A SECOND EXPLORING EXPEDITION

Mackenzie was too young and too ambitious to retire after his first expedition
but he had only a passing interest in the fur trade -- he turned his attention to further exploration
Mackenzie had met a Hudson's Bay Company surveyor in Cumberland House -- June 1790
he realized he needed proper equipment and knowledge to use them to determine his location
For a year Alexander Mackenzie labored determinedly to put his Athabasca Department in shape
so he could travel to London to study the new advances in measuring longitude

ENSIGN QUIMPER ENTERS THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Ensign Manuel Quimper continued his slow and careful examination of (today's Vancouver Island)
he named "Bonilla (High) Point," the "Sombrio River" and the "Jordan River"
he added several other Spanish names (which were later changed by British)
Quimper, having entered uncharted water, erected a cross on "Gonzalez Point"
and took possession in the name of His Spanish Royal Majesty Carlos IV
Gonzales Point was named in honor of Gonzales Lopez de Haro, first pilot on this expedition
Princesa Real proceeded east along the southern tip of (Vancouver Island)
Quimper discovered and named the "Canal de Haro" (today's Haro Strait)
(today this body of water serves as the boundary between the United States and Canada)

SPANISH LIEUTENANT FIDALGO CLAIMS (TODAY'S ALASKA) FOR SPAIN

Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo continued his investigation along the Alaskan coast in the *San Carlos*
while trading with the Indians (in today's Prince William Sound) he named several locations
including "Port Gravina" (today's Gravina Point) where he conducted a ceremony
re-asserting Spanish sovereignty over the region
Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo continued down Valdez Arm

he discovered “Puerto Valdez” (Port Valdez) -- June 16, 1790
which he named in honor of Admiral Antonio Valdes head of the Spanish Marines
and Minister of the Indies

Fidalgo sent out an expedition guided by two natives north to (today’s Columbia Bay)
they were the first explorers to approach the (Columbia Glacier)
they did not stay long as loud thunder and “great pieces of snow” were being thrown
they concluded the glacier was an active volcano

QUIMPER TRADES WITH THE INDIANS OF (TODAY’S VANCOUVER ISLAND)

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper anchored the *Princesa Real* outside (today’s Sooke Inlet)
which he named “Puerta de Revillagigedo” in honor of the Spanish viceroy -- June 18, 1790
Manuel Quimper observed approximately 500 Indians who were dressed somewhat differently
from Indians living on the western shore of (Vancouver Island)
their cloaks were made of sea otter pelts, seagull and duck feathers
their hats are not of pyramidal form but flat like the Chinese wore
Quimper traded copper sheets for sea otter skins
he reported on the harvesting and trading of camas bulbs
he also witnessed three “burials” using native canoes

QUIMPER CONTINUES HIS INVESTION OF SOUTHERN (VANCOUVER ISLAND)

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper reached (today’s Victoria, British Columbia) where he named
“Puerto de San Juan” (San Juan Bay) and “Rada de Valdes y Bazan” (today’s Royal Roads)
Quimper anchored in (today’s Esquimalt Harbor) -- June 30, 1790
he named the body of water “Puerto de Cordova” after the 46th Viceroy of New Spain
Antonio Maria Bucareli y Ursua Henestrosa Lasso de la Vega Villacis y Cordova
Quimper claimed the area of (present-day Victoria) for Spain -- July 1, 1790

LIEUTENANT SALVADOR FIDALGO ENTERS COOK INLET

Spain’s Lieutenant Fidalgo sailing the armed launch *San Carlos* sailed south from Port Valdes
and entered Cook Inlet -- during the first part of July 1790
Lieutenant Fidalgo’s expedition to (today’s Alaska) made their first contact with the Russian traders
on the southwestern coast of the (Kenai Peninsula)
which Fidalgo named *Puerto Revillagigedo* -- July 4, 1790
Finding two Russian trading forts at Cook Inlet he continued quickly toward Kodiak Island

ENSIGN QUIMPER EXPLORES (TODAY’S OLYMPIC PENINSULA)

Leaving Puerto de Cordova (Esquimalt Harbor) and crossing the Strait of Juan de Fuca to the south
Manuel Quimper sighted a long spit of land he named “Bahia de Quimper” -- July 4, 1790

(today's Dungeness Spit off the coast of Washington along the Strait of Juan de Fuca)
and the bluff behind (Dungeness Spit) "Punta de Quimper" (Quimper Point)
Spanish Ensign Alferes Manuel Quimper dropped anchor near (New Dungeness)
there the sight of a strange vessel moving without paddles
aroused native (probably S'Klallam) curiosity
two dugout cedar canoes had been following at a distance
six more put out from shore to view the *Princesa Real*
Quimper tried to offer the Indians gifts, but they were suspicious
he noted they wore copper coins and beads in their ears
acquired through trade with Indians at the entrance of the Strait of Juan de Fuca
Quimper mapped two S'Klallam Indian villages and claimed them for Spain -- July 4

SPANISH LIEUTENANT SALVADOR FIDALGO COMES IN CONTACT WITH RUSSIANS

Lieutenant Fidalgo's expedition sailed the armed launch *San Carlos* south from the (Kenai Peninsula)
they reached the main Russian settlement on Kodiak Island (in today's Three Saints Bay)
where he entertained a party of Russian traders
Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo conducted another ceremony of sovereignty
near the Russian outpost of Aleandrovsk (today's Nanwalek, Alaska) -- July 5

ENSIGN MANUEL QUIMPER FINDS THE S'KLALLAM INDIANS LESS TIMID THE NEXT DAY

S'Klallam Indians brought fish, crabs, clams and venison out to the ship to trade -- July 5, 1790
Quimper knocked two water casks apart to obtain iron hoops for barter
he acquired fiber mats, furs, elk hide armor and dog-hair blankets
Indians seemed very pleased and guided the *Princesa Real* to the Dungeness River
where the ship's water supply was replenished

QUIMPER'S SECOND PILOT JAUN CARRASCO EXPLORES FOR TWO WEEKS

Pilot Juan Carrasco in a longboat led an expedition -- beginning July 5, 1790
just beyond the location reached by Manuel Quimper he sighted an opening he thought was a bay
Carrasco named but did not enter "Ensenada de Caamano"
in honor of Spanish explorer Jacinto Caamano commander of the *La Princesa*
(in fact this would later be named Admiralty Inlet by Captain George Vancouver [1792]
and is the entrance to today's Puget Sound)
(During the next two weeks, Juan Carrasco led his expedition around (today's Protection Island)
Juan Carrasco entered Puerto de Quadra (Port Discovery) and named "Quimper Peninsula"
before visiting (Point Wilson)
Pilot Carrasco added several other Spanish names
(Captain George Vancouver re-named several of the features identified by Carrasco)

SPAIN'S LIEUTENANT SALVIDOR FIDALGO SAILS SOUTH FROM (KENAI, ALASKA)

Lieutenant Fidalgo sailed the armed launch *San Carlos* from the Kenai Peninsula (of Alaska) south toward San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) -- July 6, 1790

However, when he attempted to enter the sound he was barred by heavy storms

(Fidalgo led the expedition back to San Blas, New Spain arriving on [November 15, 1790])

BRITISH ROYAL NAVY CAPTAIN JAMES COLNETT SAILS THE *ARGONAUT* FROM SAN BLAS

Captain James Colnett, on leave of absence from the British Royal Navy, was given a passport

by Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes allowing him to sail to San Lorenzo

to receive the *Princess Royal* which had been seized by Esteban Jose Martinez [1789]

Colnett was then to leave the coast because it was, as the viceroy proclaimed, Spanish territory

Colnett was also forbidden to trade with the Indians

Captain Colnett and what remained of the *Argonaut's* crew set out from San Blas

bound for Nootka Sound -- July 9, 1790

QUIMPER EXPLORES THE SAN JUAN ISLANDS

Ensign Alferéz Manuel Quimper sailed from the area of (Dungeness Spit) to the northeast

Princesa Real reached the (San Juan Islands)

Quimper named "San Juan Island," "Lopez Island," "Fidalgo Island," "Boca (bay) de Flon"

(Deception Pass) and "Boca de Fidalgo" (Rosario Strait) -- July 1790

he named what he thought was a bay in honor of Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo

Quimper reached the of what he named "Gulfo de Gaston" (Bellingham Bay)

during a brief encampment near the mouth of (present day Padden Creek)

several of Quimper's men reportedly found a group of hostile Lummi natives

who drove Quimper's men back to their rowboat

Returning to the southwest Ensign Alferéz Manuel Quimper identified (Sequim Bay)

he charted and named "Doca (Dock) de Bodega y Quadra" (Port Discovery)

QUIMPER TAKES POSSESSION AT NEW DUNGENESS

Ensign Alferéz Manuel Quimper took formal possession of the region

in the name of His Spanish Majesty Carlos IV -- July 18, 1790

Quimper placed a Holy Cross close to a pine tree on which another cross was cut in the bark

at the foot of the tree the "bottle of possession" was buried

Quimper named "Punta de Santa Cruz" (at the unincorporated town of Dungeness, Washington)

he dubbed the bay "Puerto de Quimper" (Dungeness Bay)

Alferéz Manuel Quimper sailed the *Princesa Real* sailed out of Porto de Quimper

as he continued his investigation of the south (Washington) side of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

SPANISH ENSIGN QUIMPER CONTINUES HIS SLOW, DETAILED EXPLORATION

Ensign Alferéz Manuel Quimper and Pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro made a slow careful examination of the Strait of Juan de Fuca as they paid particular attention to possible harbors and colony sites they charted and took possession of all they found

Princesa Real reached the mouth of the (Elwha River) and continued westward with the outgoing tide -- July 21, 1790

SPAIN AND ENGLAND ESCALATE THEIR POSITIONS

By now Spain had ordered her fleet of navy ships to mobilize she had received a promise of fourteen ships of the line from France's King Louis XVI as one European monarch came to the aid of another monarch

British Parliament reacted to this French support by voting a war chest of a million British pounds and dispatching troops to the West Indies where they would be close to Spain's rich colonies

QUIMPER ENDS HIS EXPLORATION OF THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Ensign Alferéz Manuel Quimper and Pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro aboard the *Princesa Real* continued their slow and detailed exploration of the inland waters of the Strait of Juan de Fuca Finally, a lightning storm convinced Quimper to end his pleasant voyage of exploration or they might miss the favorable winds back to San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) and run out of food Quimper continued sailing westward with the outgoing tide on their way toward San Lorenzo they sailed past (today's Port Angeles)

Princesa Real anchored for the night near (today's Clallam Bay) -- July 31, 1790

ALFEREZ MANUEL QUIMPER REACHES NEAH BAY

Continuing to sail with the tides Quimper stopped at "Bahia de Nunez Gaona" (Neah Bay) which he named after Spanish Admiral Manuel Nunez Gaona (this name was later removed by the British and the location was renamed Neah Bay)

There he and Pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro raised a cross and took formal possession in the name Spain's King Carlos IV -- Sunday, August 1, 1790

on the Strait of Juan de Fuca about five miles east of Cape Flattery

As the *Princesa Real* continued around the western tip (of Washington State)

Makah Indian Chief Tatoosh hailed the ship (at today's Pillar Point)

Quimper described being met by Indians in two canoes who directed the Spanish to fresh water and gave them salmonberries

Quimper sighted and named "La Gran Montagna Carmelita" (Mount Baker)

because the mountain reminded him of the flowing white robes

worn by the Catholics of the Order of the Brothers of Our Lady of Mount Carmel

(Mount Baker was renamed by British Captain George Vancouver [1792])
Quimper and his men successfully conducted trade with the Makah Indians of the region
Princesa Real spent eleven days here as Indians swarmed out to barter fish, salmon berries
and salmon weighing one hundred pounds or more

SPANISH SAILOR IS KILLED BY INDIANS

Ensign Quimper was cautious about sending men ashore but the Spanish had washing to do
a creek emptying into the bay seemed a good place to do it
After several sailors had been ashore for about an hour, a commotion occurred
as a soldier hungry for berries entered the forest
while he was off guard, natives stole his cutlass and struck him on the head
they also shot arrows at him but fearing Spanish guns the Indians fled
badly wounded the sailor was found by his companions -- they all returned to the *Princesa Real*
Alferez Manuel Quimper took possession of two canoes left by the attackers
and waited to see what would happen next
Chief Tatoosh, in whose territory the attack had taken place, sent word the next morning
that he had punished the guilty tribesmen
Quimper dispatched the canoes to the chief and gave him presents
Tatoosh traded a quantity of sea otter pelts with Quimper
Spaniards surveyed the harbor, cut fire wood and obtained new masts for their ship
fortunately, the remainder of their visit near Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) was uneventful

QUIMPER PROCEEDS TOWARD SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND)

Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) was not well suited for mooring large ships
but it offered Spain a ready base at the northwest tip of the (Olympic Peninsula)
for protecting her political and commercial interests in this region
Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper sailed the *Princesa Real* out of Bahia de Nunez Gaona
Makah Indians were sorry to see them go and brought gifts up to the very last day
Quimper and Pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro turned toward San Lorenzo -- early August
they continued their leisurely pace as they traveled north along the outside of (Vancouver Island)

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK IS A POOR BUSINESSMAN

Kendrick paid for the refurbishing of the *Lady Washington* with the money he had received
from furs given to him by the Spanish at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) to be sold in China for them
then Kendrick sold the *Lady Washington* to himself in a sham transaction
Pelt market prices were low, Chinese officials were difficult, refitting the ship was expensive
and Captain John Kendrick appears not to have been scrupulously honest
after this visit to Macau there were no returns for Boston's Barrel, Bulfinch & Company

from the sale of pelts, sandalwood, or the ship

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY RETURNS TO BOSTON

Three years after first sailing from Boston on the *Lady Washington* American Captain Robert Gray returned home on the *Columbia Rediviva* -- August 9, 1790

after exchanging ships with his trading partner John Kendrick

Captain Robert Gray was warmly welcomed on his return

all of Boston turned out in its best attire to welcome the returning ship, officers and crew

Gray was greeted at the dock by Governor of Massachusetts John Hancock

Boston Harbor's fort gave the ship a federal salute of thirteen guns, and **“three huzzas” rose for a “great concourse of citizens assembled on the various wharves”**⁵

Governor Hancock held a reception in the American seafarers' honor to which the leading men of Massachusetts came

Gray attended the event in formal attire marching down the middle of the street

followed closely by “Crown Prince” Attoo, his Kanaka (Hawaiian) attendant

who was described as a living flame, clad in a crested feather helmet

and a feather cloak of golden suns set in scarlet

Captain Gray had many a tale to spin for his listeners at the reception

not the least interesting was his eyewitness version of the squabble

between the British and the Spanish at Nootka Sound

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY'S TRIP INCREASES AMERICAN PRESTIGE

Columbia Rediviva did not bring a profitable return on the owners' original \$49,000 investment

Columbia spent two seasons gathering furs on the coast but the furs had not sold well in Canton cargo of Chinese teas carried to Boston had been partially damaged

sponsors of the trip, Barrel, Bullfinch and Company had made very little money

Gray blamed his partner John Kendrick for the poor return on investment

Still, Captain Robert Gray's journey was immensely profitable in terms of American prestige

Gray had sailed 42,000 miles to become first American captain to circumnavigate the globe

and *Columbia Rediviva* was the first American ship to accomplish that feat

in some of the most remote parts of the world

Company partners met in Bulfinch's library and the partnership reorganized

two of the partners decided to withdraw

but the others considered prospects promising enough to warrant a second venture

Columbia Rediviva was overhauled and outfitted for a second trip

Captain Robert Gray was promoted to a full partnership while Captain John Kendrick was not

Captain Gray was given full command of the trading operation

⁵ David Lavender, *Land of Giants*, P. 36.

PRINCESS REAL REACHES SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND)

Spanish Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper accompanied by first pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro were unable to enter the port of San Lorenzo for six days due to heavy fog
Princesa Real (the former *Princess Royal*) turned toward Monterey, California -- September 1, 1790
she entered that port -- September 12

SPAIN IS IN A WEAK POSITION REGARDING THE THREAT FROM GREAT BRITAIN

Six nations originally competed for the vast region along the Pacific coast
Portugal, France, Russia, Spain, Great Britain and the United States
Portugal and France had been eliminated early on
two countries remained very active in the Pacific coast trade
United States sent one hundred eight trading ships in search of sea otter during this decade
Great Britain sent twenty-two ships during the same years
Portugal and France had only a handful of ships trading off the Pacific coast
Spain, finding itself without allies and in a weak position, decided to negotiate to avoid war
King Carlos IV declared he would make good all losses suffered at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)
however, his Spanish Majesty himself would make the decision
regarding the details of any settlement

CAPTAIN GRAY ATTRACTS AMERICAN COMPETITION IN THE SEA TRADE

When Captain Robert Gray returned to Boston on the *Columbia Rediviva*
other merchants became encouraged to send their own ships to trade for furs
Seventy-ton Brigantine *Hope*, an ironically named former slave ship,
was owned by Thomas H. Perkins and James Mages
Hope left Boston bound for the Queen Charlotte Islands [renamed Haida Gwaii in 2007]
sailing under twenty-eight-year-old Joseph Ingraham -- September 16, 1790
Ingraham was the former first mate under Captain Robert Gray on the *Columbia Rediviva*

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY PREPARES A SECOND TRIP TO THE PACIFIC COAST

Columbia Rediviva was better outfitted for this return to the Pacific coast
Captain Gray was placed in full command with a cargo of trading goods worth \$25,000
2,000 bricks, 135 barrels of beef, sixty barrels of pork, 1,500 pounds of gunpowder,
five hogsheads of New England and West Indian rum and quantities of tea, sugar,
chocolate, and miscellaneous items such as copper sheet, **“Barr Iron, Iron Hoops,
“Chissells, blue duffil, (sic) scarlet coating, buttons by the gross,”**⁶
and other items

⁶ Oscar Osburn Winther, *The Old Oregon Country: A History of Frontier Trade Transportation and Travel*, P. 19.

In preparation for his sailing, Gray received an official letter from President George Washington to serve as his passport: **“To all Emperors, Kings, Sovereign princes, State and Regents and to their representative officers Civil and military, and to all others whom it may concern:**

I, George Washington, President of the United States of America, do make known that Robert Gray, Captain of a ship called the *Columbia*, of the burden of about 230 tons, is a citizen of the United States, and that the said ship which he commands belongs to the citizens of the United States; and as I wish that the said Robert Gray may prosper in all his lawful affairs, I do request all the before mentioned and each of them separately, when the said Robert Gray shall arrive with his vessel and cargo, that they will be pleased to receive with kindness and treat him in a becoming manner, &c., and thereby I shall consider myself obliged.

**Sept., 16, 1790, New York City
Geo. Washington
President**

**Thomas Jefferson
Secretary of State⁷**

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY BEGINS HIS SECOND EXPEDITION TO THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST

On their first effort American captains John Kendrick and Robert Gray had made very little profit for their financial backers: Barrel, Bullfinch and Company

however some of the partners believed a profit could be made with a few minor adjustments their company was reorganized

Columbia Rediviva set sail from Boston bound for Clayoquot Sound -- September 28, 1790

NOOTKA SOUND CONVENTION IS SIGNED TO RESOLVE THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS

Both Spain and England were confronted with the French Revolution which was a far more dangerous situation to each nation's monarchy than was the Nootka Sound Crisis

in view of the possible revolutionary menace Spain and Great Britain

agreed to sign the purposefully vague Nootka Sound Convention -- October 28, 1790

(this is sometimes called the “Nootka Agreement”)

Nootka Sound Convention held that property owned by the British at Nootka Sound would be returned Associated Merchants ships *Princess Royal*, *Argonaut* and *North West America* were to be returned Meares' claim of other property losses proved to be more difficult to resolve

British held that John Meares had in fact purchased the whole of Nootka Sound from Maquinna as well as some land to the south

Spain claimed that the only land purchased by Meares was the small parcel where John Meares had built the small sloop *North West America*

⁷ Gordon Speck. *Northwest Explorations*, P. 153-154.

(in fact, no land or buildings had been seized by Spanish Lieutenant Esteban Jose Martinez during the Nootka Sound incident)

Nootka Sound Convention also held the northwest coast was open to traders of both Britain and Spain each nation was free to navigate and fish in the Pacific Ocean and to trade and establish temporary settlements to support fishing on unoccupied land

Complicating the issues surrounding the Nootka Crisis was the changing role of the Nootka Indians in relation to Britain and Spain

Nootkas had become highly suspicious and hostile toward Spain following the [1789] killing of Chief Maquinna's son Callicum but the Spanish had worked hard to improve the relationship

Both countries agreed negotiators would be sent to Nootka Sound to resolve the land ownership dispute and other issues and work out the details of a final settlement

Spain retained control of Nootka Sound until the details of the agreement could be worked out (this diplomatic process took several years)

Spain continued to garrison her colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at (Friendly Cove) on San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

John Meares and Parliament appeared to be unsatisfied with this resolution

MUCH OF THE NOOTKA SOUND CONTROVERSY REMAINS UNRESOLVED

Although restitution of the British Associated Merchants' ships *Princess Royal*, *Argonaut* and *North West America* was already being undertaken by the Spanish government in New Spain (Mexico), Great Britain continued to make an issue of the affair although the British were not anxious to unravel the truth regarding John Meares' land issues at Nootka Sound or to weigh the merits of the competing claims

Britain wanted to provoke more general issues than the claims of John Meares:

- could claims to sovereignty be established simply on the grounds of discovery and the act of taking possession, or was occupation a requirement to be a legitimate claim?
- was the Pacific Ocean a closed sea limited to Spanish navigation, or was it an open sea with reciprocal freedoms for subjects of both powers to fish and trade its unsettled parts?

TWO SHIPS OF COMMANDANT FRANCISCO DE ELIZA'S EXPEDITON RETURN TO SAN BLAS

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper and Pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro with the *Princesa Real* reached San Blas, New Spain (Mexico) -- November 13, 1790 ending their successful exploration of (Washington's inland waters -- today's Salish Sea)

Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo arrived back in San Blas, New Spain (Mexico) with the armed launch *San Carlos* -- November 14, 1790

after his successful exploration of the mysterious waters of the north Pacific Ocean (Alaska)
Spanish cartographers (map makers) busied themselves filling in newly discovered details

INFORMATION REGARDING FRANCISCO DE ELIZA'S EXPEDITON IS TROUBLING

Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo was surprised to learn that the *Princesa Real* (Captain and businessman John Meares' *Princess Royal*) was still in Spanish possession

he dispatched a message to the Court in Madrid recommending the return of the vessel to the British at Macau, China

he also sent a report of Quimper's explorations of the Strait of Juan de Fuca with nine of his charts
Viceroy Juan Vicente de Guemes was appalled by the lack of scientific interest in the Indians

and the rather laconic descriptions of life and conditions at Nootka Sound in the explorers' reports

Juan Vicente de Guemes was further distressed when he learned that valuable copper sheet had been given as gifts to the Indians by Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Santa Cruz
these copper sheets were to be used to gauge the potential of the sea otter trade

it was Guemes' opinion a few trinkets and old scrap metal would do for gifts

Guemes' complaint only displayed the viceroy's ignorance regarding the situation at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) and along the north Pacific coast:

- there was little time to engage in scientific experiments;
- Indians refused to trade for inferior goods when the British and American traders offered copper, weapons and other desirable items

SPAIN ATTEMPTS TO MAKE AMENDS WITH THE BRITISH GOVERNMENT

Viceroy Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo ordered Ensign Manuel Quimper to sail from San Blas to The Philippines and deliver the *Princesa Real* to James Colnett when he arrived there

(Quimper did not connect with Colnett in The Philippines)

Quimper remained in command of *Princess Royal* (*Princess Royal*) until the ship was delivered to her British Associated Merchants owners at the Sandwich Islands [Hawaii])

SPAIN PROPOSES A BOUNDARY IN THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST TO THE BRITISH

Spain hoped to create a more defensible situation by withdrawing some of her former claim

Spain's King Carlos IV proposed to Great Britain that the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca could serve as the boundary between Spanish and British territory -- winter 1790-1791

Spain would maintain its claim of all land south of the Strait

Britain could possess all land north of the Strait to 60° north latitude

as the region beyond was claimed by Russia

if Britain accepted the proposal Spain would have to relocate Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca

and Fort San Miguel to a site south the of the Strait of Juan de Fuca
Spain prepared to construct a new colony in the Pacific Northwest to defend her territory
Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vincent de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo sent orders
to Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza
to prepare another exploring expedition to search for new locations to colonize
and to further explore the region
this time the expedition was to be led by Commandant Eliza

WINTER AT SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND) IS DIFFICULT

Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza and the Spanish faced a harsh winter
in the settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)
both Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo's *San Carlos*
and Alferez Manuel Quimper on the *Princesa Real* had sailed for San Blas
no other vessel could be spared from the colony to sail to San Blas -- winter 1790-1791
information was slow to arrive in Mexico City regarding the potential of the
Spanish northern territory or about whether the Indians were being attracted to Catholicism
Eliza, the crew of the *Concepcion*, the First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia soldiers
and the additional volunteers from Catalonia began to suffer great privation
lack of fresh food resulted in outbreaks of scurvy
stores of biscuits were either rotted from the humidity or were consumed by hordes of rats
during the winter nine men died
Commandant Eliza had to send thirty-two soldiers and sailors to Monterey, California
suffering from a variety of ailments including colds, rheumatic pains and dysentery
In spite of these harsh conditions Eliza collected information during the quiet winter months
(he later was able to present his superiors with a comprehensive view of the country, its inhabitants
and its potential usefulness to Spain
he was impressed by the Indians' canoes and their maritime skills
he described their methods of fishing and whaling and observed their ceremonies
like many other Spanish observers he had nothing good to say about the climate
or the potential value of the northwest coast
he believed San Lorenzo's only promise lay with the maritime fur trade
but he noted that sea otters were being rapidly depleted
and that the Indians were losing interest in trade goods)

BRITISH ROYAL NAVY CAPTAIN JAMES COLNETT ARRIVES IN NOOTKA SOUND

British Navy Captain James Colnett reached Nootka Sound aboard the *Argonaut*
to collect the *Princess Royal* -- January 4, 1791
John Mears' ship that had been seized by the Spanish [1789]

However before Colnett arrived the *Princesa Real* (*Princess Royal*) had sailed for San Blas under the command of Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper therefore it could not be returned to Colnett as required by the Nootka Convention (Colnett spent about three months trading along the Pacific coast acquiring about 1,100 sea otter pelts when he finished trading he sailed to China by way of the Sandwich Islands)

SPAIN DEALS WITH THE RETURN OF THE ASSOCIATED MERCHANTS' SHIPS

Governments of Spain and Great Britain agreed that the *Princesa Real* (*Princess Royal*) would be returned to representatives of its in Macau, China
Commander of San Blas Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra issued orders from San Blas to now-Lieutenant Manuel Quimper to take the *Princesa Real* to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) to chart those waters and then sail to the Philippines to turn his vessel over to Philippines Governor-General Felix Berenguer de Marquina or his representative who would then have it returned to the British at Macau, China
Alferez Manuel Quimper sailed the ship from San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)⁸ -- February 14, 1791

BRITISH TAKE STEPS TO RESOLVE THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS

Nootka Sound Crisis made it imperative that someone be sent to the Pacific Northwest to represent the interests of the British government in resolving the issues that remained in dispute and to receive the property once owned by Richard Cadman Etches' Associated Merchants although the real estate claimed by British captain John Meares remained unresolved
British Royal Navy Captain George Vancouver was selected as that representative
Vancouver had been preparing for an expedition to the South Seas when Captain John Meares made his appeal to the British Parliament demanding the return of his ships, land and buildings he allegedly had seized by Spanish Pilot Esteban Jose Martinez [1788] and damages to Meares for the financial injuries he suffered
Captsin Vancouver was only thirty-four-year-old but he was a seasoned sailor and an established surveyor and navigator

SPANISH COMMANDANT FRANCISCO DE ELIZA PREPARES AN EXPLORING EXPEDITION

Commandant of San Blas Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra sent instructions to Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza proposing further exploration of the Strait of Juan de Fuca to be led by Eliza himself
Eliza was to report fully on its geography, resources and inhabitants
Commandant Francisco de Eliza decided to use a two-ship fleet for his exploration activities
Lieutenant Lopez Goazalo de Haro's small packet boat *San Carlos* was Eliza's ship for this voyage with Juan Pantoja y Arriaga and Jose Antonio Verdia served as first and second pilots

⁸ Locations noted in parenthesis (for example Mexico) were not known by that name at the time.

Schooner *Santa Saturnina*, a new thirty-nine foot schooner with seven guns,
served as consort and was be used to explore shallower waters
(this was the third incarnation of the North West America built at Nootka Sound [1788]
as the parts to the ship had been brought from San Blas to be reconstructed
this time she had been named for Eliza's wife)
Santa Saturnina was commanded by twenty-three-year-old Jose Maria Narvaez
Juan Carrasco served as pilot

VANCOUVER WAS ALSO TO EXPLORE AND CLAIM THE PACIFIC COAST FOR BRITAIN

He was to proceed to the Pacific coast of North America for the purpose of making an accurate survey
between 30° north latitude and Cook's River (60° North)
and to determine the number of settlements along the coast

Captain Vancouver was further instructed to bear in mind the need for **“acquiring accurate information with respect to the nature and extent of any water communication which may tend in any considerable degree to facilitate an intercourse for the purpose of commerce between the North West coast and the countries upon the opposite side of the Continent, which are inhabited or occupied by His Majesty's subjects.”**⁹

he was specifically instructed to search for the Northwest Passage across the continent
and note: **“The discovery of a near communication between any such sea or strait, and any river running into or from the Lake of the Woods would be particularly useful.”**¹⁰

that such a river existed was reinforced by fanciful maps drawn by Montreal fur traders
whose information was based on the conjecture and guesses of Indians

Peter Pond had sent such a map to the British government [1785]

but he was **“not to pursue any inlet or river further than it shall appear to be navigable by vessels of such burthen as might safely navigate the Pacific Ocean.”**¹¹

lastly, he received directions to **“cooperate and treat in a friendly manner anyone they might meet from ‘any other Power or State’, and should he meet any Spanish subjects he was ‘to offer to him that they should make to each other reciprocally a free and unreserved communication of all Plans and Charts of Discoveries made by them in their respective voyages’.”**¹²

COMMANDER GEORGE VANCOUVER WAS WELL-CHOSEN FOR HIS ASSIGNMENT

George Vancouver was born [June 22, 1757] to John Jasper Vancouver and his wife Bridget
he was the youngest of five children in the well-to-do family
from boyhood he had been trained to think clearly and work hard

⁹ Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest*, P. 85.

¹⁰ Joseph Schafer, *A History of the Pacific Northwest*, P. 20.

¹¹ Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest*, P. 85.

¹² Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest.*, P. 85.

his mother died when he was eleven
he completed his formal education at age fifteen and joined the British Royal Navy
he was trained in a harsh school dealing with rough men
with uncharacteristic modesty Vancouver attributed his wisdom and good judgment
to his teacher whom Vancouver admired and respected
Vancouver went to sea with Captain James Cook's second expedition aboard HMS *Resolution*
he served as a midshipman [1772-1775]
he also accompanied Cook's third voyage [1776-1780] this time aboard the *Discovery*
Vancouver was with Cook when he met his death in the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)
when Vancouver returned to England he was promoted to naval lieutenant at age twenty-three
After training with Captain Cook he sailed and observed under the best of England's commanders
he spent considerable time globe-trotting in the Society Islands, the Marquesas Islands,
New Zealand, New Hybridize and New Caledonia
Vancouver saw plenty of floggings and watched cannibals boil and eat human heads
yet he was not seriously brutalized or coarsened by these sights

VANCOUVER ASSUMED ALL RIGHTS AND PRIVILEGES OF A BRITISH OFFICER

Vancouver was an English officer with all of the rights and privileges of the position
he considered himself a gentlemen -- that is, superior to most other men
harsh and full of self-pride as was the custom of the navy at that time
Vancouver possessed a quick temper but was honest beyond question
he possessed no use for, or sympathy with, other people's ideas
opposing views from subordinates were rewarded with time in the ship's brig
Vancouver always maintained strict military control -- some thought him cold-blooded
he was known to use cruel and unusual punishments for the slightest infractions
he always wore the lash (whip) around his wrist as was the custom
ready to apply it to the bare backs of obstinate sailors
solitary confinement in brig in chains with bread and water were ordinary punishments
he could and once did use the death penalty when he ordered a sailor shot with a pistol ball

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER PREPARES HIS EXPEDITION

Vancouver's flag ship was the 337-ton sloop-of-war HMS *Discovery* was built [1789]
its ninety-six feet of plank deck was sheeted with copper
she had a keel of seventy-nine feet with a beam of twenty-seven feet four inches
she carried ten four-pounder cannons and ten swivel-guns
she carried a standard crew of one hundred
As Master of the *Discovery* George Vancouver had great confidence in his own judgment and skill
he was an unrelenting and careful officer

he proved to be a most accurate and painstaking observer
(as he examined more of the North American coast line in an open boat than anyone)
Vancouver's consort ship, *Chatham*, was a newly constructed armed tender with crew of forty-five
she was placed under the command of Naval Lieutenant-Commander William Robert Broughton
Vancouver and Broughton had been shipmates on previous voyages
135-tons burden *Chatham* was eighty feet long with a twenty-two foot beam
she carried four three-pounders and six swivel-guns
her decks also were sheeted with copper

Captain George Vancouver was allowed to choose his own officers and men
he selected the finest one hundred thirty-four sailors the British could offer
like Vancouver all of his men were unmarried although one "Widow's man" was listed
as was the practice at the time this fictitious sailor was kept on the navy's books
in order to make payments to the families of dead crew members
to keep widows from being destitute

oldest man on the expedition -- Lieutenant Joseph Whidbey was thirty-nine years old
Whidbey was the best man with instruments on the expedition
a fine mathematician, he had perfected a method of surveying from small boats
his system was to land on conspicuous points and take compass bearings
of other prominent landmarks and, whenever possible,
make observations of the sun at noon to determine his latitude
as the boats cruised between landings the officers sketched and took notes
when they returned to the *Discovery* the data was placed on a smooth map
and added into the charts already drawn

next oldest crewman was thirty-eight-year-old Archibald Menzies the ship's doctor and surgeon
he was a member of the British Royal Society and was a botanist and naturalist
Menzies had sailed on the *Prince of Wales* with Captain James Colnett [1786]
and had made a large collection of plants during that tour
among his discoveries was a species of bush, arbutus, that grows on the coast
it was named "Arbutus menziesii"

Second Lieutenant Peter Puget was twenty-six or twenty-seven years old
his exact birthday remains unknown
Peter Puget's father was a wealthy banker who had died when his youngest son was three
Puget became enrolled as a Midshipman in the British Royal Navy at age twelve
he was commissioned an officer at age twenty-three

GEORGE VANCOUVER EXPEDITION SETS SAIL FROM ENGLAND

Captain Vancouver sailed the HMS *Discovery* from Falmouth, England -- April 1, 1791
accompanied by HMS *Chatham* sailed by Lieutenant-Commander William R. Broughton

(Vancouver noted four years later: “No small portion of mirth passed amongst the seamen, in consequence of our having sailed from old England on the first of April, for the purpose of discovering a north-west passage.”¹³)

Their route took them by way of the Cape of Good Hope around the southern tip to Africa to Australia, New Zealand, Tahiti and the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) to the Pacific coast (this journey took through the [winter of 1791-1792]) and was, of course, summer season for the Southern Hemisphere)

LIEUTENANT ALFREZ MAUNEUL QUIMPER CHARTS THE SANDWICH ISLANDS

As Spanish Lieutenant Quimper conducted his exploration and charting of the Sandwich Islands he had a tense encounter with British Royal Navy Captain on leave of absence James Colnett who demanded an explanation from Quimper as to why the *Princesa Real* (*Princess Royal*) had not yet been returned to the British -- April 1, 1791

Lieutenant Quimper explained his orders were to chart the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) and then take the *Princesa Real* (*Princess Royal*) to the Philippines to be turned over to another Spanish officer for transport to Macau, China
British Royal Navy Captain James Colnett became angry and prepared to seize the ship by force this quarrel was calmed by John Kendrick, Jr. the son of Captain John Kendrick who had entered Spanish service and was on board the *Princess Royal* during the intense discussion Quimper slipped away with the *Princesa Real*

DAVID THOMPSON’S APPRENTICESHIP FOR HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY COMES TO AN END

Hudson’s Bay Company clerk David Thompson had spent two winters [1789-1791] at Cumberland House on the Saskatchewan River recovering from his severely broken leg during that time he developed his mathematical, astronomical and surveying skills guided by Hudson's Bay Company surveyor Philip Turnor
it was at this time that he lost the sight in his right eye as he took sightings of the sun
David Thompson became a Hudson’s Bay Company fur trader when his apprenticeship ended rather than receiving the fine clothes that were usually offered by the company to mark the occasion
Thompson requested a set of surveying tools -- the company gave him both

SPANISH LIEUTENANT ALFREZ MANUEL QUIMPER SAILS FOR THE PHILIPPINES

Lieutenant Quimper completed his exploration of the islands of Hawaii, Maui and Oahu he sailed the *Princesa Real* for the Philippines -- April 19, 1791
(and arrived at Manila, Philippines in [June 4] as ordered where he turned over his ship to Vicente Llanos y Valdes, a relative of the Minister of the Spanish Navy)

¹³ Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations*, P. 132-133.

another Spanish captain would take the ship from the Philippines to Macau, China
as had been agreed to by the Spanish and British governments there the ship would be returned
to the Associated Merchants in Macau

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE TRAVELS TO LONDON TO GET AN EDUCATION

Athabasca Department was made ready for his departure to learn the skills of a geographer
Mackenzie went with the Spring Brigade carrying out the year's harvest of furs
down the interminable rivers, across the lakes, over the portages to Montreal -- spring 1791
it was his first visit to civilization in six grueling years
yet he was so driven he did not, he could not, relax
In Montreal he took a ship for London
while in London he poured over everything about the Northwest he could find
guesswork maps, the myths of Jonathan Carver,
and the more factual accounts of captains James Cook and John Meares
he bought instruments and taught himself how to make astronomical observations
and how to calculate the results
like a man possessed, he crammed all of the learning he would need
into the year given to him for that purpose

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK SAILS TO JAPAN

Lady Washington had been refitted from her single-masted sloop rigging
to a double-masted brigantine configuration in Macau, China
before all of the pelts could be sold Captain Kendrick had been arrested and ordered out of Macau
Captain John Kendrick sailed out of Macau taking two hundred prime furs with him -- spring 1791
Kendrick ventured to Japan in company with the ship *Grace* under Captain William Douglas
the former captain of the *Iphigenia Nubiana*
these were the first two American captains who entered that forbidden country
Japanese were not interested in sea otter pelts

SPAIN'S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION REACHES NEW SPAIN (MEXICO)

Captain Alejandro Malaspina on the *Descubierta* and Captain Jose Bustamante y Guerra
sailing the *Atrevida* arrived in Acapulco, New Spain (Mexico)
There they received new orders from Spanish King Carlos IV
they were to investigate a story told by a mysterious [1588] Spanish traveler,
Lorenzo Ferrer de Maldonado, who supposedly discovered a strait at 60° north latitude
that could be the long undiscovered Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)
Malaspina and Guerra set sail at once on a direct course for Yakutat Bay (Alaska) -- May 1, 1791
to investigate alleged discoveries of Captain Maldonado

CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK RETURNS TO THE PACIFIC COAST

Lady Washington sailed from Japan to the Northwest coast stopping in the Queen Charlotte Islands
Kendrick visited Barrell Sound (now Houston Stewart Channel) once again
this was where he had clashed with Haida natives [1789] over stolen clothing
natives appeared to have forgotten the incident as trade was conducted with success
But Haida Chief Coyah and his people had not forgotten their ill treatment by Kendrick
Indians suddenly rushed the crew and the men on shore and a battle ensued
raiders overran the decks of the ship and captured the arms chest where weapons were stored
sailors tumbled down the companionways searching for weapons below
Indians closed about American Captain John Kendrick
one chief snarled **“Put me in your cannon now”**¹⁴ and lunged at Kendrick with a dagger
Kendrick jumped backward as the blade ripped through his shirt nicking his belly
Kendrick found an iron bar and when Coyah came into sight he leaped on the Haida chief
one of Coyah’s men held a fierce-looking weapon at Kendrick’s face
ready to kill when the order was given
Sailors returned to the deck with firearms -- at the first volley Coyah and his raiders fled the ship
one Haida woman encouraged the attack by urging on the fight
even after her arm had been severed by a cutlass she was the last one to retreat
she jumped into the water and as she swam toward shore a crewman shot her
as canoes and swimmers struggled to reach shore a barrage of grape shot killed forty or more
including Coyah’s wife and two children
Coyah and his two brothers were wounded as was another chief named Schulkinanse
one of Captain Kendrick’s sons also was killed in the melee

FRANCISCO DE ELIZA LEADS A TWO-BOAT EXPEDITION NORTH

Commandant Francisco de Eliza departed from Nootka Sound on the *San Carlos* -- May 4, 1791
with Juan Pantoja and Jose Antonio Verdia as first and second pilots
San Carlos carried a twenty-eight foot long longboat with thirteen oars
Santa Saturnina (John Meares original *North West America*) accompanied *San Carlos*
this small schooner was under the command Jose Maria Narvaez with Juan Carrasco as pilot
she was thirty-three feet long with eight oars and carried about twenty days’ supply of food
Ten of Pedro d’Alberni’s First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia accompanied the expedition

ELIZA’S TWO-BOAT EXPEDITION IS OFF TO A POOR START

Sailing north from Nootka Sound, *San Carlos* and *Santa Saturnina* encountered strong northerly winds
progress of the *Santa Saturnina* was slowed and Eliza feared it was too late in the season

¹⁴ David Lavender, *Land of Giants*, P. 41.

to reach Bucareli Bay
overly cautious Eliza abandoned plans to explore north of Nootka after only three days
his expedition turned south and headed for Clayoquot Sound

COMMANDANT ELIZA CONDUCTS AN INVESTIGATION OF CLAYOQUOT SOUND

Both *San Carlos* and *Santa Saturnina* entered Clayoquot Sound where they stayed two weeks
Francisco de Eliza investigated the edge of Clayoquot Sound on board the *San Carlos*
Commandant Eliza made friends with Clayoquot Sound's Chief Wickaninnish
Eliza wrote that he was honored with a dance of over 600 Tal-o-qui-aht young men
he reported that there were five large indigenous settlements along Clayoquot Sound
each with over 1,500 inhabitants -- the largest had over 2,500 people
Eliza named this village "Guicananich" after Wickaninnish
Aboard the *Santa Saturnina* Jose Maria Narvaez with Pilot Juan Carrasco spent a week
exploring the inner channels of Clayoquot Sound
and another week collaborating on a chart of the sound which they called "Puerto Clayucuat"

COMMANDANT FRANCISCO DE ELIZA MOVES FROM CLAYOQUOT SOUND

Eliza sailing south from Clayoquot Sound named "Flores Island"
off the east coast of (today's Vancouver Island)
in honor of Manuel Antonio Flores 51st Viceroy of New Spain (Mexico)
Commandant Eliza entered the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- May 14, 1791
Eliza sailed the *San Carlos* eastward to Manuel Quimper's Puerto de Quadra (Port Discovery)
Francisco de Eliza would use this location as his base of operations
Eliza spent nine days investigating Puerto de Quadra
they encountered wild animals big enough to supply seventy men with meat for three days
Eliza said the creature had a hoof like a bull's, ears like a mule's,
horns like a deer, and hide so thick the Indians made armor from it
(this creature was an Olympic elk)

COMMANDANT ELIZA CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION OF THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Eliza sailed *San Carlos* along the Strait of Juan de Fuca reaching (today's Esquimalt Harbor)
which the Spanish called "Puerto de Cordoba" named after a city in Spain-- May 23, 1791
Commandant Francisco de Eliza conducted a fairly extensive investigation of the area
he described the agricultural potential of the region,
but he, himself, did not examine the nearby sound (today's Puget Sound)
or circumnavigate (present-day Vancouver Island)
Scurvy was rapidly spreading among the members of his crew
but Eliza was unable to reverse its effects because he lacked the foods necessary

Eliza himself was suffering from the effects of the disease
although he worked on charts of some of the harbors
much of the examination of (today's Salish Sea) would be given to Jose Maria Narvaez

JOSE MARIA NARVAEZ EXPLORES BARKLEY SOUND

After completing his charts Jose Maria Narvaez sailed the *Santa Saturnina* from Clayoquot Sound to Barkley Sound -- end of May 1791

he spent several weeks exploring and drafting a chart of the inner channels of Barkley Sound which he called "Puerto de Boca Carrasco" in honor of Pilot Juan Carrasco

according to Commandant Eliza's summary report of Narvaez's survey

Narvaez saw five large settlements with "warlike and daring" inhabitants

on two occasions the *Santa Saturnina* was attacked by groups of about 200 men

but cannon fire from the ship dispersed the threat

When the charting of Barkley Sound was completed Jose Maria Narvaez with Pilot Juan Carrasco entered the Strait of Juan de Fuca several days behind Commandant Eliza

QUIMPER SAILS THE *PRINCESS REAL* TO THE PHILIPPINES

Spanish Lieutenant Alfrez Manuel Quimper entered Manila Bay, the Philippines -- June 4, 1791 delivering the *Princess Real* (British Associated Merchants' *Princess Royal*) to be delivered to Vicente Llanos y Valdes, a relative of the British Minister of the Navy

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY RETURNS TO THE NORTHWEST COAST

Captain Gray after his successful voyage around the world arrived back in the Northwest from Boston he sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* into Clayoquot Sound -- June 5, 1791

(this was to become the American trading headquarters located about fifty miles south of Nootka Sound on the west ["outside"] of [Vancouver Island])

Gray, although he was still a private merchant, was sailing under the papers

provided by the United States of America signed by President George Washington

this trip to the Pacific coast had been very difficult as they incurred violent storms off Cape Horn and scurvy hit the crew

as soon as they arrived at Clayoquot Sound the sick were hustled ashore

they were buried in earth up to their hips

according to sixteen-year-old Fifth Mate John Boit, "**the treatment helped, though perhaps**

the 'greens' the men devoured and the berries they bought from the Indians were even more beneficial."¹⁵

Finding no messages from his trading partner Captain John Kendrick on the *Lady Washington* Gray could not learn what the situation was at Nootka Sound so he stayed away

¹⁵ David Lavender, *Land of Giants*, P. 39.

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY GENERATES ILL-WILL WITH THE TAL-O-QUI-AHT PEOPLE

For a time trade at Clayoquot Sound went well with the Tla-o-qui-aht natives
then Attoo, the “crown prince” of Hawaii tried to desert to the Indians
Feeling duty-bound to return Attoo to his home, Gray took great pains to get him back
one of the principal Tla-o-qui-aht chiefs was lured aboard the *Columbia Rediviva*,
he was imprisoned and threatened with death unless Attoo was returned
frightened Tla-o-qui-aht people complied
When brought on board the *Columbia*, Attoo was publicly flogged
an unheard of punishment and repulsive in the minds of the Indians
Captain Gray then announced if any more of his men deserted
they must be returned immediately by the natives
otherwise he would flog in his place the first Indian chief he caught
in response to the flogging, Indians quit trading and turned sullen

COMANDANT ELIZA AND NARVAEZ MEET JOIN FORCES AGAIN

San Carlos and *Santa Saturnina* were again reunited -- June 11, 1791
when Jose Maria Narvaez entered Puerto de Cordoba (today’s Esquimalt Harbor)
this safe harbor would temporarily serve as Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s headquarters
expeditions were sent out to investigate the complex inland waters of (today’s Salish Sea)
Commandant Francisco de Eliza sent Ensign Jose Antonio Verdía in a longboat to investigate
northward into Manuel Quimper’s Canal de Lopez de Haro (Haro Strait)
Verdía returned to Puerto de Cordova (today’s Esquimalt Harbor) two days later
and reported armed natives in canoes had attacked them with spears and arrows

COMMANDANT ELISA SENDS A BETTER-ARMED EXPEDITION

After hearing Ensign Jose Antonio Verdía’s report Commandant Eliza
sent *San Carlos*’ First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga and Jose Maria Narvaez
with the *Santa Saturnina* to explore Alferez Manuel Quimper’s Haro Strait -- June 14, 1791
Pantoja and Narvaez were accompanied by Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdía in a longboat
Pantoja and Francisco de Eliza’s pilots passed through (Plumper Sound)
they entered Manuel Quimper’s Canal de Lopez de Haro (Haro Strait)
and rapidly passed between (Vancouver Island) and “San Juan Island”

PANTOJA’S INVESTIGATION OF (TODAY’S GULF ISLANDS) CONTINUES

First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga and Jose Maria Narvaez sailed along Canal de Lopez de Haro
on the *Santa Saturnina* accompanied by Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdía
sailing in the longboat -- June 15, 1791

Several openings leading west and two leading east were discovered

Pantoja decided to investigate the larger of the two eastern openings (today called Boundary Pass)
They reach (today's Pender Island in the Gulf Islands which are Canada's San Juan Islands)

Pantoja's expedition sailed east along the southern shore of (Pender Island)

they named "Saturna Island" and entered "Narvaez Bay"

which was named in honor of Joseph Maria Narvaez

First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga accompanied by Jose Maria Narvaez

and pilots Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdia discovered a large body of water

Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdia entered what they noted

was "a grand and extended" canal in their longboat

this was the open water of the (Strait of Georgia) which they named

"Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario" (Canal of Our Lady of the Rosario)

this was the first time Europeans had seen this body of water

they believed they had found the legendary Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

and that it probably connected, somehow, to Hudson Bay or the Mississippi River

(Eliza's report stated if a Northwest Passage existed at all it must lie beyond this opening

Narvaez's rough map of the Strait of Georgia showed a large opening to the east)

That night they anchored at "Patos Island" (meaning "duck" as later named by Galiano)

PANTOJA'S INVESTIGATION OF (TODAY'S SALISH SEA) CONTINUES

First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga accompanied by Jose Maria Narvaez

and pilots Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdia sailed from (Patos Island) -- June 16, 1791

They passed by and named "Sucia" Island and mapped (Matia), (Barnes) and (Clark) islands

however, bad weather made sailing very difficult

whirlpools, riptides and uncharted reefs added to their danger

they sailed east to the vicinity of (Lummi Island)

they had reached the northern end of Manuel Quimper's Boca de Fidalgo (Rosario Strait)

Exhausted and out of food Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga turned *Santa Saturnina* the way they had come

to join Commandant Francisco de Eliza and bring word of the newly discovered

"Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario" (Strait of Georgia)

rain blotted out the sight of land -- contrary winds impeded the expedition's progress

they were forced to row the longboat against the wind

part of the way Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdia had to be towed

by men rowing in a smaller boat

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY SPENDS THE SUMMER TRADING

Captain Gray remained in Clayoquot Sound for fifteen days but finding business slow

he sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* north from Clayoquot Sound -- June 20, 1791

Gray arrived in the Queen Charlotte Islands where he had successfully traded two years before
Gray traded with the Haida Indians in the Queen Charlotte Islands and on the mainland -- summer
on this visit to the area the Indians were less friendly and the crew often slept fitfully
Captain Robert Gray was one of a number of captains who used force to acquire furs
this trading technique caused bitterness among the peaceful natives
Continuing north Gray plied the waters of Heceta Strait and Dixon's Entrance searching for otter pelts

RUSSIA APPOINTS A NEW MANAGER FOR THEIR FUR TRADE ON KODIAK ISLAND

Alexander Andreyevich Baranov ran away from home at the age of fifteen
he became a successful merchant in Irkutsk, Siberia
he was lured to Russian-America (Alaska) by the growing maritime fur trade there
he became a successful trader there and established and managed trading posts
in the Kodiak Island region
Alexander Baranov at age forty-seven was named manager of the Russian trading operation
at Kodiak station-- late spring 1791
he was noted to be a huge, bald-headed autocratic throwback to a coarser uncouth feudal age
crude and ill-tempered without refinement of character
he was never completely happy unless he was completely drunk
he was a severe disciplinarian who enslaved and made war on the natives
Baranov achieved successes through violence and deceit
and maintained his position by intrigue, brutality, debauchery and robbery
he also was energetic and resourceful
he often refused to obey orders he thought were contrary to best interest of the company
Alexander Andreyevich Baranov ruled the Russian fur trading empire for over thirty years

SPANISH SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION REACHES YAKUTAT BAY

Alejandro Malaspina sailing the *Descubierta* and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra on the *Atrevida*
sighted land near (today's Cape Edgecumbe) -- June 23, 1791
Four days later they anchored at (Port Mulgrave) in Yakutat Bay -- June 27
they investigated the area around 60° north latitude for a month
While the corvettes *Descubierta* and *Atrevida* remained anchored
two longboats were sent to explore channels searching for the Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)
they threaded their way among increasingly frequent ice flows
a glacier discovered between Yakutat Bay and Icy Bay was named in honor of Malaspina
(today's Hubbard Glacier) from which large pieces were breaking off
Malaspina named this "Behia del Desengano" (Disappointment Bay)
because no passage could be found
Captain Alejandro Malaspina and Captain Jose Bustamante y Guerra

undertook a good deal of scientific work including debunking idea of a Strait of Anian
Both Spanish captains made contact with the Tlingit natives
Spanish scholars on the expedition made a study of the natives recording information
on social mores, language, economy, warfare methods and burial practices
accompanying artists Tomas de Suria and Jose Cardero, produced portraits of tribal members
botanist Luis Nee accompanying the expedition collected and described numerous new plants
Malaspina and Guerra saw no sign of Lorenzo Ferrer de Maldonado's supposed [1588] strait
Malaspina ceased his search knowing that British Captain James Cook
had previously surveyed the coast west of Prince William Sound and discovered no passage

COMMANDANT FRANCISCO DE ELIZA MOVES HIS BASE OF OPERATIONS

After First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga returned and reported his findings
Commandant Eliza decided it would be necessary to send a more extensive expedition
to explore Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)
Commandant Eliza moved his entire base of operations from Puerto de Cordoba (Esquimalt Harbor)
to Puerto de Quadra (present-day Port Discovery, Washington)
on the south side of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

COMMANDANT ELIZA REMAINS AT HIS PUERTO DE QUADRA BASE OF OPERATIONS

Commandant Francisco de Eliza considered taking the *San Carlos* exploring
but his pilots convinced him his larger ship would find the narrow channels hazardous
in addition Eliza fell sick
Commandant Eliza remained at Puerto de Quadra (Port Discovery) while an expedition was sent out
to more carefully explore Rosario Strait and the Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario
(Strait of Georgia)

ELIZA PREPARES A MUCH LARGER EXPEDITION TO INVESTIGATE THE (SALISH SEA)

Commandant Francisco de Eliza instructed Jose Maria Narvaez to take the *Santa Saturnina*
with *Santa Saturnina's* Pilot Juan Carrasco serving as second in command
Jose Maria Narvaez sailed the *Santa Saturnina* out of Port Discovery north
passing through Boca de Fidalgo (Rosario Strait) -- July 1, 1791
Narvaez surveyed "Islas de Guemes" (Guemes Island), "San Vincent," (Cypress Island),
and "Pacheco" (Lummi Island) then explored "Seno Padillo" (Padilla Bay),
and "Seno Gaston" Bellingham Bay), he anchored in "Puerto Socorro" (Chuckanut Bay)
Narvaez turned the *Santa Saturnina* north into Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)
he anchored in "Puerto del Garzon" (Birch Bay) and "Punta de San Jose" (Drayton Harbor)
then sailed west across (Boundary Bay) to round (Point Roberts)
which he thought was an island and named the feature "Isla de Zepeda"

Pilot Juan Carrasco thought that an inland sea extended far to the northeast
(he later made an inaccurate map showing this large inlet
called "Boca de Floridablanca" [also Canal de Floridablanca]
which included [Boundary Bay] and extended north to about [Burrard Inlet])
after rounding Isla de Zepeda, Narvaez sailed north for several miles
as the *Santa Saturnina*'s crew investigated the (Strait of Georgia)
they noted copious amounts of fresh water
they correctly deduced that the mouth of a large river lay nearby
however, they were unable to find the mouth of the (Fraser River)
they mistook the land between the mouths of the rivers as low-lying islands
Narvaez anchored off (Point Gray), which he also took to be an island and named "Isla de Langara"
while at anchor the ship was visited by a number of Musqueam Indian men in canoes
who traded food, water and firewood for pieces of copper and iron
Spaniards noted their language was quite different from that of the Nootka Indians
Musqueam Indians indicated the (Strait of Georgia) continued north for a great distance
one of Narvaez' crewmen bought a young native boy who told the explorers
that many Indians regularly came to on horseback, from a "flat country" in the northeast
to trade iron, copper and blue beads for fish
Narvaez did not visit the Musqueam village, but anchored two miles offshore
as they collected water from a large river (probably the north arm of the Fraser River)
Narvaez sailed some distance into (Burrard Inlet -- today the harbor of Vancouver, B.C.)
(Pilot Juan Carrasco's map showed not only the Musqueam village at (Point Grey)
but another settlement at "Punta de la Bodega" (Point Atkinson)
and yet another at the entrance to "Bocas del Carmelo" (Howe Sound)
(near present-day Horseshoe Bay)
Jose Maria Narvaez sailed *Santa Saturnina* north along (today's Sunshine Coast of British Columbia)
along the way anchoring off (Mission Point) and again off (Thormanby Island)
they noted various inlets along with the presence of whales, seals and fish as large as tuna
that were encountered in the Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)
traveling as far north as "Isle de Tejada" named in honor of Spanish Admiral Felix de Tejada
(present day Texada Island) before turning to the east coast of (Vancouver Island)
Narvaez turned south reaching (today's Denman Island) and (Hornby Island)
seeing a large number of whales in the area Narvaez named "Islas de las Ballenas"
(Islands of the Whales -- today's Ballenas Island)
(Nanamino Harbor) was discovered and named "Bocas de Winthuysen"
continuing south they passed "Valdes Island" and "Porlier Pass"
before sailing by "Galiano Island"

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOSEPH INGRAHAM COMPETES WITH CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY

Twenty-eight-year-old American Joseph Ingraham had previously sailed on the *Columbia Rediviva* as Captain Robert Gray's first mate

Ingraham, now master of the tiny seventy-ton Brigantine *Hope*,
arrived on the Northwest coast -- July 2, 1791

he spent two months in the Queen Charlotte Islands gathering furs

Captain Ingraham had become a canny trader

finding the Indians well supplied with cloth,

he sewed brass buttons on his trading cloth and sold every stitch
when Gray's free-handed bargaining of chisels depreciated their value,

Ingraham converted his iron into seven-pound collars and somehow made them fashionable
these sold at three skins per collar

in forty-nine days, Captain Ingraham collected fourteen hundred sea otter pelts

Cruising about, Captain Robert Gray fell in with his former first mate, Joseph Ingraham
who had been employed by a rival Boston company

JOSE MARIA NARVAEZ'S EXPEDITION RETURNS TO COMMANDANT ELIZA

After three weeks of exploration of (today's Salish Sea)

Jose Maria Narvaez returned the *Santa Saturnina* to Puerto de Quadra (Port Discovery)
on the south (Washington) side of the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- July 22, 1791
(the exact route taken by Narvaez remains unclear)

At the start of his voyage, Narvaez had passed by a bay discovered by Pilot Juan Carrasco [1790]
that he named "Ensenada de Caamano" but had not entered

(this was today's Admiralty Inlet -- the entrance to Puget Sound)

Narvaez planned to explore this opening during his return trip but he ran out of food

he sailed directly to Commandant Francisco de Eliza's *San Carlos* in Puerto de Quadra

ELIZA FAILS TO GIVE SPAIN A DOMINATE CLAIM TO THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST

Jose Maria Narvaez could have set out once again after resupplying with food

to explore (today's Admiralty Inlet which opens into Puget Sound)

but was not allowed to do so by Commandant Francisco de Eliza

although Jose Maria Narvaez had been unable to explore

all of the Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Georgia Strait)

Commandant Eliza was impressed by Narvaez's report on the size and nature of the Strait

Commandant Eliza knew this exploration was important

but he and many of his sailors were sick with scurvy

Eliza also was anxious to return to Nootka Sound to begin preparations for (winter)

and to send a report back to the viceroy in Mexico City

indicating the discovery of Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia) additional excursions into (today's Salish Sea) were abandoned to return to Nootka Sound both Eliza and Narvaez thought Spain should send another expedition to look at Pilot Juan Carrasco's Ensenada de Caamano (Admiralty Inlet) Eliza thus missed the opportunity to discover and explore the interior gulfs, bays and harbors strengthening Spain's claim to (today's Washington State) Commandant Eliza completed a report for the Spanish government based on Narvaez's reconnaissance numerous whales had been seen in the (Strait of Georgia) but only a few in the Strait of Juan de Fuca, thus Eliza correctly speculated that the (Strait of Georgia) had a second connection to the ocean Eliza also came to suspect, again correctly, that Nootka Sound was not on the mainland, but rather was on an island (Some historians have criticized Francisco de Eliza for not accomplishing more on this expedition, but the Indians were occasionally hostile and his crew was weakened with scurvy more importantly he could not take too many risks as he knew he had to return to Nootka Sound and prepare the settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca for the winter)

SAN CARLOS AND SANTA SATURNINA LEAVE PUERTO DE QUANDRA (PORT DISCOVERY)

Commandant Francisco de Eliza was badly stricken by illness during the return voyage to Nootka Sound he transferred Jose Maria Narvaez to the *San Carlos* to conduct most of the exploration command of the *Santa Saturnina* was given to Pilot Juan Carrasco Eliza's expedition left Puerto de Quadra (Port Discovery) -- July 26, 1791

SPANISH SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION SAILS FOR NOOTKA SOUND

After a month of investigating (Alaska's) Prince William Sound both Spanish corvettes turned south as Spanish captains Alejandro Malaspina and Jose Bustamante y Guerra steered the *Descubierta* and *Atrevida* toward (Vancouver Island) -- July 27, 1791 Bucareli Bay to the south was investigated en route to Nootka Sound

COMMANDANT ELIZA'S EXPEDITION DISCOVERS (TODAY'S PORT ANGELES)

Commandant Francisco de Eliza and his crew were increasingly suffering from scurvy as no supplies of food to reverse the ravages of the disease could be found Jose Maria Narvaez sailed *San Carlos* back toward Nootka Sound accompanied by Pilot Juan Carrasco on the *Santa Saturnina* While slowly sailing westerly out of the Strait of Juan de Fuca Eliza's expedition entered a beautiful deep harbor -- August 2, 1791

Eliza gave the name “Puerto de Nuestra Senora de Los Angeles” (Port Angeles)

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK RETURNS TO NOOTKA SOUND

Captain Kendrick sailed the *Lady Washington* from the Queen Charlotte Islands traveling south along the outside of (today’s Vancouver Island) conducting trade as he journeyed toward Nootka Sound -- August 1791 ownership of Britain’s Nootka Sound (Spain’s San Lorenzo) had not been completely resolved Defying the Spanish at Fort San Miguel located at Friendly Cove at the entrance to Nootka Sound Kendrick sailed past the Spanish colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca to continue on to (today’s Marvinas Bay) -- his old anchorage [1789] a few miles above the settlement

CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK PURCHASES REAL ESTATE AT NOOTKA SOUND

Besides dealing in furs American Captain John Kendrick also tried his hand at real estate he purchased several large tracts of land amounting to eighteen square miles near Nootka Sound from several local Indian chiefs -- **August 5, 1789** one land deed can still be seen in United States State Department that reads as follows: **“In consideration of six muskets, a boat sail, a quantity of gunpowder and an American flag (they being articles of which we, at present, stand in need of, and are of great value), we do bargain, grant and sell unto John Kendrick of Boston, a certain harbor in said Ahasset, in which the brig *Lady Washington* lay at anchor on the 5th day of August, 1791, latitude 49°50’, with all lands, mines, minerals, rivers, bays, harbors, sounds, creeks, and all islands, with all the produce of land and sea, being a territory the distance of eighteen miles square, to have and to hold, &c, &c. Signed by Maquinna, Wickaninnish, Narry-Youk and Terrasone”**¹⁶

SPANISH OFFICIAL DEMANDS CAPTAIN KENDRICK MAKE AN APPEARANCE

Spanish Lieutenant Ramon Saavedra was temporarily in charge of the Spanish colony and fort while Commandant Francisco de Eliza was investigating the inland waters (of the Salish Sea) Saavedra sent word to Kendrick that he must properly report to the Spanish authorities Captain John Kendrick promised to make an official call as requested but instead Kendrick quietly slipped out of Nootka Sound bound for Clayoquot Sound Kendrick had excellent reasons for wishing to avoid the Spanish as he owed them money for furs given to him two years before [1789] to sell for the Spanish in China this money was to have been deposited with authorities in the Philippines but Kendrick had used it to re-rig the *Lady Washington* from a sloop to a brig

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOSEPH INGRAHAM SAILS THE *HOPE* TO CHINA

Captain Ingraham sailed the *Hope* away from the Pacific coast bound for China -- August 1791

¹⁶ Captain John T. Walbran, *British Columbia Coast Names*. P. 280.

(Ingraham was unable to sell his furs at a profit in China
Chinese officials having learned of a dispute between the Russians
and traders selling Russian furs in China
had banned the sale of furs as they announced that all furs somehow came from Russia)

ELIZA AND HIS EXPEDITION SAIL OUT OF THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Alferez Manuel Quimper's Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) was reached
by the *San Carlos* and *Santa Saturnina* -- August 11, 1791
members of Eliza's expedition found that Makah Indians had raised their price for furs
above the previous year's price

PRINCESA REAL IS RETURNED TO THE ASSOCIATED MERCHANTS

Princesa Real (John Meares' former *Princess Royal*) was sailed by the Spanish navy to Macau, China
where the ship was presented to representatives of Associated Merchants
owned by Richard Cadman Etches -- August 12, 1791
however, the ship was in such poor condition on arrival that British agents refused to accept it
eventually it was agreed the British would accept a small payment in cash for the ship
Soon after the port of Macau was hit by a hurricane and the ill-fated ship was badly damaged
Princesa Real (*Princess Royal*) was sold for salvage

SPAIN'S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION SAILS INTO NOOTKA SOUND

While Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza was absent
from Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca (Friendly Cove) on Nootka Sound,
Spain's most impressive scientific expedition arrived -- August 12, 1791
Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra spent a month at Nootka Sound
Descubierta and *Atrevida* took on water and wood
while the expedition's scientists repaired their tools and equipment
Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel were provided with useful goods
including medicines, food, various tools and utensils and a Reaumur scale thermometer
(the freezing and boiling points of water are set to zero and eighty degrees respectively)
Spanish government was eager for the Nootka natives to formally agree
that the land on which the Spanish outpost and colony stood had been acquired freely and legally
such an agreement would strengthen Spain's claim to Nootka Sound
and would be invaluable in the upcoming negotiations with the British representative
gaining the trust of Nootka chief Maquinna would be particularly significant
as he was one of the most powerful chiefs of the region
in spite of Commandant Francisco de Eliza's previous efforts
Nootka Indians had remained highly suspicious and hostile toward the Spanish

after the [1788] killing of Maquinna's son Callicum
Captain Alejandro Malaspina and his officers dedicated themselves to relieving racial tensions
generous gifts to Maquinna from the well-supplied Spanish ships
strengthened the friendship between the Spanish and the Nootkas
after weeks of negotiations Maquinna asserted that only the Spanish
had rightful title to land ownership at Nootka Sound

During these negotiations the Spanish scientists of the expedition carried on detailed investigations
they spent several weeks in making scientific observations of the Nootka people

life of the Indians at Nootka Sound was described by Jose Mariano Mozion: **"The vices of these savages are very few when compared to ours. One does not see here greed for another man's wealth, because articles of prime necessity are very few and all are common. Hunger obliges no one to rob on the highways, or to resort to piracy.... Everyone can partake indiscriminately of the fish or seafood he needs, and with the greatest liberty, in the house of the tais (chief.)"**¹⁷

Astronomical observations were made to fix the location of Nootka Sound
and to more accurately calibrate the expedition's chronometers

For several weeks Nootka Sound was surveyed and mapped
with an accuracy far greater than previously

two longboats were sent to explore the interior channels

(this resulted in one of nine charts which would be given to Captain Vancouver
and carried to England by Captain William Broughton)

Spanish Lieutenant Josef de Espinosa led an investigation of the unexplored channels

"Espinosa Arm" was named for this officer

"Bajo Arriza" (today's Bajo Reef) was a hazardous sunken reef explored by Malaspina
as was "Bajo Senalar" (Bajo Point) [August and September 1791]

Spanish maps were linked to the investigations of British Captain James Cook [1776-1779]
allowing Spanish and British charts to be calibrated

botanical studies were carried out including an attempt to make a type of beer
out of conifer needles that, it was hoped, would be able to combat scurvy

FRANCISCO DE ELIZA AND JUAN CARRAASO SEPARATE

Three days after leaving Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)

Spanish ships *San Carlos* and *Santa Saturnina* separated -- evening August 14, 1791

Pilot Juan Carrasco was unable or unwilling to sail against the wind to Nootka Sound
instead he sailed the *Santa Saturnina* south to Monterey, California

San Carlos continued on toward Nootka Sound

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY TRADES IN THE QUEEN CHARLOTTE ISLANDS

¹⁷ David J. Weber, *Spaniards and Their Savages in the Age of Enlightenment*, P. 43.

Columbia Rediviva continued to cruise north along the east side of the Queen Charlotte Islands where he visited a number of harbors and channels
Captain Gray entered a cove to fish near (Point Higgins) on (Revillagigedo Island) while there three men, Joshua Caswell, Joseph Barnes and John Folger, took a jolly boat ashore to investigate and were massacred by Indians -- August 22, 1791 only the body of Caswell was recovered
Robert Gray named the place "Massacre Cove" and the headland "Murderers' Cape"

AMERICAN CAPTAINS MEET

After sailing from Massacre Cove Captain Robert Gray reached Clayoquot Sound -- August 29, 1791 there he found a strange brig rode in the bay and a strange log house stood on the shore it was, in fact, the *Lady Washington* transformed from a sloop into a brig on board, watching the approach of the *Columbia* was his partner Captain John Kendrick
Captain Kendrick came aboard the *Columbia Rediviva*
this meeting with Captain Gray proved to be a relatively unpleasant reunion as the altered status of the two trading partners needed to be addressed
Robert Gray was now a full partner in the sponsoring company but John Kendrick was not

SAN CARLOS ARRIVES AT NOOTKA SOUND

Jose Maria Narvaez sailed into Nootka Sound delivering the ill Commandant Francisco de Eliza back to the little settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel (at Friendly Cove) -- August 29, 1791
As commander of the expedition Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza eventually received most of the credit for the discoveries made and places named during his 1791 investigations
however, Jose Maria Narvaez commanded the *Santa Saturnina* and led the actual voyages of discovery
his pilots, First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga and Second Pilot Jose Antonio Verdia on *San Carlos*, and Juan Carrasco on *Santa Saturnina* carried out a great deal of work

WORK OF COMMANDANT FRANCISCO ELIZA'S EXPEDITION IS INCOMPLETE

Commandant Francisco de Eliza's expedition provided a great deal of information regarding (today's Salish Sea) -- but some of the geography was inaccurate
Jose Maria Narvaez produced a large chart of the discoveries of his expedition base in part on Pilot Juan Carrasco's inaccurate map of the (Strait of Georgia) that showed a particularly large opening to the east (of today's Vancouver, B.C.)
Eliza's report stated that if the Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage) existed at all, it must lie beyond this opening

the Spanish named the (nonexistent) inlet “Canal Floridablanca”
Eliza declared an investigation of this region must be a priority
even the remotest possibility of finding the Strait of Anian
somewhere among the inlets of the (Strait of Georgia) rekindled the hope
(eventually a further investigation was undertaken
by Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes y Flores Bazan [1792]
who discovered this was, in fact, the mouth of the Fraser River
The *Santa Saturnina* had been too far offshore to see the low lying land)

SANTA SATURNINA REACHES MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

After separating from Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s *San Carlos*
Pilot Juan Carrasco reached Monterey Bay, California -- September 15, 1791
where he gathered supplies for the return to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)

MALASPINA AND GUERRA SEE THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Captains Alejandro Malaspina on the *Descubierta* and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra on the *Atrevida*
sailed out of Nootka Sound after staying almost a month
at the Spanish colony on Friendly Cove -- mid-September 1791
Malaspina and Guerra anchored overnight near the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca
this would be both officers only look at the most famous passage at that time
Malaspina regretted having to leave without investigating the waterway
but he had run out of time and was obliged to rush to continue his world-wide investigation
Malaspina did leave a few members of his expedition and some instruments
to assist any future expedition in completing an examination of the inland waters

ROBERT GRAY ESTABLISHES HIS WINTER HEADQUARTERS AT CLAYOQUOT SOUND

Captain Gray’s men began building a tiny American defense works
to serve as their winter quarters in Clayoquot Sound -- September 21, 1791
it was located in a cove on the eastern side of “Meares Island”
where the geography could provide a natural defense against attacks
Gray named the cove “Adventure Cove”
he set his men to work chopping out a clearing on its shores

TWO LEADING SPANISH CAPTAINS MEET IN MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

Leading officers of two Spanish exploring expeditions met in Monterey, California
Spanish hero Captain Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra
sailing from Friendly Cove in Nootka Sound on their world-wide scientific investigation
arrived in Monterey Bay on the *Descubierta* and *Atrevida* -- September 23, 1791

having just completed a fruitless search for the Northwest Passage [in Alaska]
there they met Pilot Juan Carrasco with the *Santa Saturnina* on his way to San Blas, New Spain
to report the findings of Commandant Francisco de Eliza's expedition
Juan Carrasco informed Malaspina, a powerful figure of the Spanish navy, of the recent discovery
by Jose Maria Narvaez of the Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)
Malaspina was thus the first officer beyond Commandant Eliza's crew to learn of the discovery
Malaspina immediately recognized the strategic importance of further exploration
Spain's hope of discovering the Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage) were still politically important
Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario's many promising channels leading east and north
represented one of the last realistic possibilities

LADY WASHINGTON IS LOADED WITH PELTS

Both "Bostons" as American traders were referred to by the Indians
loaded more than 1,000 sea otter skins on the *Lady Washington* and she was made ready to sail
Captain John Kendrick departed for Canton, China -- September 25, 1791
leaving Fort Washington abandoned to the Indians and Captain Robert Gray
comfortably in Adventure Cove

AMERICAN CAPTAIN GRAY PREPARES TO SPEND THE (WINTER) AT ADVENTURE COVE

Gray built a log fort eighteen feet wide by thirty-six feet long for protection
"Fort Defiance," as Gray pointedly named his construction effort, was a two-story house
which included bunks, a table, a chimney at one end and workroom at the other end
Gray had brought 5,470 bricks from Boston
its main building had two mounted cannons
one inside aimed through a porthole and the other was mounted outside the house
musket loop holes for defending against any native attacks were placed into the walls
other buildings that were constructed included a blacksmith shop, two sawpits for cutting logs,
cabins and a boat builder's shed

TRADING WAS SLOW SO TWO SHIPBUILDING PROJECTS WERE UNDERTAKEN

Two ship construction projects were undertaken in Clayoquot Sound
by American Captain Robert Gray during his stay there:
•work began on overhauling and re-rigging the *Columbia Rediviva*;
•like British captain John Meares before [1788] Captain Gray set up shipway
construction was begun on a forty-five-ton sloop whose frame he carried from Boston
keel was laid for the sloop -- October 3, 1791
Adventure was named in honor of Adventure Cove where she was build
Captain Robert Gray overreacted to his situation as he mercilessly he drove the crewmen

to construct Fort Defiance, repair the *Columbia*, and build the new sloop
so he could leave Clayoquot Sound as quickly as possible

AMERICANS AT FORT DEFIANCE WERE CONCERNED ABOUT THE INDIANS

Once Fort Defiance was complete, four cannons, forty muskets and various other weapons
were transferred from the *Columbia Rediviva*

Second Mate Robert Haswell was placed in charge of ten men who occupied the fort
About 2,000 native fighting Tla-o-qui-aht men with over 200 guns and plenty of ammunition
lived in the area but the natives appeared to be very friendly

native chiefs from the Clayoquot Sound area frequently visited the *Columbia Rediviva*
however, American relations with the natives had not always been on the most cordial terms
several minor incidents of theft by the natives were recorded

Captain Robert Gray visited the village near Adventure Cove several times
he treated the sick villagers there

but an anxious moment was reported by Second Mate Robert Haswell -- October 7, 1791

“...in the evening about 11 o’clock, it being foggy as ever, I was suddenly awakened by the report of a musket, and the cry that the cove was full of Indian canoes. With the alarming news I sprang out of bed (for I dwelt on shore), armed myself and my small party, consisting of 7 persons, and marched down the beach, resolving to oppose their landing, and if we were disappointed in this, we could easily retreat to our post. But, wonderful to tell, these mighty war-equipped savages turned out to be none other than some rocks, which the tide ebbing low had left dry. These seen through the fog might easily, by the apprehension of the watch, be conjectured to be canoes.”¹⁸

SPAIN’S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION SAILS FROM MONTEREY BAY, CALIFORNIA

Spanish captains Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra
sailed the *Descubierta* and *Atrevida* out of Monterey Bay
bound for San Blas, New Spain -- October 25, 1791

to arrange for a further investigation of Jose Maria Narvaez’s
Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)

PILOT JUAN CARRASCO BRINGS THE *SANTA SATURNINA* BACK TO SAN BLAS, NEW SPAIN

After his encounter with Malaspina in Monterey, Carrasco sailed the *Santa Saturnina* to San Blas
where he arrived -- November 9, 1791

(Juan Carrasco continued to serve the Spanish Navy until at least [1803]
as one of the pilots of the San Blas naval department)

SPANISH CAPTAINS REACH SAN BLAS NAVAL BASE IN (NEW SPAIN)

¹⁸ Hubert Howe Bancroft, *History of the Northwest Coast*, P. 723.

Captains Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra sailed the *Descubierta* and *Atrevida* into the port of San Blas -- November 23, 1791

thus completing the northern portion of their scientific expedition

While in San Blas Malaspina learned of two 45-ton goletas (schooners) being constructed by order of Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo for an investigation of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Malaspina arranged to have two of his officers, Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes, take command of the two ships for the purpose of fully exploring the (Strait of Georgia)

COLUMBIA REDIVIVA SAILORS ENJOY FESTIVITIES AT ADVENTURE COVE

Native chiefs from the area frequently visited the *Columbia Rediviva*

several minor incidents of theft by the natives were recorded but the Indians remained amiable

Captain Robert Gray's crewmen amazed the Indians by bedecking the fort, shops and ship with evergreen boughs on Christmas Day

twenty geese were roasted on spits before a huge fire,

local native dignitaries and their ladies were invited aboard the *Columbia* for the feast

Chief Wickaninnish of the Tla-o-qui-aht people repaid the compliment by inviting some of the whites to a name-giving dance during which the chief gave his name to his son and assumed a new one

In spite of the festivities, the natives had not forgotten the public flogging of Kanaka (Hawaiian) Attoo and Gray's threat of flogging a chief if any crewmen deserted [June 1791

INDIANS PLOT TO OVERWHELM THE AMERICANS

Tla-o-qui-aht Indians hoped to wipe out Captain Gray's Fort Defiance, capture the *Columbia Rediviva* and destroy the entire expedition with a minimum of loss to themselves

One day various Indians were noticed talking too long and too earnestly to Kanaka crewman Attoo plot to capture the ship was discovered when Attoo confessed to Captain Gray

Indians had promised to make him a big chief

if he smuggled them musket balls and ammunition

and, when a signal was given, wet down the whites' gunpowder

Columbia Rediviva would then be attacked

Indians planned to come through the woods and board the ship from a high bank

an easy task as the ship had recently been moored alongside a cliff

and her guns unshipped preparatory to her being hauled ashore and refitted

Forewarned Captain Gray realized all of the heavy artillery was on shore

Second Mate Robert Haswell ordered the swivel guns loaded at once

and put Fort Defiance in a good state of defense

Captain Gray had no difficulty frustrating the attack

he set sail soon after the discovery was made

Columbia Rediviva moved away from the bank
In the still of the night a war whoop was heard in the forest
hundreds of natives had assembled, but seeing the ship moved from shore
they knew they could not triumph and faded into the wilderness

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY SEEKS REVENGE

American Captain Robert Gray, who had a violent temper, sailed down Clayoquot Sound
to the Indian village of "Opitsitah" (today's Opitsaht)

Gray he sent Fifth Mate John Boit with three boats to destroy the village
as punishment for the Indian attempt to capture his ship

Boit, the keeper of the ship's log, reported: **"It was a command I was no ways tenacious of, and am grieved to think Capt. Gray shou'd let his passions go so far. This village was about half a mile in diameter, and contained upwards of 200 Houses, generally well built for Indians; every door that you enter'd was in resemblance to an human and Beasts head, the passage being through the mouth, besides which there was much more rude carved work about the dwellings some of which was by no means inelegant. This fine village, the work of Ages, was in a short time totally destroy'd."**¹⁹

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK ARRIVES IN MACAU, CHINA

Completing his trading efforts for the year Captain Kendrick sailed from Clayoquot's Fort Washington
Lady Washington arrived in Macau, China -- December 1791
there he found Chinese merchants were unwilling to purchase his furs
because of the difficulties Russian traders had suffered

SPANISH GARRISONED AT FRIENDLY COVE REMAINS UNEASY

Fortunately the winter at Nootka Sound was not as harsh as that of the previous year
several more ships and people had arrived at Fort San Miguel
and the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca (Friendly Cove)
food supplies sent from San Blas were of better quality
improved storage facilities provided better protection from humidity and rats
Indians were now frequent visitors

Even so, Spanish inhabitants under the leadership of Commandant Francisco de Eliza
spent an uneasy winter in Nootka Sound in their colony and fort -- 1791-1792

Eliza knew the British government was sending an envoy to the Pacific Northwest
to receive formal restitution of English possessions seized by Martinez Jose Esteban [1789]
officials in Mexico City had no idea when the British expedition would arrive
or what the British agenda would be

¹⁹ Johansen and Gates. *Empire of the Columbia*. P. 68-69.

IN SPITE OF THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS NOOTKA REMAINED A BUSY PLACE

Preparations for face-to-face talks between a British and Spanish negotiator were underway to resolve the details of the Nootka Crisis left unaddressed by the Nootka Sound Convention it was uncertain if these negotiations between Great Britain and Spain would result in Spain's colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound would be ceded to the British or not

Spanish colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel on Nootka Sound's Friendly Cove grew to fifty buildings with a barracks, blacksmith shop and shelters for sheep and cattle estimated population of two hundred Spanish troops and Peruvian Indians, all males, were attended by six Catholic missionary priests

Two-story Spanish headquarters and visitor's quarters at Friendly Cove was visited by at least three hundred ships and traders from several nations between [1789] and [1810] eleven British ships stopped as did eight American ships, five Spanish ships, two Portuguese ships and one French ship in 1792 alone

Although still in dispute, Nootka Sound was visited by traders of several nations eleven English ships, eight American ships, five Spanish ships, two Portuguese ships and one French ship all stopped by during 1792 both Great Britain and Spain redoubled their effort to push their claims of discovery

CAPTAIN MALISPINA TAKES OVER THE SPANISH VICEROY'S EXPEDITION

Spanish captain and popular hero Alejandro Malaspina completed the Pacific portion of his around the world scientific expedition

Malaspina indicated in his lengthy report that a thorough survey of the Northwest coast was long overdue

Spanish Viceroy Revillagigedo selected Francisco Antonio Mourelle was to lead the voyage but illness prevented him from carrying out the task

Two 45-ton goletas (schooners) were being constructed in San Blas by Viceroy Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo

Alejandro Malaspina, acting on the authority of the Spanish Crown, took control of these ships thus removing the viceroy from any authority over the expedition

Malaspina ordered two of his officers, Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes, to follow-up on Jose Maria Narvaez's discovery of Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)

Lieutenant Dionisio Alcala Galiano took command of the *Sutil* and the expedition

Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes y Flores Bazan y Peon sailed the *Mexicana*

(he was generally referred to as Cayetano Valdes)

Captain Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra sailed *Descubierta* and *Atrevida* to Acapulco accompanied by *Sutil* and *Mexicana* commanded by Galiano and Valdes with a combined total of thirty-nine men

SPAIN'S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION ARRIVES IN ACAPULCO, NEW SPAIN

Captain Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra arrived in Acapulco from San Blas to arrange for further exploration of the recently investigated

Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia) reported to him by Juan Carrasco *Sutil* officered by Lieutenant Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Lieutenant Cayetano Galiano's *Mexicana* were fitted out under the direction of Captain Malaspina

SPANISH EXPEDITION IS SENT TO INVESTIGATE THE (STRAIT OF GEORGIA)

Two 45-ton goletas (schooners) set sail from Acapulco, New Spain -- March 8, 1792 as instructed by Captain Alejandro Malaspina

Sutil under Lieutenant Dionisio Alcala Galiano, commander of the expedition
Mexicana under Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes

This would be a four month effort to further investigate Jose Maria Narvaez's [1791] discovery of the Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia) as part of Commandant Francisco de Eliza's expedition

SPANISH SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION CONTINUES ITS VOYAGE AROUND THE WORLD

After placing two of his officers in command of the expedition to investigate the (Strait of Georgia)

Captain Alejandro Malaspina's *Descubierta* and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra's *Atrevida* sailed out of Acapulco to the Philippines to continue their around the world scientific expedition for Spain

VICEROY DE GUEMES ORDERS A SECOND COLONY IN THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST

Although the scientific investigation conducted by Captain Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra was directed by the Spanish government in Madrid, Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo learned of the explorations of Malaspina in the Strait of Juan de Fuca Viceroy Count Revillagigedo gave orders to Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo to sail the covertte *Princesa* to Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) on the south shore of the Strait of Juan de Fuca and occupy it in case Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel were lost to the British thorough negotiations

DAVID THOMPSON BECOMES AN ACCOMPLISHED SURVEYOR

Hudson's Bay Company gave David Thompson the assignment of mapping a route from Cumberland House on the Saskatchewan River to Lake Athabasca along today's Alberta-Saskatchewan border -- 1792

BRITISH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ARRIVED OFF THE SANDWICH ISLANDS COAST

HMS *Discovery* under the command of now British Captain George Vancouver reached the coast of the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) accompanied by HMS *Chatham* under British Lieutenant-Commander William R. Broughton -- March 15, 1792²⁰ *Discovery* and *Chatham* had sailed from Falmouth, England [1791] with two ships and 150 men This expedition was well-outfitted and equipped with the finest scientific instruments available from Australia and New Zealand Vancouver's expedition had sailed around the Cape of Good Hope, explored the South Pacific and wintered in the Sandwich Islands
Captain Vancouver's survey of the inland waters of (today's Washington and British Columbia now known as the Salish Sea lasted for three years: 1792, [1793] and [1794]

JACINTO CAAMANO IS ASSIGNED TO FIND THE FABLED STRAIT OF ANIAN

Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo ordered a final effort to find the fabled Northwest Passage
Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano, the brother-in-law of Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza, Jacinto Caamano sailed the *Aranzazu* from San Blas, New Spain -- March 20, 1792

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY LAUNCHES THE TINY SLOOP *ADVENTURE*

Captain Gray and the crew of the *Columbia Rediviva* had spent the winter at Gray's Fort Defiance on Adventure Cove in Clayoquot Sound -- [1791]-1792
Gray was completely unaware of the Nootka Sound Crisis or the anticipated negotiations
Captain Gray launched a small sloop of forty-four tons burden -- March 22, 1792
she was christened the *Adventure* to honor Adventure Cove where she was constructed
Gray's first mate, Robert Haswell, was placed in charge of the sloop

SPANISH GOVERNMENT NAMES ITS NEGOTIATOR TO RESOLVE THE NOOTKA CRISIS

Overcome by events initiated by the government of Great Britain, instructions were sent to Commandant of San Blas Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra from the Court of Spain he was to proceed to Mexico City for consultations and new orders -- March 1792
Commandant Quadra was given new orders by the government in Madrid
he was to replace Francisco de Eliza as commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca
in addition Commandant Quadra would serve as Spain's negotiator in the effort to resolve land ownership dispute and other issues not addressed by the [1790] Nootka Sound Convention

²⁰ Note: Captain Vancouver's journal is one day off due to not having taken into account his crossing of today's International Date Line which did not exist until 1884 and even then its specific course through the Pacific Ocean was not identified.

Commandant Quadra was to sail north and to wait at Friendly Cove in Nootka Sound for the arrival of the British negotiator Spain and Commandant Quadra would be bargaining from a position of weakness

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK REMAINS IN MACAU, CHINA

Captain Kendrick eventually found a Chinese merchant to purchase his furs -- March 1792 however, problems with weather kept the *Lady Washington* in the port city After leaving Macau Kendrick went to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) -- spring 1792 (he sailed from there back and forth to Clayoquot Sound several times until [October 1794] during one of his excursions he had a brief reunion with his son John Kendrick, Jr. who commanded the Spanish ship *Aranzazu* at the time)

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY SETS OUT ON A TRADING EXPEDITION

Captain Gray placed the newly-constructed sloop *Adventure* under the command of Robert Haswell formerly Gray's second mate on *Columbia Rediviva* Robert Haswell left Adventure Cove on Clayoquot Sound taking the tiny *Adventure* north on a four-month cruise to the Queen Charlotte Islands in search of sea otter -- April 2, 1792 Robert Haswell described the sea otter: **"...this animal when young is of a dirty white with long course hair which being hauled out leaves a short chestnut coloured fur its colours change through its natural graduation of life as it grows older the fur grows thicker blacker and longer with less hair till it arrives at its maturity having the belly and head at this time of a yellowish white after this as it still continues to grow older the longer hairs or fur are tipt (sic) with white until it becomes of a beautiful silver grey... this animal in shape much resembles the seal it has a very good set of teeth which are remarkably white and much valued by the natives the largest skin of this animal that I saw measured six feet two inches from the end of the nose to the tip of the tail..."**²¹

Captain Gray set out from Fort Defiance sailing south in search of trade opportunities -- April 2, 1792 he made a brief visit to the Strait of Juan de Fuca before continuing south

COMMANDANT QUADRA SAILS FROM SAN BLAS TO NOOTKA SOUND

Commandant and Spanish negotiator Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra thought arriving in Nootka Sound aboard a frigate was not adequate for his assignment he added another frigate, a schooner and two *goletas* (small schooners) Quadra wanted a fleet as a show of strength and he arranged for it to his satisfaction Commandant Quadra departed San Blas on the *Activa* accompanied by his fleet -- April 11, 1792

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY PASSES BY THE GREAT RIVER OF THE WEST

Sailing south Gray passed the discolored water of what he called "Deception Bay" [1788]

²¹ Oscar Winther, *The Great Northwest*, P. 29.

where he noticed that evidence of a large river was present
this was Spanish Captain Bruno de Heceta's elusive Bahia de la Asuncion de Nuestra Senora
(Bay of the Assumption of Our Lady and Rio San Roc [River San Rogue] [1775])
unknown to all captains the treacherous and shifting sand at the mouth of the Columbia River
presented a challenge to any ship that attempted to enter the river
rather than exploring Gray was anxious to trade which was, after all, his purpose
Captain Gray continued south almost to California Captain
before he turned the *Columbia Rediviva* to the north looking for rivers and bays to enter for trade

SETTLEMENT AT SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND) RECEIVES A SPANISH VISITOR

Spanish Frigate *Aranzazu* under command of Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano arrived
at Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound -- mid-April 1792
bringing necessary supplies including livestock for the settlement
additional materials had been taken from English Captain James Colnett's
confiscated vessel *Argonaut* including sections of a schooner ready for assembling
that was carried in the *Argonaut's* hold
Here Jacinto Caamano was to begin his effort to explore the North Pacific waters
for the fabled Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

BRITISH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER'S EXPEDITION REACHES THE PACIFIC COAST

HMS *Discovery* and HMS *Chatham* under Lieutenant-Commander William Robert Broughton
arrived off the coast of California -- April 15, 1792 (April 16 in Vancouver's journal)
Captain Vancouver's two-ship expedition sailed north from Cape Mendocino, California
while en route they checked latitudes and noted previously unrecorded details of the coastline
but Vancouver believed Captain James Cook had made a thorough study of the Pacific coast
(Vancouver had accompanied Cook on the [1778-1781] expedition)
thus Vancouver and Broughton did little exploring north to the Strait of Juan de Fuca
where their investigation was to begin

PRESIDENT GEORGE WASHINGTON SETS UNITED STATES FOREIGN POLICY

President Washington and Secretary of State Jefferson believed Great Britain would march south
from Canada and attack New Spain (Mexico) through the Western territory claimed by the U.S.
and capture all of Spain's western territory
however, President George Washington was leery of any foreign entanglement
he believed the young United States of America was too weak and unstable
to fight another war -- especially with a major European power
he insisted the president alone, without the guidance of congress, could set foreign policy
President Washington responded to the rising threats from Europe by insisting that the United States

would observe a strict neutrality [in the affairs of Europe] so long as circumstances and events permitted the United States to do so -- Declaration of Neutrality -- April 22, 1793
Neither Jefferson nor Hamilton and their followers agreed with President Washington's policy
Jefferson's anti-British Democrat-Republican expansionists were not happy
with lack of support for American settlers facing the dangers of living on the frontier
and the opportunity to remove Britain from America's northern regions
Hamilton's pro-British Federalists were not happy with neutrality toward Spain
especially when Florida remained Spanish territory on America's southern boundary

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER LEADS GREAT BRITAIN'S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION

George Vancouver was elevated to British Royal Navy Captain -- 1792

with all of the rights and privileges of the position

he was harsh and full of self pride as was the custom of the Royal Navy at that time

he considered himself a gentleman -- that is, superior to most other men

he possessed a quick temper but his honesty was beyond question

Vancouver possessed no use for, or sympathy with, other people's ideas

views from crewmen opposed to his own were rewarded with time in the ship's brig

he was equally intolerant of the often bizarre theories of European geographers

Vancouver always maintained strict military control

he was a rigid disciplinarian and a demanding officer -- some thought him cold-blooded

he imposed cruel and unusual punishments for the slightest infractions

solitary confinement in the brig in chains with bread and water was an ordinary punishment

as was then the custom of British captains he always wore the lash (whip) around his wrist

he was always ready to apply it to the bare backs of obstinate sailors

he could, and once did, use the death penalty

when he ordered a sailor be shot with a pistol ball

Vancouver neither sought nor received the affection of his men -- but he was respected

DR. ARCHIBALD MENZIES ACCOMPANIES VANCOUVER ON THE *DISCOVERY*

Dr. Archibald Menzies, the ship's surgeon and naturalist, had been to the Pacific Northwest before

he had sailed with British Royal Navy Captain James Colnett on the *Prince of Wales* [1788]

Menzies' friend and patron, Sir Joseph Banks of the London Royal Society, had arranged for him

to make this voyage to collect among other objects seeds and plants and dried specimens

for London's Kew Garden -- the royal botanical establishment in England

Captain Vancouver was not in favor of this effort as he thought it a distraction

Sir Joseph Banks warned Menzies he might expect trouble

(before the voyage was complete, Vancouver had placed Menzies under arrest

for "insolence and contempt" because they could not agree on a matter

relating to the glass frame where Menzies kept his growing plants
on the quarter deck of the HMS *Discovery*)

GEORGE VANCOUVER ALSO REPRESENTS GREAT BRITAIN IN NEGOTIATIONS

Captain Vancouver was also given the diplomatic task of meeting with the Spanish negotiator to represent the interests of the British government and King
and to receive the buildings and parcels of land which had been occupied
by the subjects of his Britannic Majesty in [April 1789] in Nootka Sound
and other Pacific coast ports

Vancouver expected to secure Great Britain's rights to the entire Pacific coast
from San Francisco to the Russian settlements in Russian-America (Alaska)
despite the fact he knew the Spanish had been active in the region since [1768]
England, in part, relied on Sir Francis Drake's [1579] claiming of Port New Albion
(whose location was believed to be off the northern coast of California
or more recently is thought to be at today's Nehalem Bay on the northern Oregon coast)

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra represented the Spanish government and King
he was to resolve the Nootka Sound Crisis and protect Spanish interests

Quadra was, at a minimum, to turn over the British property confiscated at Nootka Sound
by Spanish Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza [1789]

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER MISSES THE GREAT (COLUMBIA) RIVER

Discovery and *Chatham* reached the latitude previously noted by Spanish Captain Bruno de Heceta
as the mouth of a great river which he named Bahia de la Asuncion de Nuestra Senora
(Bay of the Assumption of Our Lady and Rio San Roc [River Rogue 1775])

British Captain John Meares named the same location Deception Bay [1788]

Vancouver missed the (Columbia River) -- April 26, 1792 (Vancouver's Friday April 27)

although all the signs of a great river were to be seen: drifting logs, discolored water, feeding gulls,
crosscurrents -- all were disregarded by Vancouver as the British captain wrote in his journal

(misdated April 27, 1792): **“The sea has now changed from its natural, to river coloured water, the probable consequence of some streams falling into the bay, or into the ocean to the north of it, through the low land. ...Not considering this opening worthy of more attention, I continued our pursuit to the N.W. being desirous to embrace the advantages of the prevailing breeze....”**²²

Vancouver was convinced a river did not exist at that location
or Captain Cook would have discovered it

Lieutenant-Commander William Robert Broughton on armed tender *Chatham*
was in agreement with Vancouver when he later noted: **“The breakers extending across [the apparent opening] gave us reason to consider [it] inaccessible, and unworthy of any loss of time.**

²² Johansen and Gates, *Empire of the Columbia*, P. 52.

The *Discovery* made signal we were standing into danger and we hauled out; the situation is off [British Captain John Meares] Cape Disappointment from whence a very extensive shoal (shallow) stretches out and there was every appearance of an opening actually seen, but it was passed without appreciating the importance of the place.”²³

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER NAMES POINT GRENVILLE

Vancouver passed “Point Grenville”²⁴ (along the Olympic Peninsula north of today’s Grays Harbor) this was the first name given by Vancouver (in today’s Washington) -- morning April 27, 1792
Discovery and *Chatham* continued toward “Destruction Island” where Vancouver anchored three miles south of Destruction Island and five miles off the Washington coast
there Captain Vancouver noted a: “**conspicuous point of land composed of a cluster of hummocks** (small hills), **moderately high and projecting into the sea.**” (April 28, 1792 -- one day off)²⁵
They arrived at “Cape Flattery,” the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca, in a storm
Vancouver anchored five miles off the Washington coast

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY AGAIN MISSES THE GREAT (COLUMBIA) RIVER

Sailing north from California, Captain Gray again passed by Deception Bay
but heavy seas made the current was too strong to enter -- April 27, 1792
Gray decided to further explore this area at a later date when the weather cleared
he continued northward toward the Strait of Juan de Fuca
Gray anchored the *Columbia Rediviva* off Captain James Cook’s Cape Flattery

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY MEETS CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER

Soon after weighing anchor off Cape Flattery the lookout on the Captain Vancouver’s *Discovery* reported a sail -- 4:00 a.m. April 28, 1792
this was first ship they had encountered since leaving the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)
(Vancouver misdated the event in his journal as April 29)
Discovery and *Chatham* moved on toward the north
by noon they were two miles off Cape Flattery
Following the British vessels Captain Gray hoisted the American flag above the *Columbia Rediviva*
and fired a gun to leeward to hail the British ships
Captain Gray hove-to and waited for a boat to arrive from the *Discovery*

AN HISTORIC MEETING TAKES PLACE OFF CAPE FLATTERY

Captain George Vancouver sent Lieutenant Peter Puget and botanist Dr. Archibald Menzies

²³ Gordon Speck, *Northwest Exploration*, P. 135.

²⁴ Locations that are in quotation marks and highlighted i.e., “**Point Grenville**” were named at approximately that time.

²⁵ Lyman William Denison, *The Columbia River*, P. 63.

to confer with American Captain Robert Gray of the *Columbia Rediviva*
Vancouver's men explained their expedition had no intention of trading
but only wanted information to assist in their exploration of the region
In response to a series of rather patronizing questions from Vancouver's men
Captain Gray gave a summary of his ship's log for the past several months
he stated he had passed what seemed to be a powerful river at 46° 10' north latitude
which he tried in vain to enter for nine days
but was repelled by the strength of the current and high seas
Gray also informed Lieutenant Puget and botanist Dr. Menzies
that he had not sailed the *Lady Washington* to the east of what is now Vancouver Island
as was claimed by Captain John Meares and shown on two of Meares' maps
Gray noted he had sailed into the Strait of Juan de Fuca nearly fifty miles
but he had no definite knowledge about where it ended
because he did not know of Spain's efforts in the Strait
he mistakenly said the region around the strait was untouched
Captain Robert Gray explained he was on his way back to the river to try again
Lieutenant Puget and Dr. Menzies departed from the *Columbia Rediviva* to make their report

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER RECEIVES CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY'S INFORMATION

Lieutenant Puget and Dr. Menzies reported to Captain George Vancouver -- April 28, 1792
(Vancouver previously had been informed by Captain John Meares in London
that Captain Robert Gray had sailed through the Strait of Juan de Fuca
this story was supposed to have been told by Captain Gray
to a British agent in China who then told Meares in China
Meares told the story to Vancouver when they both were in England)
Captain Vancouver was delighted to hear from Captain Gray that the story was untrue
Vancouver concluded Americans had probably as yet not penetrated the Strait of Juan de Fuca
thus eliminating one potential rival in claiming the inland waters
(in fact, it was probably American Captain John Kendrick who had entered the strait)
News of a possible river at 46° 10' was brushed aside
when Vancouver had previously visited that region with Captain Cook
Cook himself had seen the shoals and discoloration of waters described by Gray
but that was explained by the great captain as the result of fresh water springs
Cook noted that great rivers usually pile up great sand bars across their mouths
to Vancouver, the unexplored Strait of Juan de Fuca,
with its potential passageway through the continent was far more exciting

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION INTO THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Soon after meeting with American Captain Robert Gray, Vancouver sailed north
Discovery and *Chatham* reached Cape Flattery where they arrived in a storm
they continued north toward the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- noon April 28, 1792

No spiral rock or pinnacle as noted by the fabled Spanish explorer Juan de Fuca [1588] was sighted
and shown on a sketch of the Strait of Juan de Fuca drawn on Charles Duncan's [1787] map
until *Discovery* rounded Tatoosh Island when Dr. Menzies and Third Lieutenant Joseph Baker
caught a glimpse of a rock they thought suited Juan de Fuca's description
Vancouver named a rock off Tatoosh Island "Rock Duncan" (now Duncan Rock)

Lieutenant-Commander William Robert Broughton entered the Strait and noted: (misdated April 29)
**"evening brought us to anchor... about eight miles within the entrance on the southern shore of the
supposed Straits of De Fuca."**²⁶

Discovery and *Chatham* sailed into the Strait of Juan de Fuca passing Neah Bay
which Vancouver believed was too insignificant to be useful in refitting ships
he proceeded with his plan to explore the Strait of Juan de Fuca

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER'S EXPEDITION ENJOYS GOOD WEATHER

George Vancouver on *Discovery* was enchanted by a lovely spring day
in the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- April 29, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday April 30)

he wrote in his journal: **"...a gentle breeze sprang up from the northwest, attended with
clear and pleasant weather, which presented to our view this renowned inlet.... We weighed anchor
with a favorable wind and steered to the east along the southern shore... [The region was] composed
of low shady cliffs, falling perpendicularly on beaches of sand or stones. From the top of these
eminences, the land appeared to take a further gentle ascent and was entirely covered with trees
chiefly of the pine tribe, until the forest reached a range of high craggy mountains...their summits
covered with snow...."**²⁷

Dr. Menzies lost no time in going to work identifying and classifying native plants
Vancouver cruised eastward along the southern shore of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

he noted in his journal: **"As the day advanced, the wind, which as well as the weather was
delightfully pleasant, accelerated our progress along the shore. About this time a very high
conspicuous craggy mountain presented itself towering above the clouds; as low down as they
allowed it to be visible it was covered with snow."**²⁸

Vancouver named "Mount Baker" in honor of Lieutenant Joseph Baker of *Discovery* -- April 29

**"The lofty mountains discovered in the afternoon by the third lieutenant, and in
compliment to him by me Mount Baker, rose a very conspicuous object...."**²⁹

²⁶ W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State*, P 34.

²⁷ W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State*, P 34.

²⁸ Captain Walbran, *British Columbia Coast Names*, P. 27.

²⁹ W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State*, P 34.

“The land which interrupted the horizon between the N.W. and the northern quarters, seemed...to be much broken; from whence its eastern extent round to the S.E. was bounded by a ridge of snowy mountains, appearing to lie nearly in the north and south direction, on which mount Baker rose conspicuously; remarkable for its height, and the snowy mountains that stretch from its base to the north and south. Between us and this snowy range, the land, which on the sea shore terminated...in low perpendicular cliffs, or on beaches of sand or stone, rose here in a very gentle ascent, and was covered with a variety of stately forest trees. These, however, did not conceal the whole face of the country in one uninterrupted wilderness, but pleasantly clothed its eminences and checquered (sic) the vallies (sic); presenting, in many directions, extensive spaces that wore the appearance of having been cleared by art.... As we passed along the shore near one of these charming spots, the tracks of deer, or some other such animal, were very numerous, and flattered us with the hope of not wanting refreshments of that nature, whilst we remained in this quarter.”³⁰

Vancouver appeared to have a difficult time containing his excitement as recorded in his journal:

“Every new appearance, as we proceeded, furnished new conjectures; the whole was not visibly connected; it might form a cluster of islands separated by large arms of the sea or be united by land not sufficiently high to be yet discernible. About five in the afternoon a long, low, sandy point of land was observed projecting from the craggy shores into the sea, behind which was seen the appearance of a well-sheltered bay.... having turned up a little way into the bay, we anchored... [off] the low, sandy point of land, which from its great resemblance to in the British Channel, I called new Dungeness....”³¹

Captain George Vancouver continued on to (later named Dungeness Spit) where he spent two days

COMMANDANT-NEGOTIATOR QUADRA ARRIVES AT NOOTKA SOUND

Activa anchored in Nootka Sound with Commandant Quadra aboard -- afternoon April 29, 1792

accompanied by his fleet of supporting ships to await the arrival of the British negotiator

Spain's original Pacific Northwest colony of Fort San Miguel and Santa Cruz de Nuca

at Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound could be lost if negotiations did not go well

Commandant Quadra relieved Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza

Fort San Miguel and Santa Cruz de Nuca's barracks, hospital and flourishing gardens

had been the sole European outpost between California and Russian-Alaska for three years

Commandant Eliza had put the colony in good condition

he was anxious to take up a less isolated post or to return to Spain

his wife and children had petitioned the Spanish Ministry of Marine for his return

but his skills were needed in New Spain

COMMANDANT QUADRA SUCCESSFULLY LEADS THE SPANISH COLONY

³⁰ Johansen and Gates, *Empire of the Columbia*, P. 53-54.

³¹ W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State*, P. 34.

Congenial commandant from Lima, Peru with his even-tempered style of governance earned the respect and admiration of all of those with whom he came into contact
captains and officers of all nationalities calling at Nootka Sound were invited to Quadra's many-course banquets served on silver plates accompanied by fine wines and brandies
Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra's tolerance and interest in the customs of the Nootka Indians gained their lasting affection
Maquinna was often an overnight guest at the Commandant's residence
Commandant Quadra expanded the Spanish hold over the region:
as he organized Major Lieutenant Fidalgo's extensive exploration of the Strait of Juan de Fuca and its inlets (in what are now (British Columbia and Alaska)
in a search for the fabled Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)
these explorations resulted in the most complete maps of the coastline
(British Captain George Vancouver made use of them and kept many Spanish names)
Commandant Quadra had taken command of Nootka Sound to represent Spain in the negotiations with the British representative to resolve the details of the ([790] Nootka Agreement
Quadra allocated only a small portion of Friendly Cove for the British negotiator
Quadra felt this was justified by the vague terms of the Nootka Agreement
and from testimony he gathered from traders and Indians

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER RELISHES INVESTIGATION OF INLAND WATERS

Happy prospects of a successful assignment are recorded April 30, 1792 (Vancouver's May 1): **"Our May Day was ushered in by a morning of the most delightfully, pleasant weather.... The *Chatham's* cutter, with the *Discovery's* yawl and cutter, were ordered to be armed and supplied with a day's provision, with which we set off too examine the two apparent openings nearest to us. We found the surface of the sea almost covered with aquatic birds of various kinds, but all so extremely shy that our sportsmen were unable to reach them with their guns.... We made the best of our way for land appearing like an island (Protection Island)... and ascending its eminence, which was nearly a perpendicular cliff, our attention was immediately called to a landscape almost as enchantingly beautiful as the most elegantly finished pleasure grounds in Europe. From the height we were now upon, our conjectures of this land being an island situated before the entrance of an opening in the mainland was confirmed."**³²

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ENJOYED THE COUNTRYSIDE HE WAS INVETIGATING

"A light, pleasant breeze springing up, we weighed on Wednesday, the 2nd, (Vancouver's journal continues to be one day off) and steered for the port we had discovered the preceding day.... The delightful serenity of the weather greatly aided the beautiful scenery that was now presented; the surface of the sea was perfectly smooth and the country before us exhibited everything that

³² W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State*, P. 34-35.

bounteous nature could be expected to draw into one point of view. As we had no reason to imagine that this country had ever been indebted for any of its decorations to the hand of man, I could not possibly believe that any uncultivated county had ever been discovered exhibiting so rich a picture....”³³

Vancouver also noted in his journal: “A picture so pleasing could not fail to call to our remembrance certain delightful and beloved situations in old England. Thus we proceeded without meeting any obstruction to our progress, which, though not rapid, brought us before noon abreast of the stream that discharges its waters from the western shore near five miles within the entrance of the harbours; which I distinguished by the name Port Discovery after the ship. There we moored in 34 fathoms, muddy bottom, about a quarter of a mile from the shore.”³⁴

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION ANCHORS IN PORT DISCOVERY

Vancouver named “Port Discovery” (today’s Discovery Bay) in honor of his ship -- May 1, 1792
(located between later named Sequim and Port Townsend, Washington)

it had previously been named Puerto de Quadra by Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza [1791])

Port Discovery was a well-protected natural harbor on the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Vancouver’s expedition remained anchored several days at “Point Wilson”

located at the end of the Quimper Peninsula near the entrance to Port Discovery

Vancouver named this geographic feature in honor of a colleague, Captain George Wilson

while at Point Wilson the crews of the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

made repairs and took on supplies of wood and water

Discovery remained as stationary as possible at night

to allow for minute observations from point to point during the day

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY TRAILS BEHIND CAPTAIN VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION

Captain Gray on the *Columbia Rediviva* was curious about the British and their purpose

he had been, more or less, following the Vancouver expedition

he followed Vancouver’s expedition north as they sailed passed Tatoosh Island

here the Indians came out and traded a quantity of furs with the Americans

Gray saw the British ships lying eight miles inside the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- night May 5, 1792

Columbia Rediviva continued to sail and trade about the mouth of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY LEAVES THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Captain Vancouver’s *Discovery* and Lieutenant-Commander William R. Broughton’s *Chatham*

remained anchored in Port Discovery (Discovery Bay)

American Captain Robert Gray sailed *Columbia Rediviva* westward out of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

³³ W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State*. P. 35-36.

³⁴ Captain John T. Walbran, *British Columbia Coast Names*, P. 143.

turning south down the (Washington) coast

he stopped briefly near the mouth of the (Quillayute River) -- May 6, 1792
just below an Indian village where he traded copper for furs with the local Indians
because of unsettled weather Captain Gray decided sail away from the Quillayute village
he set a course south to reexamine (Cape Disappointment) and the mysterious great river

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEADS THE FIRST BOAT EXPEDITION HIMSELF

With the work of refitting the *Discovery* and *Chatham* progressing routinely,

Vancouver decided to set out on what would officially be the first boat expedition
Both ships remained in Port Discovery (today's Discovery Bay) under William Broughton
work continued on refitting which included loading shingles for ballast

in the *Discovery's* main and fore holds to correct her trim (balance in the water)
shore parties were busy at their appointed tasks

everyone enjoyed a visit from the natives who brought fish and various items to trade
Captain Vancouver himself led the boat expedition which was planned to take five days
giving time for the refitting of the ships to be completed -- May 6, 1792 (Vancouver's May 7)
three artists traveling with the expedition, Lieutenant Zachary Mudge, J. Sykes, and T. Heddington
sketched scenes and events in the Puget Sound area

Master Joseph Whidbey, the officer on *Discovery* responsible for navigation,
also accompanied the first expedition

little seems to have escaped his attention when he was on boat expeditions
ship's surgeon and naturalist Dr. Archibald Menzies took the opportunity
to expand his botanical pursuits

this part of the coast was revealing new species of plants at nearly every glance

he was in (the State of Washington) in May and (June) when flowers were at their height

Provisions for five days were loaded aboard three boats:

- Lieutenant Peter Puget took command of the *Discovery's* launch;
- Lieutenant James Johnstone took charge of the *Chatham's* cutter;
- George Vancouver led the men of *Discovery's* pinnace -- the smallest boat of the three

Vancouver's boat expedition set out from Port Discovery in a thick fog -- 5:00 a.m. May 6, 1792
to explore the openings they had seen to the south when they entered Port Discovery
rowing close to shore against a strong ebb tide for about nine miles

they rounded Point Wilson (the site of today's Fort Worden near Port Townsend)

Vancouver named the features he encountered for his friends, patrons, crewmembers
and even his ships -- and placed them on his maps of the region

Through the lingering mists they could see they were entering a spacious inlet trending to the south
here Vancouver landed and wait for the weather to clear

to pass the time they tried fishing with a seine net -- without success

Some of the members of the boat expedition walked south along the beach for about two miles they crossed Quimper Peninsula at “Point Hudson”³⁵ and entered an extensive bay located at the northeast corner of the (Olympic Peninsula) as the fog lifted they were able to obtain a clear view of their surroundings and take their bearings Vancouver was able to come remarkably close in determining his latitude but, as was his pattern, he placed the much more difficult to chart longitude too far east Vancouver named the inlet “Port Townshend” honoring British General Sir Charles Townshend (later the “h” was later dropped -- city of Port Townsend (founded [1851] and now the county seat of Jefferson County is located at the mouth of the bay and adopted the name of the bay for its own)

Dr. Menzies took a stroll while dinner was being prepared he came to some fields in bloom and noted the plant life it was at this point that Vancouver’s party first sighted “Mount Rainier” which Captain Vancouver named in honor of British Admiral Peter Rainier (local Indians had called the mountain Tahoma for thousands of years)

After dinner Vancouver decided to dispatch the boats on separate surveying expeditions he selected a low point of land to the southeast as the point for their rendezvous (this was in reality two islands narrowly joined at their upper and lower ends respectively) Lieutenant James Johnstone took the cutter to explore the southern shore Lieutenant Peter Puget in the launch sounded the middle of the channel for depth Vancouver and some of his men walked the shore of Port Townsend until they were blocked by trees growing to the water’s edge they boarded the pinnace and rowed to the head of the bay to where they found it ended in a muddy flat covered with vegetation -- here they discovered a deserted native village Vancouver’s party turned toward the rendezvous point and met Peter Puget en route Vancouver and Puget passed an entrance into a deep lagoon which was blocked by a strip of sand (this was the entrance of (Kilisut Harbor)³⁶ separating (Indian Island) from (Marrowstone Island) it appeared to them that the land behind their meeting place was an island Vancouver, Puget and their men reached the rendezvous point after 8:00 p.m. May 6 but there was no sign of Johnstone and his party -- they set up camp to await his arrival Lieutenant Johnstone had entered the lagoon between the islands of the rendezvous point he thought it would be an easy matter to rejoin the other boats but he was surprised when he found the southern end closed by shallow water he was forced to row all the way back out Vancouver named the place of rendezvous “Marrowstone Point” for hard clay soil there

³⁵ Locations that are in quotation marks and highlighted i.e., “Port Hudson” were named at approximately that time.

³⁶ Names in parentheses but not highlighted, i.e., (Kilisut Harbor) were applied at some later time.

COLUMBIA REDIVIVA SAILS SOUTH AND FINDS A HARBOR

Sailing south from Cape Flattery American Captain Robert Gray

sighted another promising but difficult to reach inlet at 46° 58' north latitude

this harbor was protected by sand bars over which a strong current flowed -- May 7, 1792

Captain Gray encountered breakers across the entrance to the harbor

but he was determined to investigate

he posted a lookout in the masthead to search for shoals

stubbornly, he sent a cutter through crashing breakers and over dangerous shoals

ahead of the *Columbia Rediviva* to look for a possible passage and take soundings of the depth

Captain Robert Gray's log noted -- May 7: **"Being within six miles of the land, saw an entrance in the same, which had a very good appearance of a harbor.... We soon saw from our masthead passage in between the sand-bars. At half past three, bore away, and ran in north-east by east, having from four to eight fathoms, sandy bottom; and, as we drew in nearer between the bars, had from ten to thirteen fathoms, having a very strong tide of ebb to stem.... At five p.m. came to in five fathoms water, sandy bottom, in a safe harbor, well sheltered from the sea by long sand-bars and spits."**³⁷

Columbia Rediviva sailed through the surf and successfully crossed into the shelter of the harbor

many natives (probably Chehalis Indians) approached the ship

Gray's crewmen were familiar with the Makah Indians of Nootka Sound

but they did not recognize the language spoken by these people

Despite the language barrier, the Bostons, as American traders were known to the natives,

soon entered into a brisk trade with the Indians

Fifth Mate John Boit reported the details: **"Without doubt we are the first civilized people that ever visited this port, and these poor fellows viewed us and the ship with the greatest astonishment."**³⁸

Gray bought fish and furs cheaply from the Indians for blankets and iron

but he was concerned about exploring a river that was seen in the distance

as his men would be exposed to danger

Gray named the inlet "Bullfinch Harbor" in honor of Charles Bullfinch

one of the partners in Barrel, Bullfinch and Company, the owners of the *Columbia Rediviva*

(Spanish lieutenants Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes named the harbor

Puerto de Gray -- 1792 [today's Grays Harbor])

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER'S BOAT EXPEDITION CONTINUES THEIR INVESTIGATION

³⁷ Constance Lindsay Skinner, *Adventurers of Oregon.*, P. 24.

³⁸ Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage*, P. 86.

At Marrowstone Point Vancouver wrote in his ship's log of the bay stretching south: **"It proved to be a very safe and more capacious harbor than Port Discovery; and rendered more pleasant by the high land being at a greater distance from the water-side"** (wrongly dated May 8)³⁹

however, Vancouver's camp at Marrowstone Point became increasingly concerned regarding fate of Lieutenant James Johnstone and the crew of the cutter

Both the pinnace and the launch were underway to begin a search -- 8:00 a.m. May 7, 1792

they landed to obtain water near the entrance they had passed the day before and were overjoyed to hear the report of a swivel gun in the distance -- they fired a shot in answer men with the *Discovery* and *Chatham* at Port Discovery heard the sound of gunfire

that was exchanged between the cutter and launch -- *Chatham* fired a swivel round in answer

Weather continued to be pleasant

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton remaining with the ships

was able to begin his detailed survey of Port Discovery shore parties continued as before with gathering wood and water refitting continued on board the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

Lieutenant James Johnstone and his party met Vancouver after an arduous row about an hour later

Johnstone explained to Vancouver that they had entered the inlet and had continued to its end with the hope that they would be able to return to the rendezvous point

when they arrived at the head of the inlet they were dismayed to find the water so shallow that it was impossible to proceed into the wide bay across the bar there was no alternative but to return back the way they had entered

Dr. Archibald Menzies and Lieutenant Peter Puget in a burst of good humor recorded the name of this inlet as "Johnstone's Decoy"

Reunited Captain George Vancouver's three boats continued their investigation

on the eastern shore of Kilisut Harbor they made a grisly discovery

Dr. Menzies found two human heads impaled on two poles set in the ground hair and flesh still clinging to the bone showed they had been placed there recently savagery of this exhibition filled them with revulsion

this served as a reminder of the need for constant vigilance when among the coastal natives near this location they also made another unusual discovery on the long spit of sand

at the entrance to Johnston's Decoy

Menzies recorded finding a series of nine or ten poles about a hundred yards apart standing in a row nearly equidistant from one another,

each pole was in two pieces neatly joined to achieve a total length of about ninety feet each pole was securely planted in the ground and ended in a three-pronged top piece

Dr. Menzies could see no purpose for any of this

(it was only later they learned the Indians stretched nets between the poles

³⁹ Captain George Vancouver, *A Voyage of Discovery to the North Pacific Ocean, and Round the World*, Vol. 1, P. 234.

these were invisible to birds flying in from the sea at night
food and clothing, difficult or impossible to gather otherwise, was easily acquired
this was a tribute to the natives' ingenuity)

Peter Puget with the launch filled the expedition's water kegs from a small run of fresh water
that proved to be brackish -- a walk of a mile into the forest was required to find a purer source
adding to their labor they had the misfortune of running aground on a sand bank on a falling tide
while the crew of the launch attempted to free themselves the pinnace and cutter
continued the survey along the continental shore and dined again on Marrowstone Point
where Peter Puget and the launch joined them around 2:00 p.m.

Captain Vancouver again decided to split up the boat expedition from Marrowstone Point
he selected as their rendezvous point a low, distant bluff

Lieutenant Puget and the launch was sent to sound the mid-channel

Puget's travels took him into the middle of (today's Admiralty Inlet)

Lieutenant Johnstone was sent with the cutter to examine the western shore
opposite Marrowstone Point (today's Whidbey Island)

Vancouver's party with the pinnace continued along the continental shore

Vancouver's course took him south along the eastern edge of Marrowstone Island

Weather made a sudden change for the worse later in the afternoon

as the evening darkened it began to rain heavily with a thick fog settling in

it was only by firing muskets that the boat expeditions could keep in touch with one another
as they struggled toward the rendezvous point

Puget, in the middle of the channel, noted that even though a strong northwest wind favored them
the ebbing (receding) tide against them was so strong that they were unable to make headway
Johnstone in the cutter experienced the same weather but he met Vancouver's party -- 7:00 p.m.

Wind died down during the night but the rain increased -- 11:00 p.m.

Vancouver and Johnstone decided to abandon their attempt to reach the distant meeting place
they headed for the western shore to camp for the night but they could not find a suitable site
finally after great difficulty they found a campsite on "Oak Bay"

they started a fire and set up tents after 1:00 a.m. May 8, 1792

tents pitched ashore were only for the use of the officers and midshipmen

men in the boats had no covering during the night other than the sails from the boats
and the clothes they wore as they huddled about the fire

(it was not until the following year that provision was made for the boat's crews)

Vancouver's entire party was drenched to the skin and they had no idea where they were
but they were safe and together

no commander of any nautical surveying expedition had spent, or would ever spend,

as much time as Captain Vancouver in directly conducting the actual work of the survey
he shared in the hardships of his men with exemplary endurance

VANCOUVER'S BOAT EXPEDITION SPENDS A THIRD DAY EXPLORING

During the previous wild night, the arms (weapons) chest and all the muskets were soaked with water there was grave concern they might find themselves approached by hostile natives with no means of protection

rainy, foggy weather confined Vancouver's party to this spot for the entire day during this time they put their weapons in order

Vancouver's boat expedition investigated the area

to ascertain their situation -- daylight May 8, 1792 (Vancouver's Wednesday May 9)

as intervals of clear weather permitted, parties walked along the shore

they were pleasantly surprised at their good fortune -- they had pitched their tents on a sandy beach that formed the entrance to the southern end of Johnstone's Decoy

they enjoyed wild gooseberries and raspberries from the surrounding forest of various pines, maple and oak trees

at low water the beach provided a goodly supply of small clams,

but they had no luck in fishing with their small seine (net)

On one of their excursions they noticed a number of oak trees among the pines

Dr. Menzies acquired some specimens for his plant frame on the *Discovery*

Vancouver named their campsite at the southern end of Marrowstone Island "Oak Cove"

Peter Puget with the launch joined Vancouver and Johnstone in their Oak Cove camp

Puget recorded finding the remains of a number of deserted native fires and huts

which appeared to have been occupied not long before, but there was no sign of the inhabitants in writing his journal Puget often consulted with Menzies to identify the flora and fauna

thanks to this collaboration there are many references in his record of plants and animals that he would have otherwise been unable to identify

Puget's journal for this day (May 9 -- consistently misdated) records the sighting of "**...the White Headed and Brown Eagle, Crows, Ravens, Curlew and Oceanic Birds**"⁴⁰

COLUMBIA REDIVIVA COMES UNDER ATTACK IN BULLFINCH (GRAYS) HARBOR

Astounded by their first sight of a white man's ship local natives flocked about in their canoes

Gray and his men were obliged to exercise constant watchfulness to avert an attack

on the beach there was tremendous excitement among the natives that evening

who were probably performing a war dance

Columbia Rediviva's crew became concerned as a canoe approached -- evening of May 8, 1792

a loud shout was heard from the Indians -- all hands on the *Columbia* immediately took up arms

several war canoes passed near the ship but were dispersed by firing muskets over their heads

however these natives appeared to be ignorant of firearms

⁴⁰ Richard W. Blumenthal editor, *With Vancouver in Inland Washington Waters*, P. 26.

a large canoe with at least twenty warriors paddling under a bright moon
reached to within half a pistol shot of the *Columbia Rediviva* -- midnight
Gray ordered a nine-pounder loaded with loose iron to fire point-blank at the nearest canoe
this was accompanied by ten muskets loaded with buckshot
as fifth mate John Boit reported: **“We dashed her all to pieces and no doubt killed every
soul in her. The rest soon made a retreat. I do not think that they had any conception of the power of
artillery. But they was (sic) too near us for to admit...any hesitation how to proceed.”**⁴¹

At that the other canoes retreated

INDIANS COME BACK TO TRADE WITH CAPTAIN GRAY

Amazingly enough, the Indians in Bullfinch Harbor resumed trading without apparent rancor
as Indians bartered salmon, many beaver skins and some otter -- May 9, 1792
American crewmen explained the wonders of cannons to the natives

VANCOUVER’S BOAT EXPEDITION SPEND ITS FOURTH DAY EXPLORING

Morning dawned fair as they made an early start -- May 9, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday May 10)
Vancouver selected as their destination a high dome of land (today’s Hood Head)
that had the appearance of an island to their south
After crossing “Oak Bay,” to the western side of Whidbey Island
Vancouver’s boat expedition met with a number of natives fishing along the shore
who followed the boats when they landed for breakfast and to dry their clothes
about eighteen Indians came ashore close by and placed their bows and quivers on a tree stump
they sat down very peacefully on the beach beyond the line marked out by Vancouver
to divide the two parties
eagerly they accepted the trinkets, medals, beads and knives but they had nothing to trade
Menzius and Vancouver remarked in their journals that these natives,
although of similar appearance and manner to those in the Strait of Juan de Fuca,
they spoke a different dialect
when Vancouver’s party left the breakfast place and crossed the cove
they noticed a native village at its end to which their guests retired after they parted
Vancouver landed at noon to determine their latitude and longitude
when they continued south they saw the inlet they were following branched
by the point of land chosen on the previous day as their intended place of rendezvous
as conditions had worsened this location was named “Foulweather Bluff” (Hansville)
Vancouver continued his policy of keeping the continental shore to his starboard (right)
he sent the boats ahead toward the rendezvous point while he and Puget walked along the shore
they discovered that what they had taken as a small, round island

⁴¹ Lucile McDonald *Search for the Northwest Passage*, P. 87.

was connected to the mainland by a low spit of land, beyond which the inlet continued in a more southerly direction about $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile wide it appeared the inlet terminated just beyond the round island and that they would be in the vicinity of the previous rendezvous point by afternoon Lieutenant James Johnstone was dispatched in the cutter to sound mid-channel while Puget and the launch was sent to examine the eastern shore directly across the bay Vancouver's chart showed the launch entered (Port Gamble) although this was not noted in the journals in spite of a strong southerly wind, they were able to make some progress up the arm thanks to a stronger flood (incoming) tide, which carried them to a pleasant spot on the eastern side where they pitched the tents for the night -- 8:00 p.m. May 9 Lieutenant Peter Puget's journal contains many items of interest

he provided his first detailed description of the natives they had encountered at "Indian Arm" he noted that seventeen natives had appeared and that **"Their Foreheads appeared to be Deformed or out of Shape comparatively Speaking with those of Europeans. The Head has something of a Conical Shape - They wear the Hair Long with Quantities of Red Ochre intermixtd (sic) with whale Oil or some other Greasy Substance that has a Similar disagreeable Smell - Only One Man had a thick Beard, the others, wore a Small Tuft of Hair on the Point of the Chin & on the Upper Lip like Mustachios - on other parts of the Body they suffered Nature to have its Course, which were as well supplied as in the Common Run of men, except the Breasts, which were all totally destitute of Hair ."** (misdated May 10)⁴²

VANCOUVER'S FIFTH DAY OF EXPLORATION

Vancouver's boat expedition set out again in the morning -- May 10, 1792 (Vancouver's May 11) as the day progressed the weather regained its previous serenity Vancouver's boats moved south down the inlet They crossed the inlet after breakfast and confirmed there were no openings along its eastern side they landed at "Hazel Point" on the western shore to take an observation for latitude at noon by Vancouver's calculation they were due south of their anchorage in Port Discovery here the channel divided into two branches one nearly due north and the other to the southwest keeping with the practice of maintaining the continent on their starboard they examined the northern arm for about seven miles before it terminated in a wide, deep basin (today's Dabob Bay was named by the Wilkes Expedition [1841]) here Dr. Menzies found a profusion of a new species of evergreen huckleberry he spent the afternoon making sketches as he sailed along with Vancouver in the pinnace Vancouver worked his way back down the arm

⁴² Richard W. Blumenthal editor, *With Vancouver in Inland Washington Waters*, P. 21.

camp was made for the night on (Quatsap Point) -- May 10

COLUMBIA REDIVIVA SAILS OUT OF BULLFINCH HARBOR

Three days were spent in profitable trade but Captain Robert Gray was anxious to cross the sand bar and set out in search of the great river

he sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* from Bullfinch (Grays) Harbor -- May 10, 1792

in spite of hostility by the natives three days had been spent in profitable trade

Gray made note in his ship's log: "**At half past seven [p.m.], we were out clear of the bars and directed our course to the southwestward, along shore.**"⁴³

Captain Robert Gray sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* into the night to reach the location he thought was the mouth of the elusive river he sought

in the darkness Captain Gray missed the entrance to (Willapa Bay)

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY ARRIVES AT CAPE DISAPPOINTMENT

After sailing south all night from Bullfinch (Grays) Harbor, the *Columbia Rediviva* sailors "**saw the entrance of our desired port bearing east-south-east, distance six leagues** (about eighteen miles); **in steering sail, and hauled our wind in shore.**"⁴⁴ -- 4:00 A.M. May 11, 1792

Captain Gray and the crew *had* reached the vicinity of the mouth of (today's Columbia River) *Columbia Rediviva* was not the first to visit what appeared to be the mouth of the great river:

- natives had been living along the river for thousands of years;
- Europeans had been sailing the Pacific Northwest Coast for perhaps more than 200 years;
- Spanish Captain Bruno de Heceta had named the area Bahia de la Asuncion de Nuestra Senora "Bay of the Assumption of Our Lady" and "Rio San Roc" (Rogue) [1775];
- British Captain John Meares renamed this location "Cape Disappointment" [1788];
- British Royal Navy Captain George Vancouver recognized but ignored the signs of a great river

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY DISCOVERS A GREAT RIVER

Morning dawned bright and clear providing light, favorable breezes and gentle seas -- May 11, 1792

Captain Robert Gray sighted the entrance to the great river he believed was near

Captain Gray found a clear channel with sufficient depth between sand bars

seventeen-year-old Fifth Mate John Boit noted in the ship's log: "**At eight a.m., being a little to windward of the entrance of the Harbor, bore away, and run in east-north-east between the breakers, having from five to seven fathoms [one fathom is six feet deep] of water.**"⁴⁵

⁴³ James A. Crutchfield, *It Happened in Washington*, P. 9.

⁴⁴ "REMNANT OF the Official Log of the 'Columbia,'" in *Voyages of the "Columbia" to the Northwest Coast: 1787-1790 and 1790-1793*, ed. Frederic W. Howay, (Boston: Massachusetts Historical Society, 1941), P. 435.

⁴⁵ James A. Crutchfield, *It Happened in Washington*, P. 9.

Captain Gray ordered the pinnace (small boat) lowered
which skimmed into the narrow entrance between submerged sand banks

Fifth Mate John Boit noted: **“saw an appearance of a spacious harbour abreast the Ship, haul’d our wind for it, observ’d two sand bars making off, with a passage between them to a fine river. Out pinnace and sent her in ahead and followed with the Ship under short sail, carried in from ½ three to 7 fm. (fathoms of water) and when over the bar had 10fm. water, quite fresh. The River extended to the NE. as far as eye cou’d reach, and water fit to drink as far down as the Bars, at the entrance.”**⁴⁶

COLUMBIA REDIVIVA SAILS UP THE GREAT RIVER

Fifth Mate John Boit continued: **“When we were over the bar, we found this to be a large river [the Columbia River] of fresh water, up which we steered. Many canoes came along-side. At one, p.m., came to with the small bower [bow anchor], in ten fathoms, black and white sand [about ½ mile offshore west of today’s Astoria-Megler Bridge]. The entrance between the bars bore west-south-west, distant ten miles; the north side of the river a half mile distant from the ship [then in Baker Bay]; the south side of the same two and a half miles’ distance [from today’s Astoria, Oregon];”**⁴⁷

Captain Gray and the crew of the *Columbia Rediviva* were the first non-Indians to enter the river that the Chinook Indians called Wimahl (“Big River”)

Captain Gray sailed fifteen miles upriver as John Boit reported: **“The beach was lin’d with Natives, who ran along shore following the Ship. Soon after above 20 Canoes came off, and brought a good lot of Furs and Salmon, which last they sold two for a board Nail. The furs we likewise bought cheap, for Copper and Cloth. They appear’d to view the Ship with greatest astonishment and no doubt we was (sic) the first civilized people that they ever saw....”**⁴⁸

Columbia anchored near the old and important Chinook village of Qwatsamts -- May 11, 1792
that consisted of thirty large cedar plank longhouses arranged in three rows

(located at today’s Point Ellice at the Washington State end of the Astoria-Megler Bridge)

Fifth Mate John Boit concluded: **“Vast numbers of natives came along-side; people employed in pumping the salt water out of our water-casks, in order to fill with fresh, while the ship floated in. So ends.”**⁴⁹

When the natives were asked what the name of their village, the traders heard something that sounded like “Chinook” which became the name of the village, the point it was located on, the inhabitants and ultimately all the people of the lower (Columbia) River natural abundance of the region, including five types of salmon, Wapato, camas and other bulbs,

⁴⁶ Samuel Eliot Morison, *The Maritime History of Massachusetts 1783-1860*, P. 50-51.

⁴⁷ “REMNANT OF the Official Log of the ‘Columbia,’” in *Voyages of the “Columbia” to the Northwest Coast: 1787-1790 and 1790-1793*, ed. Frederic W. Howay (Boston: Massachusetts Historical Society, 1941), P. 435.

⁴⁸ James A. Crutchfield, *It Happened in Washington*, P. 9.

⁴⁹ “REMNANT OF the Official Log of the ‘Columbia,’” in *Voyages of the “Columbia” to the Northwest Coast: 1787-1790 and 1790-1793*, ed. Frederic W. Howay (Boston: Massachusetts Historical Society, 1941), P. 435.

berries and many other plant and animal resources
provided for a complex social and material culture and made the lower (Columbia) River
one of the most heavily populated and richest areas in all of North America
Gray remained in the lower portion of the great river days trading with the Chinook people
who lived along its banks -- especially for sea otter furs which white traders coveted
villages consisting of large rectangular longhouses constructed of huge cedar planks
studded both banks of the river for many miles

VANCOUVER'S BOAT EXPEDITION ENTERS ITS SIXTH DAY OF INVESTIGATION

Cold air had settled in that night and the temperature at dawn was 42°
but still not low enough to kill the mosquitoes and flies that had tormented them through the night
this was reason enough for an early start down the inlet about a mile in width
that now trended south by east -- May 11, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday May 12)
western side of the inlet was along the edge of a ridge of high, snow-capped mountains
that rose over 5,000 feet (the Olympic Mountains) trapping the cold air that served to augment
the force of the winds which along with the tides greatly slowed their progress
As the morning advanced the weather became most pleasant
aided by a gentle breeze the boat expedition was able to move steadily along
to a point where they landed to take the noon sighting for latitude and longitude
lunch was probably eaten at the mouth of (Lilliwaup Creek)
three natives in a canoe joined them and bartered a few trinkets for the usual beads and medals
they indicated more of their companions were located toward the apparent end of the inlet
Vancouver's men proceeded to follow their guides to where they found a few miserable huts
that served as their habitation along the (Skokomish River) which emptied into (Annas Bay)
this river provided one the finest runs of fresh water they had yet encountered
Opposite Anna's Bay another group of about fifty natives was located on (Ayres Point)
among this group they saw natives from the party they had met at Indian Arm
one of whom was easily identified by his severe disfigurement from smallpox
Menzius made the interesting note that among the artifacts the natives possessed
were some Chinese coins made of iron with a square hole in the center
this was a sure indication of trade with the natives of the Strait of Juan de Fuca
Vancouver's boat expedition had stretched their supplies beyond what they had anticipated necessary
and because the sportsmen in their group had been unsuccessful in their hunting efforts
supplies were at a dangerous low
Vancouver decided to conclude this survey and turn back to Port Discovery
it appeared the end of the inlet extended a short distance past where they had met the natives
Vancouver dispatched Lieutenant James Johnstone in the cutter to go around Ayres Point
with instructions that if it were not closed he was to proceed to its end

otherwise he was to return to the expedition
Johnstone was back in a very short time as unfortunately in the darkening evening
he did not see that the inlet extended for another nine miles through a narrow opening
less than a quarter mile wide (at Sister's Point) and actually ended (near today's Belfair)
Preparations were made to return to the *Discovery* and *Chatham*
on their way a suitable stopping place was found for the night -- May 11-12
they pitched their tents on the eastern side of the inlet about two miles north of Indian Arm
they were rewarded for the efforts with pleasant weather and no interference from the natives
This long narrow inlet explored by Vancouver's boat party was given the name "Hood Channel"
in honor of British Admiral Lord Samuel Hood (today's Hood Canal)
who served with the British navy during the American Revolution

VANCOUVER'S BOAT EXPEDITION ENTERS ITS SEVENTH DAY

Already two days overdue in returning to the *Discovery* and *Chatham*
Vancouver's boat expedition set out at first light -- May 12, 1792 (Vancouver's Sunday May 13)
all three boats retraced their route out of this long, narrow arm of the sea
they planned to make no stops except for meals
For the first time in the survey they encountered a stiff northerly breeze right in their teeth
which greatly hindered any progress and kept the boats' crews at the oars until after 9:00 p.m.
they had endured more than fifteen hours of steady pulling without a break
As evening advanced Vancouver commanding the pinnace traveled faster than the heavier launch
Puget was concerned his boat would become separated from the other two in the gathering darkness
happily Puget found the other boats around 10:00 p.m.
camp had been set up on a low sandy spit of land possibly at (Misery Point)
opposite to the entrance to (Dabob Bay)
it was with some anxiety that they watched the tide rise nearly floating them off their campsite
finally the water stopped rising within a few feet of the tents

VANCOUVER'S BOAT EXPEDITION INVESTIGATES FOR AN EIGHTH DAY

Morning dawned calm and pleasant -- May 13, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday May 14)
but soon after Vancouver's men left their campsite conditions underwent a dramatic change
dark and gloomy mists swept over them accompanied by baffling winds
Discovery and *Chatham* anchored at Port Discovery only a few miles to the north
they missed most of the foul weather experienced by Vancouver's expedition in the morning
and did not suffer with the heavy rain until later that afternoon
ships' sailmakers remained busy adding cross bands to the foresail
others in the crew prepared and painted both ships
Discovery's carpenters who had been sent to work on the *Chatham* returned after finishing the job

Vancouver's men arrived at "Foulweather Bluff" and landed off "Skunk Bay" -- 3:00 p.m.

Dr. Menzies noted how the bay got its name: **"In going into the Harbour one of the Gentlemen shot a small animal which diffused (sic) through the air a most disagreeable & offensive smell, I was anxious to take it on board for examination & made it fast to the bow of the Cutter, but the stink it emitted was so intolerable that I was obliged (sic) to relinquish my prize. I took it to be the Skunk or Polecat."**⁵⁰

Foulweather Bluff lived up to its name with a heavy deluge of rain that confined them to their campsite
Vancouver intended to investigate the area south of the point the next day
if the weather permitted -- continuing heavy rains ended the hope

SPANISH LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES ARRIVE AT NOOTKA SOUND

Spanish ships *Sutil* and *Mexicana* arrived at Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel -- May 13, 1792
during the voyage *Mexicana* had lost her masts in a storm
and was towed into Nootka Sound by *Sutil*

Lieutenant Dionisio Alcalá Galiano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdés
remained in Friendly Cove at Nootka Sound for about a month
during that time their ships were repaired and resupplied
both *Mexicana* main mast and foremast were replaced
Galiano met with Chief Maquinna who remembered the Spanish officer
as a member of Alejandro Malaspina's [1791] expedition

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY CONTINUES UP THE GREAT RIVER

Columbia Rediviva, as noted in the ship's journal, faced fresh gales and cloudy weather
many natives were alongside the ship to trade -- May 14, 1792

Captain Gray weighed anchor and sailed twelve to fifteen miles upriver -- about noon
he followed a narrow channel along the north bank of the river
which became increasingly hazardous due to sand bars
this channel eventually became so narrow that it was almost impossible to remain in it
as there were only three to eighteen fathoms water

Columbia Rediviva became grounded on the sandy river bottom -- 4:30 p.m.
but in a short time the rising tide lifted the ship free

Columbia backed off, stern foremost, into three fathoms of water
Gray sent the jollyboat (smallest type of boat carried on ships) ahead to scout the channel
when the crew returned they reported the channel on the north side was not navigable ahead
Columbia Rediviva was moored to the north bank as the weather turned rainy
Columbia was often thronged with local natives who never before had seen a sailing ship

⁵⁰ Archibald Menzies, *Journal of Dr. Archibald Menzies*, P. 19.

Captain Gray sent ashore Fifth Mate John Boit who reported on people he encountered: **“The Indians are very numerous, and appear’d very civil (not even offering to steal). During our short stay we collected 150 Otter, 300 Beaver, and twice the Number of other land furs. The river abounds with excellent Salmon, and most other River fish, and the Woods with plenty of Moose and Dear (sic), the skins of which was (sic) brought us in great plenty, and the Banks produces a ground Nut, which is an excellent substitute for either bread or Potatoes. We found plenty of Oak, Ash, and Walnut trees, and clear ground in plenty, which with little labour might be made fit to raise such seeds as is necessary to the sustenance of inhabitants.”**⁵¹

Gray shifted location up the river several times reaching (Grays Point)

he noted the mouth of (Grays River) before reaching (Harrington Point)

which was a far up the (Columbia River) as he sailed

sea otter was the main goal of the expedition and none were being delivered by the Indians

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER RETURNS TO THE *DISCOVERY*

Rain continued accompanied by a thick fog began the ninth day of Vancouver’s investigation

frustrating plans of further examination -- May 14, 1792 (Vancouver’s May Tuesday 15)

after taking stock of their dwindling supplies Vancouver decided to make a run for Port Discovery

Vancouver’s boat expedition set out from Foulweather Bluff at noon

aided by a strong southeast wind and an equally strong ebb tide they made good time

they kept close to the shore which was often obstructed by the incessant rain

Vancouver’s first boat expedition arrived safely back in Port Discovery -- mid-afternoon

crews of the boat expedition were hungry and drenched to the skin

they had traveled some 195 miles and charted 170 miles of coastline

from Port Discovery to (Admiralty Inlet) and Hood Canal and back to Foulweather Bluff

Those who had remained with the ships in Port Discovery had been in great apprehension

since [May 7] when they heard the exchange of swivel fire between the pinnace and launch

while they waited for Johnstone’s party in the cutter off Marrowstone Island

to arrive at the rendezvous point

Vancouver’s failure to return on the designated day

had added to fears for the safety of the boat expedition in this unknown land

(homecomings like this were repeated many times as the voyage progressed

often with the same concerns due to the boats’ extended absence)

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER BEGINS PREPARATIONS TO CHANGE LOCATIONS

Master Joseph Whidbey with Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton’s assistance

had completed the survey of the anchorage to which Vancouver gave the name of Port Discovery

much to the annoyance of Dr. Menzies who recorded in his journal that since the Spanish

⁵¹ James A. Crutchfield, *It Happened in Washington*, P. 10.

were the first explorers to visit this place it should retain its original name
of Porto de Quimper (Port Quimper) given by Manuel Quimper [1790]
Preparations to get underway began at first light -- May 15, 1792 (Vancouver's Wednesday May 16)
brewer's kettles used to make spruce beer to ward off scurvy were returned from shore
weather was calm but rain continued to fall though not hard enough to prevent the necessary work
sailmakers finished making a new fore topgallant sail
natives continued to visit the ships though not in such great numbers
this enabled Dr. Menzies to study them further
he expressed the thought that they spoke the Nootkan language
he believed this location was the extreme edge of their range
and that their permanent dwellings were closer to the outer sea coast

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY MOVES BACK DOWN THE GREAT RIVER

Morning dawned with light air and pleasant weather -- May 15, 1792
many natives from different villages came alongside the *Columbia Rediviva*

John Boit also noted: **"The Canoes that came from down river brought no Otter Skins...
[and so] we contented ourselves in our present situation which was a very pleasant one."**⁵²

Captain Gray sent the cutter (small sailing boat) ahead with its crew
they found the main channel was located on the south side of the river
with a sandbar in between the two channels

Gray unmoored and sailed downriver to a better anchoring location (at Grays Point) -- 10:00 a.m.
As noted in the ships log Robert Gray and John Boit took the jollyboat ashore at (Grays Point):
"to view the Country and take possession"⁵³

(historians noted the phrase **"and take possession"** was inserted later and is in a different ink)

COLUMBIA REDIVIVA CONTINUES BACK DOWN THE GREAT RIVER

American Captain Gray then in (Grays Bay) ordered the anchor raised -- 4:00 a.m. May 16, 1792
because of lack of wind the *Columbia* was towed three miles by the cutter
jollyboat soundings of the channel found six fathoms of water covered the sandy river bottom
Columbia was greeted by a fresh breeze and sailed with the ebb-tide -- 10:00 a.m.
to a place about two miles west of the Chinook village of Qwatsamts
Back at (Point Ellice) in Baker Bay at the mouth of the (Columbia River)
where Captain Gray had made his first anchorage in the Columbia River
Gray renamed Captain John Meares' Cape Disappointment to the north
"Point Hancock" in honor of revolutionary leader and Boston mayor John Hancock
(eventually Cape Disappointment will retain its name)

⁵² David Lavender, *Land of Giants*, P. 45.

⁵³ James R. Fichter, *So Great a Proffit*, P. 311.

Gray renamed Captain Bruno de Heceta's Cape Frondoso to the south

"Point Adams" for revolutionary hero John Adams

Captain Robert Gray camped and traded with the Indians

Fifth Mate John Boit wrote in the ship's log: **"This River in my opinion, wou'd be a fine place for to sett (sic) up a Factory [trading post]. The Indians are very numerous, and appear'd very civill. (sic) during our short stay we collected 150 Otter, 300 Beaver, and twice the Number of other land furs. the river abounds with excellent Salmon, and most other River fish, and the Woods with plenty of Moose and Deer, (sic) the skins of which was (sic) brought us in great plenty, and the Banks produces a ground Nut, which is an excellent substitute for either bread or Potatoes, We found plenty of Oak, Ash, and Walnut trees, and clear ground in plenty, which with little labour might be made fit to raise such seeds as in nessesary (sic) for the sustenance of inhabitants,...."**⁵⁴

Captain Robert Gray made a chart of the river and the bay in the area but he did not name either (British Royal Navy Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton named Grays Bay [fall of 1792] eventually the larger of the two rivers flowing into (Grays Bay), which the Indians called Ebokwol and Moolhool and became known as Grays River)

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER CONTINUES PREPARATIONS TO CHANGE LOCATIONS

Tents, the observatory and its instruments were returned to the ships

in preparation for sailing -- May 16, 1792 (Vancouver's May Thursday 17)

Dr. Menzies spent the cloudy and wet day carrying several varieties of plants unknown to him aboard ship to be placed in the plant frame on the quarter deck of the *Discovery* much to Captain Vancouver's irritation

some of these plants became associated with his name:

- madrona tree (*arbustus menziesii*) which Menzies called the Oriental strawberry tree,
- large rhododendron (*Menziesia ciliicalyx* -- Washington's state flower);
- evergreen huckleberry (*Menziesia ferruginea*)

Dr. Menzies also collected and identified salal, sand verbena, pearly everlasting, vine maple, wild onion, manzanita (evergreen shrubs or small trees), Oregon grape, western birch, calypso, prince's pine, fairy bells, meadow chickweed, dogwood, hazel, dogtooth lily, devil's club, wild hyacinth, penstemon (flowering plants), wild strawberry, syringa, spiraea, white poplar, trembling poplar, Douglas fir, wintergreen, crabapple, red-flowering currant, mountain ash, garry oak, *Sedum roseum*, thimbleberry, goldenrod, yew, giant cedar, hemlock spruce, wild cranberry, two types of whortleberry and three types of huckleberry

Discovery and *Chatham* were unmoored as preparations were completed -- afternoon May 16 charting of the coasts of Washington and British Columbia now could begin in earnest

VANCOUVER'S EXPEDITION MOVES OUT OF PORT DISCOVERY

⁵⁴ James A. Crutchfield, *It Happened in Washington*, P. 10.

Discovery and *Chatham* weighed anchor -- daylight May 17, 1792 (Vancouver's Friday May 18)
with the help of their small boats towing them they left Port Discovery
occasionally tacking with the light variable breeze from the southeast
Their course took them through the channel to the east of "Protection Island"
(between today's Sequim and Port Townsend)
Vancouver went ashore to obtain latitude bearings at noon
and to look at the surrounding waters from another point of view
Dr. Archibald Menzies jumped at the change to get ashore again where he was delighted to find,
much to his surprise, Prickly Pear Cactus growing in the sandy soil in a stunted form
After his return to the *Discovery* Captain Vancouver decided to divide his resources
Lieutenant-Commander Broughton and *Chatham* would explore north into the San Juan Islands
following the course of several Spanish captains
Vancouver and the *Discovery* would investigate the water south of (Admiralty Inlet)
where no Spanish captain had as yet visited

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY BEGINS PREPARATIONS TO EXIT THE GREAT RIVER

After two days of trading with the Indians at the mouth of the great river
Captain Gray prepared his ship to exit the river
Captain Robert Gray named the river "Columbia's River" in honor of his ship -- May 18, 1792
(he used the possessive form perhaps to honor both his ship and his country)
Captain Gray drew a rough sketch of the entrance of the river (which will later be copied)
Captain Robert Gray did not claim the river or take possession -- he was a trader; not an explorer
however, by entering the river before any other European
Gray not only determined the river's name but gave the United States its strongest claim
to the Northwest Coast of North America

VANCOUVER AND BROUGHTON BEGIN THEIR SEPARATE INVESTIGATIONS

Thick fog held Vancouver's expedition in Port Discovery (Discovery Bay) until around 8:30 a.m.
when a northwest wind dispersed the fog -- May 18, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday May 19)
Discovery and *Chatham* set separate courses amid cheers and best wishes from both ships -- noon
Broughton was instructed to explore one of two large openings leading to the San Juan Islands
he was to take the *Chatham* into the northwest opening to the islands
when he had completed his survey he was to return down the large opening to the southeast
where the *Discovery* would be conducting its investigation
Vancouver set the first inlet southeast of Foulweather Bluff as the rendezvous point

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER WILLIAM R. BROUGHTON SAILS NORTHWEST

When *Chatham* left the *Discovery* -- May 18, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday May 19)

she was about one-half mile northeast of Point Wilson sailing with a westerly wind -- 4:00 p.m.
Leaving Port Discovery Broughton sailed into the maze of channels in the San Juan Islands
following the route previously used by Spanish captains

Chatham traveled the Strait of Juan de Fuca past (Smith Island) and (Minor Island)
Broughton continued on a course that took them into the southern entrance to San Juan Channel
that separates San Juan Island from the rest of the archipelago
Broughton sent the cutter ahead to sound for depth as they sailed beside a rock island (Harbor Rock)
located at the entrance to (Massacre Bay in West Sound on Orcas Island)
at the northern end of the channel leading into (Griffin Bay) near San Juan Island
which *Chatham* entered -- May 18, 1792

Broughton crossed (Griffin Bay) and entered (Upright Channel)
they sailed northwest into the broader San Juan Channel
which ran between San Juan Island and (Shaw Island)

Chatham was moved to the entrance to "Harney Channel"

Lieutenant Johnstone decided to send out two boats to examine openings off the main channel
an Indian village was discovered whose inhabitants offered venison for trade
Facing a strong ebb tide Broughton anchored the *Chatham* around 8:30 p.m.
it was not clear from Broughton's record exactly where the *Chatham* anchored
but Johnstone's rough chart showed an anchor symbol off (Turn Island near Friday Harbor)

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER HAS DIFFICULTY AS HE SETS OUT TO EXPLORE

Captain Vancouver sailed to the southeast out of Port Discovery
aided by the flood tide -- May 18, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday May 19)
when *Discovery's* sail was hoisted it was discovered the yardarm was rotted
it was immediately replaced with the main topsail yard so the ship could sail continue southeast
Captain Vancouver entered what he named "Admiralty Inlet"
(at today's Hainsville -- this is the entrance to today's Puget Sound)

Vancouver gave the water passage the name in honor of the British Board of Admiralty
looking up the bay Vancouver's crewmen had a clear view of Mount Rainier
another snow-capped mountain south of Mount Rainer could be seen from the mast
(this was Mount Saint Helens)

During the day the weather continued warm and the winds remained calm

Discovery sailed between (Foulweather Bluff) and (Double Bluffs)
and entered the northern end (of what we know as Puget Sound)

Lieutenant Peter Puget expressed some concern that without a boat ahead to sound for depth
they were traveling too fast in the flood tide
although they frequently took soundings from the ship and had not found the bottom
with fifty and sixty fathoms of line

Discovery traveled down the east side of “Bainbridge Island”
entering “Elliott Bay” (today’s port of Seattle)
they sailed past a low point of ground on which a small Indian village was located
near the southeastern tip -- afternoon May 18
they saw canoes drawn up on the beach
at what Vancouver called “Village Point” (today’s Schmitz Park in West Seattle)
but the *Discovery* was not visited by natives

Vancouver could see two branches of Admiralty Inlet

with one branch running southwest and another southeast

Captain Vancouver made the decision to anchor on the west side of “Blake Island”

but as they approached their intended anchorage they found it impossible to reach bottom
with sixty fathoms of line

it was necessary for them to retrace their route and come to another anchorage

to the south of the native village at Village Point in (Elliott Bay)

there they safely anchored -- about 7:00 p.m. May 18, 1792

this location made it easy to bring wood and water on board the *Discovery*

describing his anchorage in Elliot Bay, Vancouver wrote (incorrectly dated May 19): **“Our situation being somewhat incommoded by the meeting of the different tides, we moved nearer in, and anchored in the same depth, and on the same bottom as before, conveniently to the shore. Our eastern view now bounded by the range of snow mountains from Mount Baker bearing by compass north to Mount Rainier.... The ridge of mountains on which Mount Olympus is situated, whose rugged summits were seen towering over the eastern side, bounded to a considerable extent our western horizon.”**⁵⁵

Vancouver’s general impression of the land was extremely positive: **“The serenity of the climate, the innumerable pleasing landscapes, and the abundant fertility that unassisted nature puts forth, require only to be enriched by the industry of man with villages, mansions, cottages, and other buildings to render it the most lovely country that can be imagined, whilst the labor of the inhabitants would be amply rewarded in the bounties which nature seems ready to bestow on cultivation.”**⁵⁶

Crewmen busied themselves on shore brewing spruce beer

while carpenters prepared to replace the rotted topsail yardarm using spares cut on shore

’tween deck was washed with vinegar

with so many of the crew away on shore the *Discovery* was given a good airing out

Two natives in a canoe visited the ship but could not be enticed to come aboard

Lieutenant Peter Puget and Dr. Archibald Menzies with a small party landed at the nearby village

there they watched the natives preparing clams and fish for the winter

⁵⁵ Captain George Vancouver, *Voyage of Discovery to the North Pacific Ocean and Round the World*, P. 260-261.

⁵⁶ Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations*, P. 144.

Vancouver noted the village appeared to be a temporary site
eighty to one hundred men, women and children were busily engaged
in rooting out bulbs and wild onions which they dried and made into a paste
Before nightfall Captain Vancouver made a quick excursion to the cove they had seen
he found rocks blocked the entrance barring their entry (to Blakely Harbor)
Vancouver returned to his ship and made plans to dispatch his second boat expedition
to survey the branch of Admiralty Inlet leading southwest from their anchorage

BROUGHTON ON THE *CHATHAM* INVESTIGATES THE SAN JUAN ISLANDS

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton dispatched the *Chatham's* cutter in clear weather
to explore (Upright Channel) -- May 18, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday May 19)
six miles were investigated before the cutter returned to the anchorage
no end to the channel could be found

After breakfast Broughton decided to send two boats under the direction of James Johnstone
to examine the extensive arm that led to the northwest

Lieutenant Johnstone with the launch and cutter went up San Juan Channel
Chatham weighed anchor and sailed as they followed the earlier route of the cutter
into (Upright Channel) through the narrow passage between (Canoe Island) and (Flat Point)
to their next anchorage off (Flat Point) on Lopez Island await the return of Johnstone's party
they tried the seine with limited success

Lieutenant Johnstone's boats arrived at the anchorage -- 8:00 p.m.

Johnstone brought word that the large arm they had been following (San Juan Channel)
communicated with another extensive branch of the sea by two arms,
they had observed (Spieden Channel) opened into Haro Strait
which branched in a northwest direction
and (President Channel) ran to the northeast between (Waldron Island) and Orcas Island

LIEUTENANT PETER PUGET LEADS A BOAT EXPEDITION

Lieutenant Puget led an expedition to explore the sound which bears his name
Puget took the *Discovery's* launch and Master Joseph Whidbey accompanied in the large cutter
they set out with sixteen men from the vicinity of Admiralty Inlet's Village Point
to investigate the tortuous channels -- 4:00 a.m. May 19, 1792 (Vancouver's May 20)
their work progressed at various locations day in and day out rain, wind and shine
Dr. Archibald Menzies joined the party hoping to expand his botanical collection
Puget kept a rough log on his exploration in his journal

“Early in the Morning we left the Ships with the two Boats well Armed. The Launch carried two Swivels besides wall pieces Musquetoons & Musquetts & provided with a Weeks Provisions we began the Examination of the Inlet.”⁵⁷ (dated May 20 -- one day off like Vancouver)

Rowing against the ebbing (receding) tide Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey moved south at a little less than one mile an hour following the narrow arm of (Colvos Passage) which lies between (later named Vashon Island) and the (Kitsap Peninsula) they came upon two Indians who deserted their canoe and fled inland

Puget and Whidbey continued on to (Olalla) and put ashore here for breakfast

Puget reported: **“The land there is in general Low & rising gradually a little Distance from the Beach to the Hills of a Moderate Height & is everywhere covered with wood consisting chiefly of tall Straight Pine Trees.** [Actually these were Douglas fir trees hundreds of years old -- scientific name: *Psuedotsuga menziesil* in honor of Dr. Menzies] **About Nine we left the Breakfast Place with a fine fair Wind & Tide and proceeded on a further investigation of the Inlet.”**⁵⁸

Continuing south along (Colvos Passage) to the east they reached an opening about noon some nine miles from their starting point which led to the conjecture

that the land they had been following to their left side was an island (Vashon Island)

Puget’s boat expedition continued on for about an hour and entered

(Dalco Passage which separates Vashon Island and Point Defiance)

Puget’s men became the first white men to see (Commencement Bay -- today’s Tacoma)

which was in those days a mud flat estuary for the (Puyallup River) and (Hylebos Creek)

Puget noted **“About 4 Miles from the Breakfast Place the Eastern Shore which had hitherto been compact branched off to the Eastward & afforded us a view of an excessive high Snowy Mountain [Mount Rainier], which though frequently seen before I have omitted noting it.”**⁵⁹

As the tide turned they rounded (Point Defiance) and passed through “The Narrows”

where Puget indicated: **“A Most Rapid Tide from the Northwest hurried us so fast past the Shore that we could scarce land. At a Distance of about six leagues from the Breakfast Place the Continent took a Sudden turn to the Westward.”**⁶⁰

unable to row against the strong flood tide sweeping around (Fox Island)

Puget and his men put ashore at (Point Fosdick) and lunched -- about 2:00 p.m. May 19

After lunch Puget’s men were buffeted by a strong tide

they could progress only about a mile to the west where they found a small cove

Puget named this inlet “Indian Cove” (today’s Wollochet Bay) which they explored

at the head of the cove was a small group of natives who had set up a temporary camp to dry fish and clams

⁵⁷ Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992.

⁵⁸ Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992.

⁵⁹ Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992.

⁶⁰ Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992.

they traded buttons and trinkets with the Indians for dried clams and fish
these natives showed no signs of fear or surprise at their new visitors

Puget gave his impression of the natives: **“In their Persons these People are slenderly made. They wear their Hair long which is quite Black and exceeding Dirty. Both Nose and Ears are perforated to which were affixed Copper Ornaments & Beads. The whole Party was Naked.”**⁶¹

Leaving Indian Cove and turning south the progress of Puget’s boat expedition was slowed
by the strong current separating the (Kitsap Peninsula) from (Fox Island)
they reached the western end of narrow (Hale Passage) where they stopped to eat -- 8:00 p.m.
Camp for the night was made near (Green Point) in (Carr Inlet)
setting up the tents drew a number of natives who watched in amazement
as the dwellings suddenly appeared as if from nowhere

BROUGHTON SENDS OUT BOAT EXPEDITIONS

Chatham remained at anchor off (Flat Point) on Lopez Island -- May 19, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 20)
Broughton had his boats busy surveying the maze of channels -- early in the morning
Lieutenant James Johnstone went back to sketch the entrance to San Juan Channel
When the tide slackened Broughton attempted to move the *Chatham* forward -- 8:00 a.m.
she was towed to the northeast with the ship’s launch

Chatham’s position was opposite the entrance to (Harney Channel) -- noon
Lopez Island could be seen to the south

Broughton discovered a native village whose inhabitants offered venison for trade
(Harney Channel) split into three channels which could be seen from the *Chatham*:

- northeast was possibly (Peavine Pass) between (Blakeley Island) and (Obstruction Island)
or perhaps (Obstruction Pass) separating (Obstruction Island) from Orcas Island

Johnstone examined (Harney Channel) to the west which divided into two more channels:

- (West Sound) to the north leading to (Massacre Bay) on Orcas Island
- (Wasp Passage) to the west leading to (Crane Island)

Johnstone returned from sketching San Juan Channel in the cutter to where the *Chatham* was anchored
James Hanson, *Chatham*’s Second Lieutenant took the launch southeast into (Upright Channel)
which he followed for about eight miles between Lopez Island and (Blakeley Island)
finding no apparent termination Hanson returned to the ship

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER EXPLORES AROUND (VASHON ISLAND)

Repairs and maintenance continued on board the *Discovery* at Village Point

Captain George Vancouver took a boat expedition

to examine the passage east of (Vashon Island) -- May 19, 1792 (Vancouver’s Sunday May 20)

Vancouver thought he had found the entrance to a small cove with an island

⁶¹ Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992.

(Vancouver was wrong; this was the opening to Port Orchard Bay)

COLUMBIA REDIVIVA SAILS OUT OF COLUMBIA'S RIVER

After nine days in the Columbia River Captain Gray attempted to leave -- 5:00 a.m., May 20, 1792
lack of wind and a strong tide slowed the ship's progress

it took four hours to re-cross the sandbar of the Columbia River and enter the Pacific Ocean

Captain Gray noted: **"May 20. This day left Columbia's River and stood clear of the bars and bore off to the northward. The men at Columbia's River are strait-limbed, fine-looking fellows, and the women are very pretty."**⁶²

Fifth Mate John Boit further noted: **"We lay in this place till the 20th May, during which time we put the ship in good order and filled up all the water casks alongside, it [the water] being very good. These natives talked the same language as those farther south, but we could not learn it. Observed that the canoes that came down river brought no otter skins, and I believe the otter constantly keep in salt water. They, however, always came well stocked with land furs and capital salmon. The tide set down the whole time and was rapid. Whole trees sometimes come down with the stream. The Indians informed us there were fifty villages on the banks of this river."**⁶³

PETER PUGET LEADS A SECOND DAY OF EXPLORING

Once again the weather changed during the night

Puget's men woke up at dawn to rain in their (Green Point) camp

nonetheless they set out early in the morning May 20, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday May 21)
into (Carr Inlet) at the northern end of (Fox Island)

traveling to the north the tide prevented them from making much progress before breakfast

They enjoyed breakfast on a small island whose major inhabitants were huge flocks of crows

Puget named "Crow Island" (today's Cutts Island)

Puget and his men continued to the end of (Carr Inlet) and explored (Henderson Bay) to its termination
which was in sight before noon (at today's Wauna, Washington)

this was found to be a swampy tide flat too shallow for the boats

Returning south Puget's men saw a small native village on the western shore of Crow Island

they were met by a canoe whose occupants appeared extremely shy and distrustful

as the natives indicated they wanted the visitors to leave

Puget's men tried various schemes to induce the natives to move closer to the boats

it was with a great deal of difficulty that the Indians were finally persuaded to accept a few gifts
after receiving a number of items they returned quickly to their village

Puget's boats had been moving steadily along the western shore of (Carr Inlet)

weather became sultry with temperatures reaching into the nineties

⁶² W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State*, P. 29-30.

⁶³ Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations*, P. 160.

about four miles from the small native village the party came into a small cove
there a stream of fresh water was located at head of the cove
Puget's party intended to lunch on a cliff about sixteen feet above where the boats had anchored
some the crew planned to seine for salmon to restock their food at the mouth of a creek
while preparations were being made to eat
suddenly they were surprised to see about twenty armed natives in six canoes led by "One Eye"
who had followed Puget into the cove and landed close to where the explorers proposed to dine
some two dozen Indians came directly ashore, beached their canoes and strung their bows
Puget later wrote: **"Had a Single Arrow been discharged either at us or the Boat I certainly
would have had the Person Shot, let the Consequence be what it would."**⁶⁴
Puget drew a line on the beach to separate the two groups
with watchful eyes the British sailors proceeded with their dinner plans
on the cliff overlooking the members of their party who remained with the boats
another canoe of armed natives now joined the first arrivals
all of the Indians held an earnest consultation in their canoes
from their gestures it became clear they intended to attack
when one group in a canoe tried to outflank Puget's men in the boats
they were warned off by shouts and these Indians chose to retreat
however they soon returned with bows and arrows ready
they jumped up the bank in a menacing manner
Puget's party and the men in the boats were armed and made it clear
they were prepared to resist any further hostile moves by the natives
one Indian moved right up to Puget and it was necessary that a musket muzzle
be placed against the native's chest to persuade him to give up any plan of attack
after this threat the natives retreated to the beach
Puget's men on the bank finished their dinner with a watchful eye on their visitors
natives continued to make signs that they intended further annoyances
which prompted Puget to order that a swivel be fired from the launch
this, however, had no result as the natives showed neither surprise nor fear
at the sound or the effect of the shot
finally, as the equipment from shore was being returned to the boats
Puget ordered the swivel gun loaded with grape shot and fired across the water
there was no immediate effect as the Indians derisively exclaimed "pop"
without showing any concern
eventually, the Indians relented and unstrung their bows and began trading
they gave up all pretense of a war-like manner and offered their bows and arrows for sale
which was taken as certain indication of their now peaceable intentions

⁶⁴ Al Gibbs, "The News Tribune," May 17, 1992.

Puget named the inlet "Alarm Cove" (today's Van Geldern Cove)
When Puget's party set out to the East they were followed by the Indians now hoping to trade
natives offered everything they had in peaceful barter
but seeing the boats heading out of the channel they returned to their village
Puget's expedition rowed southeast along (Carr Inlet) into (Pitt Passage)
between the (Kitsap Peninsula) and Puget's "Pidgeon (sic) Island" (McNeil Island)
Heavy rain squalls driven by a strong southerly wind swept down on the men that afternoon
Puget beached the boats, sought shelter and pitched their tents earlier than usual
on the west point of (Pitt Passage at Driftwood Annie's Point)
across from where they had slept the previous night at (Green Point)
their narrow escape from the natives had left an indelible impression on all of the men
never again during their time on the lower coast did they allow themselves to be taken surprise

CHATHAM INVESTIGATES AROUND BLAKELEY ISLAND

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton's party escaped the early morning rain experienced by Puget
Chatham was under way -- 8:00 a.m. May 20, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday May 21)
with the boats ahead towing her through narrow (Peavine Pass)
which they thought would carry them into Rosario Strait -- the main channel of the gulf
boats continued to tow the vessel through the narrowest part
and with the help of a strong ebb tide they cleared the channel
and sailed against a light northeast breeze under cloudy skies
they entered Rosario Strait and saw islands and channels in all directions
Lieutenant Johnstone landed on (Blakeley Island) to take the noon reading of latitude and longitude
he examined the northern end of Rosario Strait
to the north and Northeast he could look into the wide expanse of the Strait of Georgia
to (Sinclair Island), "Cypress Island" and Lummi Island⁶⁵ and their connecting channels
While sailing through Rosario Strait the wind suddenly stopped as they cleared the passage
tide carried the *Chatham* north and set her close to the (Blakeley Island) shore
boats did their best to pull her off but the tow rope broke
before they could lay out another line the ship swung inshore and gently touched on the rocks
another mooring cable was taken out on the launch but the current floated the ship off
Chatham swung back to the south before the boats could tow her into deeper water
while the ship drifted, the crew tried sounding to determine the depth
however the lead became entangled and it was lost along with the line
with no wind and the tide continuing to move them quickly toward the land
Chatham anchored off (Blakeley Island) -- 1:00 p.m.
Johnstone took the cutter to examine the Rosario Strait to the east

⁶⁵ Juan Francisco de Eliza named this Isla de Pacheco (1791)

while the rest of the crew tried the seine net without success until sunset
Johnstone and the cutter returned back to the *Chatham* after dark
he reported having found that the easternmost opening (Bellingham Channel)
led back into Rosario Strait with a number of islands off to the east
and a very broad opening (Strait of Georgia) to the northwest

SPANIARDS VISIT THE VILLAGE OF NOOTKA CHIEF QUICOMACSLA

Sutil under Lieutenant Dionisio Alcalá Galiano, commander of the expedition
and *Mexicana* under Lieutenant Cayetano Valdés reach (Vancouver Island)
While visiting Chief Quicomacslá in his village of Maluinas (today's Malvinas on Vancouver Island)
Lieutenant Dionisio Alcalá Galiano noted the chief had changed his name -- May 20, 1792
after the marriage of his daughter to the chief of another tribe
Quicomacslá claimed this marriage gave him status above that of Maquinna
he said he was highest ranking chief of the Nootka people
however, Galiano believed Maquinna was considered the sovereign in the area by most Indians

PETER PUGET LEADS A THIRD DAY OF EXPLORING

Puget's party was unmolested by the natives during the night
camp at (Pitt Passage) was broken -- daybreak May 21, 1792 (Vancouver's Tuesday May 22)
Puget's boats made slow progress against the ebb tide down (Pitt Passage) where they made the turn
into (Balch Passage) between (Pidgeon [sic] Island today's McNeil Island) and (Anderson Island)
this water passage branched to the east and extended as far as they could see
Puget's men stopped at noon on the northern tip of Puget's "Long Island" (Ketrón Island)
they put ashore so Master Joseph Whidbey could break out the sextant
to take an accurate noon sun shot necessary to precisely determine their latitude
They had not proceeded far to the southeast from Long Island when in the space of fifteen minutes
the sky blackened and a squall came on with thunder, lightning and heavy rain,
which forced them to bear across the channel to take refuge in a cove
near the entrance to (Oro Bay) on (Anderson Island) -- about 3:00 p.m.
they hoped that after dinner they could proceed, but the continuing foulness of the weather
forced them to set up camp and look for an early start (in the morning)
In the evening three canoes arrived from the south bringing vegetables and some bearskins for sale
these natives indicated that across the inlet was a large river where many salmon could be caught

CHATHAM EXPLORES ROSARIO STRAIT

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton, now in Rosario Strait, experienced variable weather
early in the morning May 21, 1792 (Vancouver's Tuesday May 22)
by 8:00 a.m. it was calm as they weighed anchor and were towed to the east

Chatham made her way out of Rosario Strait

They experienced a fresh northwest breeze accompanied by a strong flood tide against them
little progress could be made that afternoon

they finally came to anchor in "Strawberry Bay" on Cypress Island

from here the passage to the south appeared entirely open as far as the Strait of Juan de Fuca
Chatham lost an anchor in the bay

Lieutenant James Johnstone attempted to examine an inlet with several islands which lay to the south
but the rapid flood tide prevented him -- this was probably (Thatcher Pass) leading to Lopez Island
Johnstone surmised (probably incorrectly) this inlet was the same as had been previously examined
by Second Lieutenant James Hanson in the *Chatham's* launch

When the tide changed the weather became stormy -- around 7:00 p.m.

heavy rain accompanied by a great deal of thunder arrived from the southeast

DISCOVERY REMAINS ANCHORED AT VILLAGE POINT

Work on the ship progressed under rainy weather that did not interfere with the necessary tasks
carpenters continued to make new yardarms and the sail makers repaired the jib
and fore topmast sails -- May 21, 1792 (Vancouver's Tuesday May 22)

Natives visited the ship in growing numbers but only a few of the braver men came onboard
women, children and most of the men were content with paddling around the vessel
these Indians had only bows and arrows to trade

Vancouver would have welcomed venison or fish which seemed to be in short supply
in the region or else as he noted in his journal: "**...the natives had early discovered that we
were more curious than hungry, ...**"

As even more Indians visited the ship Vancouver detected a change in their canoes
those natives living at Village Point and their friends from the other side of the inlet
had canoes fashioned in the style of the Indians at Nootka Sound
while the canoes of the more distant visitors were cut off square at each end
like those he had seen to the south at Cape Orford off the coast (of Oregon)
although these were longer and considerably larger

NOW-LIEUTENANT ALFREZ MANUEL QUIMPER SAILS FOR SAN BLAS

(After he had delivered the *Princess Real* (British Associated Merchants' *Princess Royal*)
to the British [June 1791] Lieutenant Quimper had remained at Manila Bay in the Philippines)

Lieutenant Quimper was given command of the frigate *San Jose de las Animas*

he sailed out of Manila Bay bound for San Blas accompanied by the schooner *Valdes*
under the command of Lieutenant Cosme Bertadano

these two ships became separated by a hurricane and *Valdes* returned to the Philippines

Quimper continued on to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico) but his ship was so badly damaged

he did not arrive until six months after setting out

BROUGHTON BEGAN THE RETURN TRIP TO THE *DISCOVERY*

Rainy weather that had dampened both Vancouver and Puget also continued in the San Juan Islands and kept Broughton at his anchorage until 6:00 a.m. May 22, 1792 (Vancouver's May 23)
When with a breeze arrived *Chatham* worked her way out of Strawberry Bay
to windward down Rosario Strait
as they moved Southward they noticed several islands to the north
with another channel opening in that direction (Spanish Commandant Francisco de Eliza's
Canal de Guemes later named by Vancouver "Bellingham Channel" which separates
Cypress Island and Guemes Island)
they passed to the northeast of (Sandy Island) on their way into an extensive opening
as a flood tide carried them rapidly into the opening through a great deal of rough water
that gave the appearance of shallow water
they viewed into (Deception Pass) as they crossed to the north shore of the Strait of Juan de Fuca
Chatham's position was south of "Partridge Bank" -- noon
where the nearest land was "Point Partridge" on Whidbey Island
Wind shifted to the northwest -- 4:00 p.m.
with the change in the tide they anchored -- 6:00 p.m. they came to an anchor
at the foot of a remarkable white cliff (Double Bluff)
at the entrance to (Useless Bay) on (Whidbey Island)

PETER PUGET LEADS A FOURTH DAY OF EXPLORING

Lieutenant Puget's men woke to a dense cold fog which detained the party in (Oro Bay)
thus it was not until after breakfast that they were able to get underway
this was an unusually late start -- 8:00 a.m. May 22, 1792 (Vancouver's Wednesday May 23)
They rowed south across the sound to follow the shore into the (Nisqually River) delta
where they had been told that fish was plentiful
but when they arrived they found the water too shallow for their boats
and a falling tide increased the risk of becoming stranded
Puget followed the shore to the northwest into the (Nisqually Reach) which widened slightly
Puget noted: "**We were joined by some Canoes with various Articles for traffic such as Bows
Arrows & their behavior was the Opposite to what we had experienced from the Indians in Alarm
Cove. These came alongside the Boats with the greatest Confidence & behaved themselves with much
propriety a Commerce was therefore established for their Different Articles.**"⁶⁶
Puget's men headed northwest past (Anderson Island) and (Drayton Passage) that opened to the north
they reached (Johnson Point) and saw the opening to (Dana Passage) to the east

⁶⁶ Al Gibbs, "The News Tribune," May 17, 1992.

once again the weather changed and a gathering rain storm forced them to stop barely in time where Puget named "Wednesday Island" (Herron Island -- although it was, in fact Tuesday) unable to proceed they pitched their tents "...to avoid a threatening Squall from the SE. About two it came on with Thunder, Lightening & a heavy Gust which continued without Intermission all the Afternoon. The Rain fell in perfect torrents."⁶⁷

WEATHER IMPROVES FOR THE CREWMEN ON VANCIUVER'S *DISCOVERY*

Anchored at Village Point the morning began with a great deal of rain, thunder and lightening but as the day progressed the weather became pleasant -- May 22, 1792 (Vancouver's May 23) Some of the midshipmen walked the beach and noticed an opening to the west of their anchorage after returning to the *Discovery* ship's clerk and surveyor Henry Masterman Orchard notified Vancouver that the area was actually an entrance to a large natural harbor

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER INVESTIGATES THE OPENING TO RICH PASSAGE

Vancouver's anchorage at Village Point escaped the rain encountered by Puget in the south sound light breezes and clear weather prevailed around (Blake Island) during the morning -- May 23, 1792 (Vancouver's Thursday May 24)

Captain Vancouver, Lieutenant Baker and several midshipmen took the *Discovery's* pinnace on the fourth boat expedition to examine the opening reported the previous evening this opening received the name "Port Orchard Bay"

after ship's clerk Henry Masterman Orchard who first drew Vancouver's attention to it two interlocking points about a quarter mile apart formed a channel free from rocks past the narrow entrance at (Point White) on (Bainbridge Island) which divided Port Orchard Bay to the northwest and (Sinclair Inlet) to the south (today's Puget Sound Naval Shipyard at Bremerton)

Vancouver's journey up "Port Orchard Inlet" took them only as far as necessary to show them the northern end was apparently closed

Vancouver missed the branch to the west that forms (Liberty Bay) and the northern branch that forms the entrance to (Agate Passage) leading into (Port Madison)

This expedition took all day -- May 23, 1792 (Vancouver's May 24)

when they returned to their ship, Vancouver noted the Indians were preparing to move their village he marveled at their process as the mats covering their houses were rolled up

and together with their stock of food and weapons were loaded along with their families and wool dogs into a single canoe

Vancouver reported that when shorn the fleece of the dogs were much like the sheep in England with a mixture of coarse wool and long hairs most suitable for weaving

⁶⁷ Al Gibbs, "The News Tribune," May 17, 1992.

PETER PUGET LEADS A FIFTH DAY OF EXPLORING

Torrential rains had ceased by morning -- May 23, 1792 (Vancouver's Thursday May 24)

Puget's party broke camp on Wednesday (Herron) Island and proceed up the arm north and northwest to the end of (Case Inlet) where they found a low marshy flat here they breakfasted at the mouth of a small creek and tried the seine but managed to catch only one small salmon trout (steelhead)

After breakfast they noticed a narrow opening on the western shore that led off to the south they rowed in that direction as the heavy rain returned

they eventually continued down the (Case Inlet) which was only one quarter to one half mile wide until they reached (Rocky Bay) and then (Vaughn Bay)

Continuing south down (Case Inlet) Puget reached the northern tip of (Harstine Island)

and entered (Pickering Passage) a narrow passageway between the mainland and (Harstine Island)

Puget's men saw (Squaxin Passage between Squaxin and Steamboat islands)

they felt this passage would carry them into the main branch they had been tracing

Camp was made on west shore of (Pickering Passage) across from the northwest tip of (Squaxin Island)

from their stopping place they looked to the southeast down (Peale Passage)

between (Squaxin Island) and (Harstine Island) -- 6:00 p.m.

CHATHAM CONTINUES ON ITS WAY TO RENDEZVOUS WITH *DISCOVERY*

William Broughton with the *Chatham* crossed (Useless Bay) and worked his way up Admiralty Inlet to the rendezvous with Captain George Vancouver

Contrary winds and tide forced him to anchor on the eastern shore

Chatham set sail again with the change of tide -- noon

with the aid of fine breeze they entered (Possession Sound) -- another arm extending north

where they anchored on the eastern shore of (Bainbridge Island at Apple Cove Point)

(across from today's Edmonds) -- 6:30 p.m. May 23, 1792

PETER PUGET LEADS A SIXTH DAY OF EXPLORING

One of Lieutenant Puget's first acts in the morning -- May 24, 1792 (Vancouver's Friday May 25)

was to take an inventory of supplies -- he determined they were running low

what remained would last only five more days at best

however, Puget had noticed the variety of foods eaten by Indians

in making his decision regarding to return to the *Discovery* he noted

he had **“a good Quantity of Clams, which with Nettle tops, Fat hen & Gooseberry tops”**⁶⁸

these would provide enough food to continue

also, the men were not adverse to dining on crows if the need arose

it was resolved to stretch their stores and in spite of unsettled weather with frequent heavy rain,

⁶⁸ Al Gibbs, "The News Tribune," May 17, 1992.

to do their utmost to conclude the survey so that another boat expedition to this area would not be necessary

Setting out from (Harstine Island) toward the south
Puget's boat expedition followed the shoreline of (Squaxin Island) south they entered (Totten Inlet) and investigated as far as "Oyster Bay" at the end of the inlet which they found covered with small oysters

Puget backtracked out of (Totten Inlet) and entered (Squaxin Passage) between (Squaxin Island) and the (Kitsap Peninsula) where camp was made "in a very pleasant situation" their mission had been extended three days longer than anticipated

CHATHAM AND DISCOVERY REDEZVOUS

Chatham left her anchorage at (Apple Cove Point on Bainbridge Island) with the first light -- May 24, 1792 (Vancouver's Friday May 25) she continued south with light breezes from the south and anchored off a sandy point -- 8:00 a.m. during the morning calm weather detained them

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton crossed (Elliott Bay -- the entrance to the port of Seattle today) to where he saw the *Discovery* on the western shore at Village Point (today's West Seattle) he soon arrived and prepared to give his report to Captain Vancouver

VANCOUVER ISSUES INSTRUCTIONS FOR LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER BROUGHTON

Vancouver instructed Lieutenant-Commander Broughton that as soon as Lieutenant Puget returned Broughton was to take Master Joseph Whidbey in one of the boats to examine the opening seen to the north-northwest of the anchorage they were to locate a suitable new anchorage for the *Chatham* and move the ship to that spot where *Discovery* might find her

Discovery shifted her berth to facilitate bringing on board water and wood -- 9:00 a.m. May 25 while the various parties continued work on shore, brewing, getting water and gathering wood and the carpenters were employed fitting a new topgallant mast and yardarm

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER INVESTIGATES TO THE SOUTH OF VILLAGE POINT

Vancouver accompanied by Lieutenant Joseph Baker set out in the pinnace early in the morning to explore the main channel to the east of Puget's route -- May 25, 1792 (Vancouver's May 26) Lieutenant James Johnstone joined the expedition with the *Chatham's* cutter

Vancouver's route took them through (East Passage at today's White Center) about twelve miles from where they started the inlet took a turn to the southwest after traveling another six miles Captain Vancouver and his men stopped for breakfast in the vicinity of (today's Browns Point) -- May 25, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday May 26)

several natives, who behaved in a very civil manner, joined them
trading their bows and arrows and spears for hawk's bells, buttons and beads
Leaving their breakfast spot the party rounded (Brown's Point)
and entered (Commencement Bay -- now the site of Tacoma)

Vancouver wrote in his ship's log: **"Having passed round the point, we found the inlet to terminate here in an extensive, circular, compact bay whose waters washed the base of Mount Rainier . . . The forest trees, and the several shades of verdure (green) that covered the hills gradually decreased in point of beauty until they became invisible . . . the whole producing a most grand, picturesque effect."** -- May 26, 1792 (one day off)

entering (Dalco Passage) to the west Vancouver could see the channel divided
one branch running to the north (Clovos Passage) returned the ship
other passage to the south previously had been investigated by Puget's boat expedition
this meant the land they had followed on their port (left) side this morning was an island
Vancouver named "Vashon Island" in honor of his friend
British Captain, later Admiral, James Vashon
crossing (Commencement Bay) the tide rapidly carried them through a narrow channel
(The Narrows) where they notices three inlets to their west
(Hale Passage, Carr Inlet, and Balch Passage)
traveling another nine miles camp was made on northeastern tip of Long Island⁶⁹ that evening
that night they saw two vessels under sail which at first were taken to be native canoes
but even with a telescope positive identification was not possible
they fired a couple of muskets to draw the attention of the ships but there was no response
this was Peter Puget's expedition returning to the *Discovery*

PETER PUGET LEADS A SEVENTH DAY OF EXPLORING

Setting out from the shore of (Squaxin Passage) -- May 25, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday May 26)
Puget's expedition once again enjoyed pleasant weather
They rowed into a small inlet that trended southward from their camping place
near the end of the inlet they discovered a summer Indian village of about sixty Squaxin people
living in an open shed on the west shore
women were drying clams and fish and weaving baskets
men were fishing and hollowing out dugout canoes
Puget's expedition was treated in a most friendly manner by the natives
who traded a number of skins of various animals
from their reception Puget call the place "Friendly Inlet" (today's Eld Inlet)
British sailors found these natives to be very interesting
except for their habit of smearing themselves with dogfish oil

⁶⁹ This is today's Ketron Island.

Puget wrote: **“Though it was perfect Curiosity which had induced us to land, yet that was the sooner satisfied by the horrid Stench which came from all parts of these Habitations.”**⁷⁰

Peter Puget and his expedition set out again accompanied by several Squaxin natives from the village who paddled their canoes as Puget’s men rowed around (Cooper Point) and into (Budd Inlet) where they landed on the west shore and had breakfast -- May 25, 1792

Setting out once again up (Budd Inlet) the Indians following in their canoes signaled it led nowhere after a quarter of an hour’s further row they reached its termination in a wide muddy flat (Budd Inlet today ends at the site of Olympia)

That afternoon Lieutenant Peter Puget reported: **“I therefore determined to return immediately to the Ships that no time be lost in the Examination of that Branch.”**⁷¹

they came out into (Dana Passage) and followed it into (Henderson Inlet) during the late morning and stopped to dine on (Johnson Point) -- noon May 25

Puget’s men returned to (Case Inlet’s) southern end where they had been two days before -- 1:00 p.m. once again they passed the extensive flats on the southern shore of the (Nisqually Reach) and made the great turn around (Anderson Island)

returning down the main arm toward the *Discovery*

they made rapid progress along the inlet aided by a strong southerly wind and an ebb tide

They passed Long Island where they had previously dined [on May 21, Vancouver’s May 22]

one of the men looking to the south saw signs of a fire inside the northern tip of Long Island which they took to be the evening camp of natives

(Puget did not realized that this was Vancouver’s party, which was in the area

after tracing the extent of the channel that ran off to the eastward of the first channel that Puget and Whidbey had entered)

SECOND BOAT EXPEDITION RETURNS TO THE *DISCOVERY*

Lieutenant Peter Puget decided to run for the ship sailing as quickly as possible this second boat expedition, making a steady five knots,

arrived where they had left the *Discovery* at anchor

shortly after 1:00 a.m. May 26, 1792 (Vancouver’s Sunday May 27)

Discovery was nowhere to be seen

Puget fired the swivel gun to obtain a response from *Discovery* showing its position

in a few moments a comforting report in response was heard

it was determined that the ship had moved her position inshore and closer to the end of the point

an hour later Puget’s men arrived back on board the *Discovery* tired and hungry

but with a feeling of great satisfaction on the completion of their survey -- 2:00 a.m.

⁷⁰ Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992.

⁷¹ Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992.

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION OF SOUTH PUGET SOUND

Vancouver's party embarked from Long Island⁷² -- 4:00 a.m. May 26, 1792 (Vancouver's May 27)
they traveled in the pinnace to the southwest into the (Nisqually Flats)
where they stopped for lunch at (Johnson Point)
Leaving (Johnson Point) they noticed the entrance to (Case Inlet) to the north
and (Dana Passage) to the southwest which they entered
Vancouver and his men traveled (Dana Passage) they came to the entrance
of (Eld Inlet) and (Budd Inlet)
to the north they saw the entrances to (Peale Passage) beside (Harstine Island)
and (Squaxin Passage)
Vancouver made camp that night the head of (Eld Inlet)

VANCOUVER INVESTIGATES THE SOUTH SOUND

Leaving camp Vancouver found the end of (Eld Inlet) to be low swampy ground
where a few Indian huts were located -- May 27, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday May 28)
Vancouver stopped for breakfast before 9:00 a.m. where they had camped the night before
at head of (Eld Inlet)
Vancouver entered (Budd Inlet) which also ended in a muddy flat -- here they stopped for lunch
Vancouver's party made camp that night in a cove at (Johnson Point) about 9:00 p.m.

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER BROUGHTON SEARCHES FOR A NEW ANCHORAGE

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton left Village Point -- May 27, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday May 28)
accompanied by Master Joseph Whidbey in the *Chatham's* launch
with Second Lieutenant James Hanson in the *Chatham's* cutter
they were to carry out Vancouver's instructions that when Puget's party returned
they would examine (Puget Sound) to the north to where it divided at (Whidbey Island)
and move the *Chatham* to a suitable anchorage to the north
Broughton, Whidbey and Hanson examined the continental shoreline
passing (West Point located in today's Discovery Park in Seattle)
and continued on to (Point Edwards -- today's Edmonds)
they entered (Possession Sound) and reached (Gedney Island)
(at the west entrance to [Port Gardner Bay] off today's Everett)

DISCOVERY REMAINS ANCHORED AT VILLAGE POINT

Discovery remained at anchor as various expeditions investigated the region
Dr. Menzies took the opportunity to go ashore -- May 27, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday May 28)

⁷² This is today's Ketron Island

to study the plant life and habits of the natives

he observed the women of the tribe industrially digging for bulbs

Menzies identified these as “False Onion”

Menzies collected barnacles for food

and pointedly remarked on the general idleness of the native men

weather continues generally unsettled with intermittent periods of rain

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER RETURNS TO THE *DISCOVERY*

Vancouver’s party set out from (Johnson Point) at daybreak -- May 28, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 29)

they stopped for breakfast at (North Point) -- noon

Setting out once again an ebb tide aided their progress as they hurried northward

dinner was taken on (Gibson Point) at the entrance to (Carr Inlet)

Vancouver and his men continued northward through (Colvos Passage) toward the ship

Vancouver arrived safely at the *Discovery* -- 9:00 p.m. May 28

this boat expedition was, in fact, a waste of four days of surveying

as most of that region previously had been explored by Peter Puget and his boat expedition

Vancouver gave the name “Restoration Point” to his informally named Village Point

there the *Discovery* was anchored in honor of the restoration of England’s King Charles II

when the English, Scottish and Irish monarchies were all restored [May 28, 1660]

this event was celebrated with a salute of seventeen guns (of course one day early)

In recognition of First Lieutenant Peter Puget’s efforts,

Vancouver attached his name to the area he had explored

Vancouver wrote in his log books: **“Thus by our joint efforts we had completely explored every turning of this extensive inlet; and to commemorate Mr. Puget’s exertions, the south extremity I named Pugets (sic) Sound.”**⁷³

WILLIAM BROUGHTON CONTINUES THE SEARCH FOR A NEW ANCHORAGE

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton sent Master Joseph Whidbey in the *Chatham*’s launch

and Lieutenant James Hanson in the *Chatham*’s cutter to explore

along the eastern shore of (Port Gardner) -- May 28, 1792 (Vancouver’s Tuesday May 29)

they had instructions to follow Puget Sound north along the eastern shore

to a point where it should divide into two or more channels

Whidbey and Hanson took the right-hand passage between Camano Island and the mainland

(Vancouver later named this body of water “Port Susan”

in honor of the wife of his friend Admiral Sir Alan Gardner)

Whidbey and Hanson discovered Port Susan was closed at the far end by a wide sandy flat

they were not able to proceed any farther because of the shallows

⁷³ Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992.

but they could see where (South Pass) and (West Pass) entered (Skagit Bay)
Whidbey and Hanson established camp on the east side of (Gedney Island) that evening

SALVADOR FIDALGO ARRIVES AT BAHIA DE NUNEZ GAONA (NEAH BAY)

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo under orders from Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes guided the covertte *Princesa* into Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) -- May 28, 1792
to establish a second colony -- this settlement would be south of the Strait of Juan de Fuca and would be the first European colony in (today's Washington State)
Accompanying Major Lieutenant Fidalgo were Spaniards Antonio Serantes, second in command, Hipolito Tono, Chaplain Jose Alejandro Lopez de Nava and Surgeon Juan de Dios Morelos
thirteen soldiers of the First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia to protect the colony and seventy Peruvian and Mexican crewmembers

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER SAILS THE *DISCOVERY* NORTH TO CONTINUE HIS INVESTIGATION

Captain George Vancouver decided it was time to go north
to rendezvous with *Chatham* -- May 29, 1792 (Vancouver's Wednesday May 30)
With a pleasant southerly breeze *Discovery* departed under topsails, topgallant sails and foresail for the opening followed by Broughton -- 8:30 a.m. May 29, 1792 (Vancouver's May 30)
the slight breeze changed to the southeast with a change in the tide at noon
return of the ebb tide in the afternoon slowed Vancouver's progress
and a strong rip tide developed which rendered the ship almost unmanageable
with the boats ahead towing the *Discovery*, they had made about three miles in the evening,
there was no sight of the *Chatham*
Lieutenant-Commander Broughton had anchored closer (to what is now Everett)
Discovery reached "Point Elliot" (near today's Mukilteo)
for a time neither of the two vessels knew the other's location
Captain Vancouver ordered a swivel gun to be fired
Chatham immediately responded by firing her swivel gun to denote her position
which was determined to be behind a point on Vancouver's starboard shore
in the gathering dusk Vancouver saw the *Chatham* bearing a light at her mast head
to which the *Discovery* directed, and after much hard work with the boats towing
anchored with the small bower (bow anchor) -- 11:00 p.m. May 29, 1792
Discovery and *Chatham* were anchored at Point Elliott (today's Mukilteo)
on which natives had left a number of wool dogs whose nocturnal howling disturbed their rest

JOSEPH WHIDBEY AND JAMES HANSON CONTINUE THEIR INVESTIGATION

After breaking the Gedney Island camp -- May 29, 1792 (Vancouver's Wednesday May 30)
Master Joseph Whidbey the *Chatham's* launch

accompanied by Second Lieutenant James Hanson in the *Chatham's* cutter
passed the *Chatham* sailing off the east end of Gedney Island
Whidbey and Hanson continued to explore although that was contrary to their orders
Whidbey believed his boats had been seen by the *Chatham*
Whidbey and Hanson entered (Saratoga Passage) between (Whidbey Island) and Camano Island
about four miles up the passage Whidbey noted a village on the (Whidbey Island) side
with numerous native inhabitants
Vancouver had ordered Whidbey to avoid landing near large numbers of people
Whidbey crossed to the (Camano Island) side
but nevertheless was met by several hundred people who greeted them in a friendly manner
some families were in canoes and others were walking on the shore
Whidbey reported they had with them **“about forty dogs in a drove, shorn close to the
skin like sheep”**⁷⁴
Whidbey stopped opposite a low projecting point to take sighting to identify his latitude -- noon
he noted a substantial native village was located on (East Point) and landed
these natives were surprised by the color of Whidbey's skin
and seemed never to have seen Europeans but did have European goods acquired in trade
they were very friendly and presented the exploring party with water, roasted roots, dried fish
and other food
when one of the British boats ran aground the chief organized his people to help push it off
Whidbey moved further up the arm about nine miles from its entrance
to an anchorage near the northern end of Camano Island

MAJOR LIEUTENANT FIDALGO REACHES BAHIA DE NUNEZ GAONA (NEAH BAY)

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo sailed the frigate *Princesa* north from San Blas, New Spain
and entered Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) with eighty-six men -- May 29, 1792
(Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper claimed the bay and named it Bahia Nunez Gaona [1790])
this port had excellent defensive conditions since it was a rocky plateau by the sea
next to a very clear stream whose bank was covered by a natural fence of dense trees
there was no need to build a stone wall as was necessary in California
Fidalgo's men cleared a level shelf of land on the south side of Strait of Juan de Fuca
hemlock, spruce, cedar and fir trees were removed to form an open space
this was enlarged in circular form until it reached in all directions **“the length of a gunshot”**⁷⁵
carpenters sawed the logs into proper lengths and split them

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER KEEPS THE *DISCOVERY* AT ANCHOR AT POINT ELLIOTT

⁷⁴ Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver's Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 162.

⁷⁵ Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage*, P. 91.

From the Point Elliott anchorage Vancouver could easily view nearby (Gedney Island)
Vancouver and botanist Archibald Menzies from the *Discovery* and *Chatham's* William Broughton
went ashore to explore (the area of today's Mukilteo) -- May 30, 1792 (Vancouver's May 31)
Dr. Menzies' morning stroll took him along the beach
he listed aquatic plants found in the marsh near the beach
(close to the present Mukilteo light house)
Broughton called the place "Rose Point" for the many roses found on the site
That afternoon the *Discovery* and *Chatham* headed northwest but finding little wind
they anchored between Camano Head⁷⁶ and (Gedney Island off today's Tulalip)
Vancouver named "Port Gardner" (today's Saratoga Passage)
in honor of British Admiral Sir Alan Gardner

JOSEPH WHIDBEY AND JAMES HANSON COMPLETE THEIR SURVEY

Master Joseph Whidbey and Second Lieutenant James Hanson left their camp
on the north end of Camano Island -- May 30, 1792 (Vancouver's Thursday May 31)
At the top of Port Gardner (Saratoga Passage) Whidbey turned east
to explore what is now (Skagit Bay)
he found navigation difficult and missed the narrow passage of (Deception Pass)
which separates (Whidbey Island) from (Fidalgo Island)⁷⁷
they reached the rocky shallows at the end (at today's Hope Island in Skagit Bay)
here they made camp for the night

LIEUTENANTS WHIDBEY AND HANSON COMPLETE THEIR INVESTIGATION

Master Joseph Whidbey led his expedition from his camp on (Hope Island)
back to (Whidbey Island) -- May 31, 1792 (Vancouver's Friday June 1)
Whidbey explored a large cove opening west into the island
(which Vancouver named "Penn's Cove" -- today's Penn Cove on Whidbey Island)
Whidbey found deserted villages on both points at the entrance to the cove but despite this
he found this region to be the most populous area of Puget Sound they had seen
he estimated some 600 inhabitants
Whidbey and Hanson completed their survey and returned to Port Susan -- May 31
(Vancouver later wrote in his journal: "**This determined** [the shore they had been exploring] **to be an island, which, in consequence of Mr. Whidbey's circumnavigation, I distinguished by the name of Whidbey's Island: and this northern pass, leading into port Gardner, Deception Passage.**")

SPAIN ESTABLISHES A COLONY (IN TODAY'S WASHINGTON)

⁷⁶ Named by Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza in 1790 for Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano of the Spanish Navy.

⁷⁷ Juan Francisco de Eliza named the island Isla de Fidalgo for Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo of the Spanish Navy.

Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) was not well suited for mooring large ships
but it was an excellent defensive position for protecting Spain's political, commercial
and scientific interests in the region

it was located by the sea on a rocky plateau next to a very clear stream
with a bank covered by trees growing so tightly

that there was no need of a stone wall as was necessary in California

"Fort Nunez Gaona" (Fort Neah Bay) was functioning -- June 1792

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo put a large flag pole in place
a battery with six mounted cannons was put into place and a 24-hour guard posted
each dawn, sunset and important days were saluted with a cannon shot
to impress the Indians and any British that might be in the area

When it was completed Nunez Gaona consisted of about ten buildings
including an infirmary, storehouses, dwellings, a church and bakery

Princesa's cargo hold had a quantity of crudely-made bricks

some bricks were used for the blacksmith's shop, others to shelter the bakery
and a rough barracks that was constructed in the center of a circle

still other bricks were used for building a beehive oven coated with clay

long marsh grasses were gathered and laid out in bundles to dry

these were used for thatching steeply-sloping roofs

there were also corrals for several hogs, sheep, goats and eight head of runty black Spanish cattle
that had been brought aboard the *Princesa*

a high fence of woven branches served as a chicken yard

Salvador Fidalgo traded as much as possible with the local Makah Indians to preserve

his meager stores of sacks of dried beans, cheese, and rice along with jerked and pickled meats

Chief Tatoosh, the most important leader of the Makah villagers,

held the same status as the Nootka's Maquinna and Clayoquot Sound's Wickaninnish

Chief Tatoosh served as the natives' ambassador

As the Spanish settlers conducted trade activities they also shared their own culture

steel implements, ceramics and other technology were introduced into the Pacific Northwest

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER CLAIMS "NEW GEORGIA" FOR BRITAIN

Captain Vancouver's expedition sailed north from Camano Head -- June 1, 1792

to investigate the area around Port Susan discovered by Master Whidbey and Lieutenant Hanson

Vancouver provided his men with some recreation time: "**After the great fatigue our people had
lately undergone, [two days] were well appropriated as holidays. Sunday, the 3rd all hands were
employed in fishing, with tolerably good success, or in taking a little recreation on shore....**"⁷⁸

(once again one day after the actual date of June 2)

⁷⁸ Clarence Bagley, *History of Seattle from the Earliest Settlement to the Present Time...*, Vol. 1 P. 5.

Discovery and *Chatham* moved from Port Susan to Possession Sound (Everett) -- June 3, 1792 where Vancouver formally took possession of the entire region naming it "New Georgia" with double allowance of grog in honor of the birthday of King George III

Vancouver noted in his ship's log wrongly dated: "...**On Monday, the 4th, they were served as good a dinner as we were able to provide them, with double allowance of grog to drink the King's health, it being the anniversary of His Majesty's birth, on which auspicious day I had long since designed to take formal possession of all the countries we had lately employed in exploring, in the name of and for His Britannic Majesty, his heirs and successors.**"⁷⁹

GALIANO AND VALDES INVESTIGATE (WASHINGTON STATE'S) INLAND WATERS

Lieutenant Dionisio Alcalá Galiano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes sailed the *Sutil* and *Mexicana* out of Santa Cruz de Nuca in Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound -- early morning June 5, 1792 to complete the survey of the inland waters begun by Captain Alejandro Malaspina ten Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia soldier serving at Fort San Miguel supplemented the crews of both ships' crew of thirty-nine (this four month effort will be the last Spanish exploring expedition on the coast) Galiano and Valdes carried surveying instruments such as sextants and marine clocks they were accompanied by artist Josef Cordero

whose pictures preserved an accurate rendition of native costumes

Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano remained at Friendly Cove to complete final preparations for his investigation of Russian-America waters with the *Aranzazu*

SPANISH EXPLORERS VISIT NUNEZ GAONA (FORT NEAH BAY)

Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes entered the Strait of Juan de Fuca they reached the Spanish colony of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) aboard the *Sutil* and *Mexicana* -- June 6, 1792

they anchored near Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo's ship, the corvette *Princesa*

Galiano and Valdes were welcomed by Makah Chief Tatoosh

Tatoosh, continuing the friendly impression he had made on Galiano and Valdes,

visited the Spanish ships and was invited on board the Spanish ship *Sutil*

he examined it with a curiosity that impressed Galiano

Tatoosh said he was planning to travel to the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes urged him to accompany the Spanish and he accepted the offer

Tatoosh was the first Makah native to board a Spanish ship

when he sailed across the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Galiano reported that the Makah natives were friendly much like the Nootka Indians

but he also noted they had acquired a large number of firearms

⁷⁹ W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State*, P. 37.

and desired in trade for gunpowder above all else
Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo did not trust these Indians

PUGET AND WHIDBEY LEAD A BOAT EXPEDITION OUT OF POSSESSION SOUND

Lieutenant Peter Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey were dispatched on another boat expedition taking *Discovery's* launch and cutter -- June 6, 1792 (Vancouver's Thursday June 7) they set out from Possession Sound to examine an opening along the eastern shore their route up the strait exposed them to a heavy westerly swell at broke powerfully on the shore and gave an entirely different appearance to the country from that which they had enjoyed on their excursions south instead of lush foliage and forests, the land appeared rocky and inhospitable it was sparsely covered with small trees that provided no shelter

They arrived at (Deception Pass) in the evening at first glance the opening appeared to be so narrow as to be impassable however, the ebb tide rushing through soon changed their minds as the force was so strong that the boats could make no progress in their attempt to enter launch and cutter were forced to made a landing at the entrance to (Deception Pass) they were forced to spend the night on the outer side looking across to Lopez Island

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM INVESTIGATE THE SAN JUAN ISLANDS

Captain Vancouver set out from his Possession Sound anchorage -- June 7, 1792 (Vancouver's June 8)

Discovery and *Chatham* rounded (Point Colville) on Whidbey Island and passed "Deception Pass" Vancouver wrote in his journal that the first inlet turned out to be a **"very narrow and intricate channel, which ... abounded with rocks above and beneath the surface of the water"**⁸⁰ sailing northwesterly they turned north at (Point Colville) on Lopez Island before coming to anchor in Strawberry Bay off Cypress Island

LIEUTENANT PUGET AND MASTER WHIDBEY CONTINUE THEIR BOAT EXPEDITION

Their boat expedition broke camp on (Deception Pass) -- June 7, 1792 (Vancouver's Friday June 8) where they watched the *Discovery* and *Chatham* moving northward up the strait Peter Puget and Joseph Whidbey waited for slack water to enter the narrow opening once through they quickly determined that it connected with the area previously surveyed by Master Joseph Whidbey and Second Lieutenant James Hanson they entered (Skagit Bay) and Puget determined their latitude at (today's Hope Island) -- noon completing the survey of (Skagit Bay) they attempted to depart through Deception Pass but the flood tide pouring through (Deception Pass) delayed their getting into the main channel

⁸⁰ Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver's Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 178.

until later that evening

Puget and Whidbey moved about four miles up the continental shore, past two small islands to the west where they stopped for the night on the mainland opposite (Burrow's Island) below Fidalgo Head

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY EXPERIENCES AN INDIAN ATTACK

Sailing the *Columbia Rediviva* from the Columbia River Captain Gray reached (Vancouver Island)

John Boit accompanied by the ship's carpenter went ashore looking for wood for a topmast they were separated from the main party on shore

when about two hundred Indians rushed out of the woods -- June 7, 1792

nearly surrounded, Boit and his companion were forced to flee for their lives

reuniting with the main party the sailors retreated firing their muskets over the Indians' heads still the natives advanced getting close enough to throw their spears

several Indians were killed by musket fire as the sailors made their way out of the woods to the beach

men on board the *Columbia* heard the reports from the muskets

it did not occur to them that an attack was occurring as it had not happened here before

Boit and his shore party reached the beach and hailed the ship

cannons were loaded with cannon balls and grapeshot (small pellets fired from a cannon)

under cannon fire the attackers fell back and soon disappeared

as the shore party retreated to the ship

LIEUTENANT PUGET AND WHIDBEY CONTINUE THEIR INVESTIGATION

Returning from their camp across from (Burrow's Island), members of this boat expedition

stopped to visit the *Chatham* in Strawberry Bay -- June 8, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday June 9)

to see if there were any further instructions and to replenish their supplies

Puget and Whidbey headed back across the strait to continue their survey

following the mainland they passed through a channel to the east against a strong tide

and landed on an island to obtain a view of the water ahead

they entered a large sound leading to the southeast and traced it to its termination

in a broad flat that gave every indication of communicating with the area previously examined

when they had entered the upper part of (Skagit Bay) through Deception Pass [June 7]

Puget and Whidbey continued the survey north along the eastern shore of the sound

they passed through Guemes Channel (off today's Anacortes) and stopped at (Hat Island)

here they could observe Padilla Bay, (Huckleberry Island) and (Saddlebag Island) to the north

they spent the afternoon tracing the shore of the Padilla Bay

They camped for the night on the long sandy spit of (William Point) on (Samish Island)

from where they had a clear view to the northwest and north

while the men were preparing camp, the Peter Puget and Joseph Whidbey left the cutter

to examine Vendovi Island⁸¹ to the northwest to take their bearing and observe the general area from this station they had an unobstructed view southeast into (Samish Bay), and of the channel leading to the northwest into the Strait of Georgia (Jose Maria Narvaez's Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario) and north into Seno Gaston (Bellingham Bay)

When Puget and Whidbey returned to camp one of their men had an encounter with a skunk in the dark he stepped on the animal which responded in its hostile manner with such power that the smell woke everyone in the camp later they attempted to boil the man's clothes to remove the stench, but it was to no avail so the men had to bear with this revolting situation until he could return to the ship (where he was given used clothes under the condition that he burn his old uniform)

GALIANO AND VALDES MAKE PREPARATIONS TO LEAVE BAHIA DE NUNEZ GAONA

Lieutenants Galiano and Valdes said farewell to Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo -- June 8, 1792 they left Fidalgo awaiting fresh orders from Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra Quadra was in Nootka Sound awaiting the British negotiator who had been expected for weeks *Sutil* and *Mexicana* sailed toward Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) -- June 8 they crossed the Strait of Juan de Fuca a cruised along the coast of (today's Vancouver Island)

LIEUTENANT PUGET AND MASTER WHIDBEY COMPLETE THEIR INVESTIGATION

At dawn Puget's party left their (Samish Island) camp -- June 9, 1792 (Vancouver's Sunday. June 10) they made a brief examination of (Samish Bay) to the southeast they stopped for breakfast on Vendovi Island and took their bearings Their instructions had been not to pass to the north of the ship's anchorage their present situation marked the northern extremity of their survey After breakfast they made for the west side of Cypress Island passing Bellingham Channel to the south which separates Guemes and Cypress islands Peter Puget and Joseph Whidbey sailed the launch and cutter around the north tip of Cypress Island down Rosario Strait to the anchorage of the *Discovery* and *Chatham* in Strawberry Bay off Cypress Island where they arrived -- 2:00 p.m. they had explored and mapped the San Juan Islands and identified the principal islands for the first time (whereas the year before Jose Maria Narvaez had shown them as one large island)

GALIANO AND VALDES REACH PUERTO DE CORDOBA (ESQUIMALT HARBOR)

After sailing through the night *Sutil* and *Mexicana* reached Puerto de Cordova (Esquimalt Harbor) Makah Chief Tatoosh suggested a place for them to stop and take on water

⁸¹ Vendovi received the name of Islas de Aguayo from Dionisio Galiano.

as there were few sources in the area -- June 9, 1792
Lieutenant Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes were impressed by Tatoosh
he knew the names of all the Spanish and British captains who had been to the region
he said that two ships had already entered the Strait of Juan de Fuca
(this was British Captain George Vancouver's expedition)
Tatoosh was shown a map of the Strait of Juan de Fuca
he recognized many places and told the Spanish what the native names were
Sutil and *Mexicana* anchored in Puerto de Cordova (Esquimalt Harbor) about noon -- June 9, 1792
soon two of Chief Tatoosh's wives arrived by canoe after following them from (Neah Bay)
they had not wanted to sail on the Spanish ships
Spanish artist Jose Cardero who accompanied Galiano and Valdes
drew portraits of Tatoosh and the two wife who had followed from (Neah Bay)
Spanish officers went to the villages on shore -- evening June 9
Galiano thought Tatoosh was the chief of these villages also
but that was unlikely since they were Songhees -- a different people than the Makah
however, Tatoosh may have been a relative

CAPTAIN GRAY CONTINUES TO TRADE WITH THE INDIANS

Trade was peacefully conducted as any canoes arrived with plenty of otter skins to sell
until twenty large war canoes carrying more than thirty men each were seen -- noon June 9, 1792
by using a telescope it was determined they were armed with bows and arrows and spears
Friendly natives involved in trading informed the Bostons these were the Indians fired on before
Captain Gray ordered the attackers to stay away from the *Columbia Rediviva*
all complied except one canoe with forty-two men aboard
soon more canoes began to approach as the natives sang a war song
muskets and cannons were fired over their heads driving them back to about 100 yards distance
one small canoe paddled by two men with a chief aboard stayed between the ship and the canoes
while the chief counted the men on the ship and encouraged the Indians to attack
Gray told the chief not to come near the ship but he persisted and was killed
also the chief warrior of the canoes threw his spear into the ship and was shot
attacking natives retreated from the ship
As the attacking Indians withdrew some Indians who had previously participated in trade
came back alongside the ship and traded their otter skins

LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES INVESTIGATE THE SAN JUAN ISLANDS

Galiano intended to sail quickly to Jose Maia Narvaez's Seno Gaston (Bellingham Bay, [1791])
then north into Naravez's Gran Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario la Marinera (Strait of Georgia)
Galiano and Valdes carried maps of the Strait of Juan de Fuca that had been drawn

by Commandant Francisco de Eliza [1791]
Galiano, in accordance with his orders, was most interested in the unexplored waters
that extended east into the continent and for that reason
he opted not to explore the south-tending Boca de Caamano (Admiralty Inlet)
which would have led him into Puget Sound
Sutil and *Mexicana* left Puerto de Cordova (Esquimalt Harbor) -- early morning June 10, 1792
they made for "Isla de Bonilla" (Smith Island) and turned north sailing for Lopez Island
Sutil and *Mexicana* anchored at the southern end of Lopez Island (near today's Point Colville)
where a group went ashore with chronometers to make astronomical observations
to enable them to improve their longitude measurements
Sutil and *Mexicana* tacked toward Fidalgo Island -- June 10
they passed (Burrows) and (Allen) islands and steered for the center of Guemes Channel

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SETS UP HIS BASE OF OPERATION AT BIRCH BAY

Discovery and *Chatham* left Strawberry Bay off Cypress Island
and lay at anchor in Birch Bay -- June 10, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday June 11)
this became the base for an eleven-day excursion along the southwest coast
of (today's British Columbia and the Gulf Islands -- Canada's San Juan Islands)
named after Vancouver's Gulf of Georgia (today's Strait of Georgia or Georgia Strait)
"Birch Bay" was named for the black birch growing in great abundance in the vicinity
it had taken the 145-man expedition over fourteen months to get there from England
"Point Roberts" was identified -- June 10, 1792
Point Roberts acquired its present name from Vancouver, who named it after his friend
Captain Henry Roberts who had sailed with British Captain James Cook
and originally had been given command of Vancouver's expedition

GALIANO AND VALDES CONTINUE THEIR EXPLORATION OF THE SAN JUAN ISLANDS

(Spain's Juan Carrasco and Jose Maria Narvaez in their ship *Santa Saturnina* [1791]
had identified what they believed was an inland sea they named Canal de Floridablanca
Lieutenant Dionisio Alcalá Galiano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes were assigned
to further investigate the exact nature of the Canal de Floridablanca (today's Fraser River)
Lieutenants Dionisio Alcalá Galiano and Cayetano Valdes sailed northeast -- June 11, 1792
they passed through part of Rosario Strait and through Guemes Channel into Padilla Bay
before sailing around (Samish Island) and entering (Samish Bay)
they noted an Indian village was located on the shore of Guemes Island
that evening they anchored in Seno de Gaston (Bellingham Bay)

LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES COME UPON A BRITISH SHIP

Sutil and *Mexicana* were becalmed on a hot day

in Jose Maria Narvaez's Seno Gaston (Bellingham Bay) -- June 12, 1792

to add to the men's alarm, they saw a mysterious illumination to the east

at times they heard rumblings like a volcano and saw flashes of light increasing in a frequency

they saw clouds of what appeared to be steam coming from "Mount Carmelo" (Baker)

Spanish lieutenants Dionisio Alcala Galiano on the *Sutil* and Cayetano Valdes sailing the *Mexicana* entered Rosario Strait

they proceeded north past the mouth of the (Nooksack River) at (Lummi Bay)

they sighted a launch and cutter at 8 p.m. -- June 12, 1792

from the ship's square rigging Galiano concluded they were British

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEADS A BOAT EXPEDITION NORTH

Leaving the vicinity of Birch Bay, Vancouver's boat expedition began an investigation

of Vancouver's "Burrard Canal" (Burrard Inlet) -- June 12, 1792 (Vancouver's June 13)

and (today's Sunshine Coast)

Vancouver renamed Francisco de Eliza's Boca de Floridablanca [1791]

after his friend and former ship-mate Captain (later Admiral) Sir Harry Burrard

(Burrard Inlet, located beyond today's Stanley Park, is main harbor for Vancouver, B.C. today)

LIEUTENANT DIONISIO GALIANO AND CAYETANO VALDES ENTER BOUNDARY BAY

Sutil and *Mexicana* sailed into Boundary Bay and verified the point of land there was not an island

they named the peninsula "Punta Cepeda" (Point Roberts) -- morning June 13, 1792

VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A SECOND DAY

Leaving Burrard Inlet Vancouver Vancouver's two boats continued north -- June 13, 1792

they investigated Howe Sound (Spain's Boca del Carmelo)

and passed through the islands at the entrance to the sound reaching "Jervis Inlet"

Vancouver honored his friend Rear-Admiral Sir John Jervis, Earl of St. Vincent

Vancouver noted (Thursday July 14): **"The shores of these, like the adjacent coast, are composed principally of rocks rising perpendicularly from an unfathomable sea; they are tolerably well covered with trees, chiefly of the pine tribe, though few are of luxuriant growth."**

they reached (today's Woodfibre near Squamish, B.C.) were Vancouver recorded in his journal: **"In this dreary and comfortless region, it was no inconsiderable piece of good fortune to find a little cove in which we could take shelter, and a small spot of level land on which we could erect our tent."**

LIEUTENANT COMMANDER JACINTO CAAMANO SAILS TO EXPLORE RUSSIAN-AMERICA

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra sent Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano

aboard the *Aranzazu* to survey the coast of the Russian-America (Alaska) panhandle

from Bucareli Sound south to eliminate the last large gap in the coastline map
Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano sailed the *Aranzazu* out of Nootka Sound -- June 13, 1792
in the final effort to find the fabled Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

LIEUTENANTS DIONISIO GALIANO AND CAYETANO VALDES ENCOUNTER THE BRITISH

Sutil and *Mexicana* were in very shallow water -- 2:00 a.m. June 14, 1792

Galiano anchored until dawn midway between (Birch Point)
and the east tip of "Punta Cepeda" (Point Roberts)

Spanish ships sailed around Punta Cepeda -- 7:00 a.m. June 14

simultaneously a square-rigged brigantine moved out from Birch Bay

Sutil raised the Spanish flag and the British ship drew near and saluted

an English officer identified himself as Naval Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton
commander of the HMS *Chatham* -- he asked permission to board the *Sutil*

Meeting between Galiano and Broughton was a friendly one

Broughton currently was occupied taking on water from a small stream

he invited the Spanish to join him collecting water

Galiano said the Spanish were well supplied and were fully aware of water sources

as locations had been noted by previous Spanish captains during their explorations

Lieutenant Galiano informed British Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton

that Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra was waiting for his arrival
at Santa Cruz de Nuca on Nootka Sound's Friendly Cove

Broughton explained *Chatham* along with Captain Vancouver's *Discovery*
had been anchored in Birch Bay since [June 11]

Galiano and Valdes parted company with Broughton

but they all remained within the confines of Birch Bay

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A THIRD DAY

Setting out from his camp (at today's Woodfibre, B.C.) -- June 14, 1792

Vancouver returned down the deep inlet and made camp (at today's Gibsons Landing, B.C.)

Vancouver wrote in his journal (misdated Friday June 15): **"By sun-set we had passed the channel which had been observed to lead into the gulf, to the southward of Anvil Island; and about nine o'clock landed for the night, near the west point of entrance into the sound."**

Vancouver named this "Point Gower" (but today it is called The Bluff

as today's Gower Point is a little further along the coast)

exact location of Vancouver's camp this night is not known however a commemorative plaque
has been placed in today's Chester Park indicating the site is nearby)

Vancouver and his crew camped for the night near (Gibsons Harbor)

Vancouver's men described the flats at the mouth of the Tacouche Tesse (Fraser) River

and named “Sturgeon Bank” but failed to see the river itself
here they purchased several excellent sturgeons from the natives
weighing from fourteen pounds to 200 pounds each

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A FOURTH DAY

Vancouver entered the waters off (British Columbia’s Sunshine Coast) -- afternoon June 15
as the boat expedition continued north from (Gower Point) -- June 15, 1792
as Vancouver sailed along the coast between (Gibsons Harbor and Pender Harbour)

he reported about the land in the area of (today’s Sechelt, B.C.): **“This part of the coast is of a moderate height for some distance inland, and it frequently jets out into low sandy projecting points. The country in general produces forest trees in great abundance, of some variety and magnitude; the pine is the most common, and the woods are little encumbered with bushes or trees of inferior growth.”**

They reached (Pender Harbour) where camp was made near (Francis Bay)

Vancouver was not overwhelmingly impressed with this region as he wrote (misdated June 16):
“Along this rocky shore of the main land we passed in quest of a resting place for the night, to no effect, until after dark; when we found shelter in a very dreary uncomfortable cove near the south point of an island about a mile long, and about two miles to the S.S.E. of a narrow opening (today’s Agamemnon Channel) leading to the northward.”

MASTER JOSEPH WHIDBEY INVESTIGATES BELLINGHAM BAY

Master Joseph Whidbey led a party southeast and explored “Bellingham Bay” -- June 15, 1792
(Spanish Pilot Jose Maria Narvaez’s Seno Gaston)
which Vancouver re-named for Sir William Bellingham, controller of the storekeeper’s accounts
for His Majesty’s Royal Navy

LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES CROSS THE GULF OF GEORGIA

Sailing out of Birch Bay, Dionisio Alcala Galiano on *Sutil* and Cayetano Valdes on *Mexicana*
eventually investigated west across the Strait of Georgia

they made landfall off the east coast of “Galiano Island” near (Active Pass) -- June 15, 1792

BRITISH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A FIFTH DAY

Captain Vancouver’s boat expedition left their uncomfortable camp
on Francis Bay -- June 16, 1792

Vancouver and his men traveled in an irregular course to the northeast
reaching (Agamemnon Channel)

Vancouver reported in his journal (incorrectly dated Sunday June 17) **“This part of the coast is of a moderate height for some distance inland, and it frequently jets out into low sandy projecting**

points. The country in general produces forest trees in great abundance, of some variety and magnitude; the pine is the most common, and the woods are little encumbered with bushes or trees of inferior growth.”

This night was spent in a more comfortable situation near (today’s Vancouver Bay)

Vancouver wrote: **“The shores we passed this day are of a moderate height within a few miles of this station, and are principally composed of craggy rocks, in the chasms of which a soil of decayed vegetables has been formed by the hand of time; from which pine trees of an inferior dwarf growth are produced, with a considerable quantity of bushes and underwood.”**

SPANISH LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES EXPLORE GALIANO ISLAND

Galiano and Valdes searched Galiano Island looking for safe harbor

until they anchored in a bay then named “Cala del Descans” (cove of rest) -- June 16, 1792

(this is today’s Pilot Bay on the north end of Gabriola Island near Nanaimo, B.C.

it was first visited by Jose Maria Narvaez [1791] who named it “Punta de Gaviola”)

Jose Cardero, the expedition’s artist for Galiano and Valdes, sketched the local native chief and an unusual rock formation

VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A SIXTH DAY

Leaving their (Vancouver Bay) campsite -- June 17, 1792

Vancouver’s boat expedition reached their northernmost point and penetrated into the mainland

Vancouver reported in his journal (misdated Monday June 18): “[their inadequate campsite the night before] **...obliged us to continue our search along the shore for one less incommodious, which the perpendicular precipices precluded our finding until near eleven at night, when we disembarked on the only low projecting point the inlet afforded.”**

(Vancouver did not attempt to navigate the treacherous Malibu Rapids),

so he missed (Princess Louisa Inlet), the most important tourist attraction in the area today and (Sechelt and Salmon inlets)

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY REACHES THE QUEEN CHARLOTTE ISLANDS

Columbia Rediviva was again at Queen Charlotte Sound

his landing party was attacked by two hundred natives hiding in the woods

in retaliation for hostile actions Captain Gray had taken when some clothes were stolen [1789]

Gray’s sailors finally got to beach where the ship’s guns raked the woods with grape-shot

Captain Gray was joined by his sloop *Adventure*

under command of Mr. Robert Haswell -- June 17, 1792

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A SEVENTH DAY

Vancouver’s boat expedition got an early start -- 4:00 a.m. June 18, 1792 (Vancouver’s June 19)

beginning their return to Vancouver's ships they worked their way down Jervis Inlet

Vancouver reported in his journal, **"At four, on the morning of Tuesday the 19th, we again started, but having a strong southerly gale against us, it was past nine before we reached a small bay [Goliath Bay], about a mile to the north of the north point of the arm leading to the north-westward, where we rested for the night."**

VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR EIGHTH DAY

Vancouver entered and named the "Gulf of Georgia" (today's Strait of Georgia) -- June 19, 1792
as the boat expedition continued back to the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

Vancouver noted in his journal (incorrectly dated Vancouver's Wednesday June 20): **"The shores of this land, nearly straight and compact, are principally formed of rocky substances of different sorts; amongst which, slate was in abundance; and the trees it produced were of infinitely more luxuriant growth than those on the opposite shore."**

camp was made near "Anderson Bay" on Texada Island, British Columbia

GALIANO AND VALDES SAIL ACROSS THE GEORGIA STRAIT

Sutil and *Mexicana* attempted to continue north from Gabriola Island
but sailing conditions were unfavorable -- June 19, 1792

Galiano reported the difficulties they encountered in the area: **"At midday, having remained becalmed, and the current going outward, we decided to anchor. We made way under oars to find an anchorage. The beach, which was sandy, appeared suitable for this. We were a mile from the shore and believed we would be in 25 or 30 fathoms [75 to 90 feet of water], but found no bottom at 60. We approached the shore and at two thirds of a mile from it, we had 60 fathoms mud. The boat was sent shorewards, and at three cables [about a third of a mile] from the shore there was 30 fathoms gravel. Not being able to overcome the current to any noticeable extent with the oars, we had left off rowing until this was determined, and in the said situation were two miles from the west point of Boca de Carmelo [Howe Sound]. We made our way with the oars to a half mile from the land, and found 40 fathoms, muddy sand bottom. An anchorage so close to land with so much water was all right in case of need, but not as a matter of choice. The thermal breeze started to turn to the west, and not seeing any great force on the water we steered to the east, and with a light southwest wind we continued until four on a steady wind. We came up to ESE. At eight in the evening the wind built up from the west, and we laid a course for the Punta de Langara [West Point Grey, B.C.]"**⁸²

they had crossed the Strait of Georgia to the Canadian mainland)

Galiano and Valdes named this body of water "Canal de Sasamat" after the local Indians

Lights were sighted near shore between 10:00 p.m. and midnight,

Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano concluded it was a large British vessel and avoided it

⁸² Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano of the *Sutil* journal entry

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A NINTH DAY

Captain Vancouver's men worked their way back toward their ships

leaving Anderson Bay on Texada Island -- June 20, 1792 (Vancouver's Thursday June 21)

Vancouver does not record his campsite on for this night but Lieutenant Puget reports: **"That Night we reached the Cluster of Islands in Mid Channel off where we stopped..."**

they probably camped on (Worlcombe Island, one of the islands in the Pasley group)
or perhaps on (Bowen Island)

VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A TENTH DAY

Vancouver's boat expedition continued toward their ships -- June 21, 1792 (Vancouver's June 22)

Vancouver recorded the difficulties faced on this days travels: **"We were likewise unfortunate in having two flood tides against us. These, together with a light southerly breeze that prevailed the whole time, obliged us to be constantly rowing from nine in the forenoon until after midnight, before we could reach the point, which was at length effected; though not before we were nearly exhausted by fatigue. Here we slept...."**

VANCOUVER COMPLETES HIS INVESTIGATION OF THE GULF ISLANDS

Vancouver's party was faced with a strong easterly breeze working against them

after traveling more than 330 miles they returned to the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

in Birch Bay -- about 10:00 a.m. June 22, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday June 23)

Vancouver thought this was his 35th birthday -- but again he was one day off

VANCOUVER AND BROUGHTON LEAVE BIRCH BAY

Discovery and *Chatham* enjoyed a fine breeze and very pleasant weather

as they sailed out of Birch Bay -- morning June 23, 1792 (Vancouver's Sunday June 24)

they traveled north-northwest up the Gulf of Georgia (Strait of Georgia)

Off Point Grey Captain Vancouver was astonished to see the little Spanish expedition comprised of *Sutil* and *Mexicana* commanded by Spanish lieutenants

Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes

who saluted the British with cheering -- 2:00 p.m. June 23, 1792 (Vancouver's June 24)

Vancouver named this geographic feature after his friend Captain George Grey

(this is the location of the University of British Columbia

in what is now the city of Vancouver, British Columbia)

At the entrance of Jervis Inlet all four British and Spanish officers gathered aboard the *Discovery* for **"a meal in the English style"**

Galiano informed Vancouver that they had examined a small branch near Burrard Inlet which was very narrow and ended after about fifteen miles at a small stream

Gailano gave Vancouver a copy of the sketches of the area drawn by himself and Valdes

Vancouver also was shown a crude chart of the Strait of Georgia
base on Jose Maria Narvaez [1791] expedition

Vancouver wrote: **“I cannot avoid acknowledging that on this occasion I experienced no small degree of mortification in finding the external shores of the gulf had been visited, and already examined a few miles beyond where my researches during the excursion, had extended....”**⁸³

Spanish officers returned to their ships at sunset

SPANISH OFFICERS GRACIOUSLY RECEIVE BRITISH CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER

Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano on *Sutil* and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes of the *Mexicana* met with *Discovery*'s Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant-Commander Broughton of the *Chatham* they invited the British officers to a hearty breakfast -- 7:00 a.m. Saturday, June 23, 1792

Vancouver learned that Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra was at Nootka Sound waiting to complete diplomatic formalities

Spanish and British commanders were excessively polite

friendly relations between the British and Spanish officers were developed immediately

Vancouver noted: **“Their apartments just allowed room for sleeping places on each side with a table in the intermediate space, at which four persons with some difficulty could sit, and were in all other respects the most ill calculated and unfit vessels that could possibly be imagined for such an expedition; notwithstanding this, it was pleasant to observe, in point of living they possessed many more comforts than could reasonably be expected.”**⁸⁴

Each expedition commander offered to assist the others

Galiano mortified Vancouver by showing him a copy of the map of the area they were investigating made by Spanish officer Jose Maria Narvaez's three-week reconnaissance [1791]

however, this lacked the detail Vancouver required to confirm (or deny) the existence of the Northwest Passage

Spanish also had sought in vain for the mouth of a great river (Fraser) said to be in the vicinity in return Vancouver showed Galiano and Valdes his detailed charts drawn of Admiralty Inlet which the Spanish had continually by-passed because they believed the Indians

who told them Admiralty Inlet was deep enough only for canoes
a quick study of Vancouver's charts showed this to be incorrect

Vancouver suggested they work together

they sailed northward together toward the northern end of the Strait of Georgia

but the Spanish ships could not keep pace with the English vessels

it was agreed they would assist one another by dividing the surveying work and share their charts

Spanish did very little surveying along the mainland side of the Strait of Georgia

⁸³ Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest*, P. 87.

⁸⁴ Captain John T. Walbran, *British Columbia Coast Names*, P. 477-478.

since that was Vancouver's area of focus
but the Spanish did discover and chart (Indian Arm) off Burrard Inlet
which was a region that Vancouver had ignored
Galiano and Valdes investigated the east coast of (Vancouver Island)
(however, these charts were not published until ten years later)
Vancouver named "Spanish Banks" in honor of the two Spanish ships
Captain George Vancouver, rather than hurrying to a meeting of the two nations at Nootka Sound,
leisurely explored (today's Salish Sea) all summer while Quadra waited patiently
Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano felt it was important that he not be interrupted any longer
Cayetano Valdes had been on the coast [1791] and learned to speak the local Indian language
he had learned from the natives that a passage to the sea existed North of the Strait of Georgia

LIEUTENANTS DIONISIO GALIANO AND CAYETANO VALDES ARRIVE IN BURRARD INLET

Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano felt it was important to continue their investigation to the north
Sutil and *Mexicana* continued to sail on into the night -- June 23, 1792
they planned to be at Burrard Inlet and enter it in the morning
Spanish lieutenants Galiano and Valdes entered Strait of Georgia

VANCOUVER AND BROUGHTON LEAVE BIRCH BAY

Discovery and *Chatham* enjoyed a fine breeze and very pleasant weather
as they sailed out of Birch Bay -- morning June 23, 1792 (Vancouver's Sunday June 24)
they traveled north-northwest up the Gulf of Georgia (Strait of Georgia)
Off Point Grey, Captain Vancouver was astonished to see the little Spanish expedition
comprised of *Sutil* and *Mexicana* commanded by Spanish lieutenants
Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes
who saluted the British with cheering -- 2:00 p.m. June 23, 1792 (Vancouver's June 24)
Vancouver named this geographic feature after his friend Captain George Grey
(this is the location of the University of British Columbia
in what is now the city of Vancouver, British Columbia)

At the entrance of Jervis Inlet all four British and Spanish officers gathered aboard the *Discovery*
for "**a meal in the English style**"

Galiano informed Vancouver that they had examined a small branch near Burrard Inlet
which was very narrow and ended after about fifteen miles at a small stream
Gailano gave Vancouver a copy of the sketches of the area drawn by himself and Valdes
Vancouver also was shown a crude chart of the Strait of Georgia
base on Jose Maria Narvaez [1791] expedition
Vancouver wrote: "**I cannot avoid acknowledging that on this occasion I
experienced no small degree of mortification in finding the external shores of the gulf had been**

visited, and already examined a few miles beyond where my researches during the excursion, had extended....”⁸⁵

Spanish officers returned to their ships at sunset

LIEUTENANTS DIONISIO GALIANO AND CAYETANO VALDES ARRIVE IN BURRARD INLET

Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano felt it was important to continue their investigation to the north

Sutil and *Mexicana* continued to sail on into the night -- June 23, 1792

they planned to be at Burrard Inlet and enter it in the morning

Spanish lieutenants Galiano and Valdes entered Strait of Georgia

INVESTIGATION OF THE STRAIT OF GEORGIA CONTINUES

Vancouver entered the Strait of Georgia (Jose Maria Narvaez’s Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario) during the morning of June 24, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday June 25)

as he followed at a distance the route taken by Galiano and Valdes

Vancouver noted that a number of whales were seen in every direction

he concluded there was another opening to the Pacific Ocean that he had not yet seen

Vancouver’s *Discovery* and Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton’s *Chatham* sailed north they overtook *Sutil* and *Mexicana* -- early afternoon June 24

Vancouver waited for the Spanish ships as evening approached

and offered the Spanish commanders dinner aboard the *Discovery*

Setting out again *Discovery*, *Chatham*, *Sutil* and *Mexicana* sailed north -- evening of June 24 investigating the Strait of Georgia

Galiano and Valdes entered “Malaspina Strait”

which they named after Spanish Captain Alejandro Malaspina

that separates Jose Maria Narvaez’s Texada Island from the (British Columbia mainland)

Sutil and *Mexicana* arrived at “Point Marshall”

BRITISH AND SPANISH OFFICERS CONTINUE TO SHARE COMPANY

Off and on for a month Vancouver’s *Discovery* shared company with *Sutil* and *Mexicana*

British Captain George Vancouver caught the Spanish vessels *Sutil* and *Mexicana* together they moved through “Malaspina Strait” to “Marshall Point”

located at the northern point of Texada Island -- June 25, 1792

Spanish officers Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes

once again received Vancouver graciously

Sailing the *Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed north ahead of *Sutil* and *Mexicana* together they continued past “Harwood Island”

Vancouver named “Savary Island” after a pleasant easterly breeze

⁸⁵ Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest*, P. 87.

this was an area of islands and small rocky islets that made sailing conditions unpleasant
(Off and on for a month, British and Spanish explorers shared company
as they investigated the Gulf Islands and the Georgia Strait)

BRITISH AND SPANISH BOAT EXPEDITIONS INVESTIGATE THE INSIDE PASSAGE

Weather was serene and pleasant -- June 25, 1792 (Vancouver's Tuesday June 26)

Lieutenant Peter Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey took *Discovery's* launch and cutter
to examine the continental shore of the Strait of Georgia

Lieutenant James Johnstone in the *Chatham's* cutter

was accompanied by Lieutenant Spelman Swaine in the *Chatham's* launch

together they investigated the branch of the Strait of Georgia leading to the northwest
Spanish Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes on the *Mexicana* surveyed the intermediate coast

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton searched to the northwest for better anchorage for the ships

Captain George Vancouver and Spanish Lieutenant Dionisio Alcala Galiano

visited the shore of a nearby island

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton returned after having found a suitable anchorage

All four ships move to the anchorage at what became known as (Desolation Sound) -- 6:00 p.m.

(across from Vancouver Island's Campbell River)

COLUMBIA REDIVIVA HITS A ROCK

Columbia Rediviva ran on a rock near (Milbanke Sound on today's British Columbia mainland)

she split her keel, smashed her stern and stripped away much of her sheathing -- June 28, 1792

plugging the leak with a topsail, Gray limped back toward Nootka Sound for repairs

gale force winds added to the *Columbia Rediviva's* difficulties

Gray sailed to (Nesparte Inlet on the outside of Vancouver Island) and examined the damage

extensive repairs would be necessary -- Captain Gray was forced to return back to Nootka Sound

BOAT EXPEDITIONS RETURN TO THE DISCOVERY

Lieutenant Peter Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey reported to Captain George Vancouver

after completing the survey of the mainland coast -- June 29, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday June 30)

they had surveyed (Desolation Sound) beginning at the two points of land at the entrance

which Vancouver named "Sarah Point" and "Point Mary"

Puget and Whidbey had found a deserted native village which at one time held up to 300 people

it was built on a rock with perpendicular cliffs providing protection on all sides

a long narrow neck of land extended from the mainland toward the island

a tree grew in the center of the spit of land

planks were laid from its branches to the island forming a bridge

which could be removed to prevent attack by unfriendly neighbors

at the level of the houses, platforms held up by heavy timbers had been built out from the rock
these extended above the sea on all sides of the island
this overhang guarded the rock from ocean invasion

LIEUTENANTS JAMES JOHNSTONE AND SPELMAN SWAINE RETURN TO THE *CHATHAM*

When Lieutenants Johnstone and Swaine returned -- July 1, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday July 2)
they reported they had met with Spanish Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes
and had learned the area they were surveying to the east
had already been investigated by the Spanish
Johnstone and Swaine turned their attention to the west
and examined "Bute's Canal" off Desolation Sound

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY SPENDS A MONTH MAKING REPAIRS TO HIS SHIP

Suffering extensive damage *Columbia Rediviva* limped into Nootka Sound for repairs -- July 1792
Friendly Cove had changed considerably since Captain Gray's last visit
Spanish settlement now numbered sixteen buildings
presided over with courtly charm by Commandant Francisco de Bodega y Quadra
several ships of various nationalities were in the harbor including Joseph Ingraham's tiny *Hope*
on a previous voyage [1788] Ingraham had been Captain Gray's first mate
aboard the *Columbia Rediviva*
Robert Haswell had been Ingraham's shipmate on the *Columbia*
(Ingraham had sailed the *Hope* from Boston
twelve days before Gray [September 16, 1790])

Friendship that had marked American relations

with Spanish Chief Pilot of San Blas Esteban Jose Martinez continued with Commandant Quadra
as the Spaniard offered Gray, free of charge, every resource at hand
Americans received assistance from the Spanish in the repair of the ship
storerooms on shore also were made available for the cargo
Americans were entertained by the Spanish
Yankee captain lived with Quadra while *Columbia Rediviva* was out of commission
Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra was a courtly host
Americans were well entertained by the Spanish
who invited Gray and the rest of the *Columbia's* officers to a banquet
at the Governor's table aboard Quadra's brig *Activa*

Captain Gray told Quadra of his discovery of a great river which he had named after his ship
he showed the Spanish commandant his maps and gave a sketch of river's entrance to Quadra
this documented Gray's discovery and provided the United States its claim to the Northwest

SPANISH OFFICER IS KILLED AT THE COLONY OF NUNEZ GAONA

(English brig *Venus* captained by Henry Shepherd and manned by black-skinned sailors from the Jolo Archipelago [south of the Philippines] sailed from Bengal, India [January 7, 1792] *Venus* had previously stopped at Nootka Sound)

Venus arrived at Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) -- July 2, 1792

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo visited with Captain Shepherd until late in the day when he returned to the *Princesa*, Fidalgo was informed his friend Antonio Serantes who was second in command of *Princesa* had been missing for several hours Fidalgo, worried about his friend's safety -- he waited at the barracks until dawn when he sent out twenty men with dogs to pick up Serantes' trail -- July 3, 1792 they reported no luck on their return and Fidalgo sent them out again later in the day an Indian told Fidalgo that natives from Chief Tatoosh's village had killed a Spaniard and carried him away

NOOTKA INDIANS ASK THE SPANISH FOR HELP

Commandant Quadra was asked to assist a village of Nootka people -- July 3, 1792 who had been attacked they said seven of their people had been killed and many others were wounded all of the villagers' sea otter pelts had been seized

Spanish Lieutenant Dionisio Alcalá Galiano was visiting the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at Friendly Cove

he was under the impression the ship was the *Columbia Rediviva* under American Robert Gray but the attack was actually carried out by the English fur trader William Brown Brown was the leader of a three-ship trading operation known as the Butterworth squadron *Butterworth*, *Jackall* and *Prince Lee Boo* comprised his fleet Brown was trading under a grant from the British government to set up a fur trading post on the coast of Vancouver Island

Commandant Quadra had his surgeon tend some of the wounded and promised to punish the aggressors (later in the year Brown had a violent conflict with the people of Clayoquot Sound as well he claimed he acted in self-defense but other fur traders said he forcefully stole furs from the Clayoquot people)

INVESTIGATION OF THE STRAIT OF GEORGIA CONTINUES

Discovery, *Chatham*, *Sutil* and *Mexicana* -- July 4, 1792 (Vancouver's Thursday July 5) investigated the Strait of Georgia in a coordinated effort

Captain Vancouver and Lieutenant-Commander Broughton explored the northern Gulf Islands during his investigation Vancouver's crew left behind a coin and a knife

at "Georgia Point" on (Mayne Island)
Vancouver named "Stuart's Island" and "Loughborough's Channel"
Lieutenants James Johnstone and Spelman Swaine were sent with five days' supplies
to examine the continental shore through a narrow passage
(when they returned [July 11] -- Vancouver's [July 12]
they reported they had found a passage leading into the Pacific Ocean to the northwest)
Spanish Captain Dionisio Alcala Galiano explored and named "Galiano Island" and the area around
and "Saturna Island" was named after the Spanish schooner *Santa Saturnina*
commanded by Jose Maria Narvaez who first investigated the vicinity of the island [1791]

VANCOUVER AND BROUGHTON CONTINUE THROUGH BROUGHTON'S ARCHIPELAGO

Discovery and *Chatham* again set sail -- 9:00 a.m. July 28, 1792 (Vancouver's Sunday July 29)
although they were favored with a light breeze, the *Discovery* remained stationary
she did not respond to the helm
Discovery remained trapped by an undertow until nearly dark when a strong breeze came up
that allowed her to reach Deep Sea Bluff where they anchored -- 11:00 p.m.

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM WERE AGAIN UNDER WAY IN BROUGHTON'S ARCHIPELAGO

Both vessels moved northward to better allow for taking on wood and water
Vancouver investigated the route ahead in a boat -- July 29, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday July 30)
Discovery and *Chatham* were forced to remain in place in the poor anchorage at Deep Sea Bluff
to gather supplies

BROUGHTON'S ARCHIPELAGO PROVES TO BE A TREACHEROUS PASSAGE

While *Discovery* and *Chatham* remained in place -- July 30, 1792 (Vancouver's Tuesday July 31)
Discovery's yawl, launch and cutter were ordered sent out at daylight to investigate their situation
Vancouver and Broughton accompanied by Peter Puget in the *Discovery's* launch
and Master Whidbey in the cutter set out to follow the continental shore at sunrise
passages too small for the ships were discovered and eliminated as possible routes

VANCOUVER HAS DIFFICULTY IN DISCOVERING A ROUTE

Passages through Broughton's Archipelago full of rocky islets were investigated
to what Vancouver called "Point Phillip" to honor Sir Phillip Sevens, Secretary to the Admiralty
about eight miles from Deep Sea Bluff -- July 31, 1792 (Vancouver's August 1)
One passage led to the southwest and appeared to possibly reach to the Pacific Ocean
but the shore on both sides of the passage was high, steep and rocky
one very high point was named "Mount Stephens"

STILL NO PASSAGE CAN BE FOUND THROUGH BROUGHTON'S ARCHIPELAGO

Captain Vancouver traced yet another channel -- August 1, 1792 (Vancouver's Thursday August 2) this route was extremely dangerous because it was full of rocky islets, sunken rocks and rapid and irregular tides

Captain Vancouver had reached as far as he intended to search during this reconnaissance

Lieutenant Peter Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey continued their investigation

as they entered the archipelago at the entrance of the Queen Charlotte Sound near Fife Sound

Vancouver turned his attention to finding a suitable rendezvous place for the vessels and boats

he proceeded the southwest down a channel that separated "Broughton Island" from the mainland

Vancouver named this "Wells's Passage" (today's Wells Passage)

after British Captain (later Admiral) John Wells

when he stopped for lunch it was noted that a strong ebb tide from the west

indicated a link with the ocean in that direction was improbable

Vancouver located a safe rendezvous point and returned to his ship

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ARRIVES BACK AT THE *DISCOVERY*

Vancouver returned from his scouting expedition -- 1:00 p.m. August 2, 1792 (Vancouver's August 3)

immediately the *Discovery* and *Chatham* set out toward the rendezvous point

but progress was extremely slow through the treacherous channels

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE RETURNS TO FORT CHIPEWYAN

Mackenzie had decided to make an overland trip to the Pacific Ocean

after visiting in Montreal and attending classes in London to learn the newest advances

in measuring longitude in an incredibly short time for such a major effort

Alexander Mackenzie returned to Fort Chipewyan on the western tip of Lake Athabasca

(in today's northern Alberta, Canada) -- August 1792

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE PREPARES FOR HIS SECOND EXPEDITION

Mackenzie in an effort to reach the Pacific shore and, perhaps, find the elusive Northwest Passage

knew he must get to Pacific Ocean and back to Fort Chipewyan in one summer

but he did not know the distance from Fort Chipewyan to the Pacific Ocean

Mackenzie decided spend the (winter) as far west of Fort Chipewyan as possible

he reasoned that the Peace River emptying into Lake Athabasca from the west

should, if followed to its source, put the him within striking distance of a west flowing river

he would journey as far up the Peace River as possible before (winter) set in

there he would make camp

he would cross the Rocky Mountains (the following spring)

and if it was possible he would then continue west to the Pacific Ocean

In preparation for supplying his (winter) camp far up the Peace River

several canoes had been sent carrying supplies and trade goods -- August 1792

DIFFICULT CONDITIONS PLAGUE VANCOUVER AND BROUGHTON

Discovery and *Chatham* in Broughton's Archipelago entered a channel to the west of a group of islands -- August 4, 1792 (Vancouver's Sunday August 5) that appeared to lead to the Pacific Ocean
Haze and fog made it impossible to conduct a thorough investigation but there appeared to be ample width and depth to safely sail
Vancouver decided to maneuver the British ships toward the channel during the night to gain an early start in the next morning

VANCOUVER FACED EXTREMELY DANGEROUS CONDITIONS

Very thick fog and calm winds came with dawn -- August 5, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday August 6) these conditions held *Discovery* and *Chatham* stationary placing them at the mercy of the currents
Boat expeditions conducted beyond Vancouver's [August 1] scouting location returned to the ships
Lieutenant Peter Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey reported they had identified several small bays that could provide snug and convenient anchorages
but the routes between them were intricate and dangerous with strong currents
and many rocky islets and sunken rocks

When the fog lifted the British ships reached the channel which was filled with rocky islets and rocks deepening haze and fog returned but there was no better route available

Both British ships set out through an obscured intricate channel

Vancouver wrote: **"We sailed cautiously under a light easterly into a narrow channel, I judged no more than a mile wide, its shores rising perpendicular from the sea, its waters cluttered with a menacing scattering of shoals. The wind died, and thick fog obscured every surrounding object, and wet us clean to the bone."** (misdated August 6)

Suddenly *Discovery's* bow became grounded on a small bed of sunken rocks -- 4:00 p.m.

reported Vancouver: **"She lurched broadside. I swept blood from my eyes, and bellowed for the ship to be lightened. Yards and masts were struck and got over, ballast and fuel following. Nothing would right her. The tide continued to fall; she swung alarmingly over her starboard side; the water surging towards the rail. If a storm arose, she was certainly doomed..."**

small anchor and cable were immediately carried out and every attempt was made to pull her off the rocks but to no avail as the tide was falling very fast

Chatham was signaled and she anchored -- boats were sent to assist

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton brought the *Chatham* close to be ready to help if possible as the tide rapidly fell *Discovery* began to list to Starboard (right)

her situation became increasingly precarious

it became necessary to hold the rail or the rigging to stand on the *Discovery*

Vancouver reported in his journal this was “**a very irksome and perilous situation**”
(again misdated as Monday August 6)

VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION FACES YET ANOTHER CRISIS

Discovery, after throwing wood and ballast overboard was refloated on the incoming tide
Discovery came nearly upright -- 2:00 a.m. August 6, 1792 (Vancouver’s Tuesday August 7)
crew members, after only about three hours of rest, went to work re-equipping the ship
everything was made ready to sail by noon
Discovery proceeded along Broughton’s Archipelago
which became more intricate as they moved forward
but the narrowest part of the passage had been navigated -- 5:00 p.m.
wind became light but the ebb tide aided them toward the ocean
which could be seen on the horizon
Safety seemed to be within reach when the *Chatham* ran on the rocks -- 6:00 pm.
ocean swells added to the difficulties faced by Lieutenant-Commander Broughton
as his ship was repeatedly lifted and then dropped back on the rocks
Discovery anchored and sent her boats to assist
Chatham was eventually freed when the incoming tide lifted her off the rocks
but the extent of the damage could not be determined

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM GET UNDER WAY AGAIN

With the dawn came an extremely thick fog -- August 7, 1792 (Vancouver’s Wednesday August 8)
as the *Discovery* continued on her course *Chatham* could not be seen in the distance
not knowing the condition of the *Chatham* added to the tension felt by *Discovery*’s crewmen
When the fog lifted in the late morning *Chatham* was seen trailing behind the *Discovery*
aided by an ebbing tide and light southerly breeze
both ships moved silently and cautiously away from the scene of their near demise
as they entered Queen Charlotte Strait
Captain Vancouver steered the *Discovery* for Calvert’s Islands in search of Port Safety
which had been identified on Captain Charles Duncan’s [1788] chart
at the west entrance to “Tribune Channel”
anchorage was made to the west of (Shelter Bay) -- late afternoon
Two boat expeditions were sent out
Master Joseph Whidbey was sent ahead to seek a route to the ocean
Peter Puget in *Discovery*’s launch and cutter and Harry Humphrys in her small cutter
were sent to investigate to the north along the continental shore
they reached Fitzhugh Sound and Smith Island -- and discovered (Rivers Inlet)

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM CONTINUE THEIR HAZARDOUS JOURNEY

Lack of wind and the heavy morning fog detained the ships until 9:00 a.m.

when a light easterly breeze enabled them to sail out of the area of Shelter Bay

through the rocky channel -- August 8, 1792 (Vancouver's Thursday August 9)

weather was clear directly overhead but the horizon was vague with partial fogs in every direction viewing even the nearby surroundings was difficult

Dr. Archibald Menzies noted the foul ground at (Allan Rocks and Middle Rocks) lying southwest of (today's Storm Islands)

There appeared to be a spacious channel between the islands and the northern shore

but as Menzies noted **"...yet we did not attempt it, as we observed some low picked rocks and breakers strewd (sic) in two or three places at half-tide which showd (sic) it to be foul ground and by no means a commendable passage to Navigate without previous knowledge of its Soundings."**

(Vancouver's Thursday August 9)

Discovery signaled to *Chatham* to steer west and to lead through mile wide (Shadwell Passage) which lay between islands covered with pines -- 10:00 a.m.

Both ships became becalmed in the middle of (Europa Passage)

between "Pine Island" and the "Tree Islets" -- noon

(today located in God's Pocket Marine Provincial Park)

further investigation of what was at first thought to be on island proved the Tree Islets

consisted of eight of nine smaller islets about a quarter to a half mile wide

which strung out for about four miles (known today as the Storm Islands)

Both British ships passed through (today's Storm Islands)

progress through Europa Passage was made only with the help of the boats -- 1:00 p.m.

when the wind changed to the northwest it brought a remarkably thick fog-- as usual

Discovery and *Chatham* continued on despite the treacherous conditions

(Bates Passage) was reached (in the vicinity of today's Port Hardy)

none of this shoreline along the north end of (Vancouver Island) was examined by Vancouver

all of his energies were now directed to moving the ships clear of the dangers of the coast

in the fog *Discovery* gave the signal for *Chatham* to change direction

by firing three guns at 3:30 p.m. and again at 4:40

muskets were frequently fired to denote her position to the *Chatham*

Anchorage was made in Queen Charlotte's Sound -- 6:00 p.m.

in Captain Duncan's Port Safety located on tiny (Vansittart Island)

between the much larger (Hope Island) and (Nigei Island)

however, this cove was in a different latitude than that reported by Duncan

Vancouver renamed the inlet "Safety Cove"

Chatham was moored to trees as close to the shoreline as possible

in the hope that low tide would allow an inspection of the damage to the ship

caused by grounding on the rocks

Vancouver reported in his journal: **“We anchored about six in the evening in 17 fathoms on the South side of the cove. Being tolerably well sheltered in this cove, I was willing to hope the Chatham might with security, and without much difficulty, be laid on shore to examine if she had sustained any damage whilst striking on the rocks.”** (incorrectly dated Vancouver’s Wednesday August 8)

Vancouver visited the shore of (Vansittart Island) that evening

he found the channel he had entered stretched to the southeast in a winding course

through the island chain to the south that divided the land into islands

this passage appeared free from the dangers they had recently experienced

on the west side of (Shadwell Passage) a sandy beach stretched along (Hope Island)

Vancouver now recognized the coast before him as having been previously explored

by earlier traders from Europe and remarked in his journal: **“We now appear to have reached the part of the coast that had been visited and named by several of the traders from Europe and India. The *Experiment*, commanded by Mr. S, Wedgebourgh in August of 1786, honoured the inlet through which we had lately passed, with the name of Queen Charlotte Sound (actually the captain was John Guise acting under Supercargo James Strange); the opening of the continental shore was discovered, and called Smith’s Inlet by Mr. James Hanna the same year; and the high distant mountain that appeared to be separated from the main land, formed part of a cluster named by Mr. Duncan Calvert’s Islands; and the channel between them and the main land, was by Mr. Hanna called Fitzhugh’s Sound. These being the names given, as far as I could learn, by the first discovers of this part of the coast, will be continued by me, and adopted in my charts and journal.”**

Merchant ships had indeed previously visited this region

to the north Spanish officer Juan Josef Perez had identified the Queen Charlotte Islands [1774]
main channel between the Calvert Island and the mainland

was named Fitzhugh Sound by Captain James Hanna [1785]

Queen Charlotte’s Sound had been named by Captain John Guise of the *Experiment* [1786]

Queen Charlotte Islands had been named by Captain George Dixon in honor of his ship [1787]
and the Dixon Strait (today’s Dixon Entrance) after himself

Fitzhugh Sound had been named by Captain Hanna [1787] as had Smith Inlet

Captain Charles Duncan named Calvert Island [1788]

Captain George Vancouver sent out several boat excursions to investigate the region
and to attempt to find safe passage back to the Pacific Ocean

WORK AT SAFETY COVE IN NOT SUCCESSFUL

Attempts to assess the damage began on the *Chatham* -- August 10 (Vancouver’s Saturday August 11)
but damage to the *Chatham* remained un-surveyed because the tides were too small to ground her
(efforts to make repairs on the *Chatham* will continue until [August 17 -- Vancouver’s August 18])
Supplies of salmon, firewood and freshwater were taken aboard by the sailors

Lying at anchor Captain Vancouver expressed concern for the men he had out surveying but at the same time he expressed confidence in them as well as his pleasure in their positive attitude toward their work

Master Joseph Whidbey returned to report there were three possible channels available to Vancouver:

- one nearly through the center of the rocks;
- another about midway between the rocks and the continental shore offered a very broken route;
- third option, which became increasingly hazardous, lay between the nearest cluster of rocks and the continent

WORK CONTINUES ON THE *CHATHAM*

Crews were busy doing what they could to make the *Chatham* seaworthy and well supplied -- August 10, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday August 11)

Lieutenants Peter Puget and James Johnstone returned from having visited Fitzhugh Sound and their investigation Smith Inlet and "Rivers Inlet" named by Vancouver

Vancouver reported in his journal that about half way up Smith Inlet, **"...a village of the natives was discovered which our gentlemen supposed might contain two hundred and fifty native persons. It was built upon a detached rock, connected to the mainland by a platform, like those before mentioned, constructed for defense. A great number of it's (sic) inhabitants, in about thirty canoes, visited our party, and used every endeavor, they thought likely, to prevail on them to visit their habitations. They offered the skins of the sea-otter and other animals to barter..."**⁸⁶

SUTIL AND *MEXICANA* MEET A BRITISH MERCHANT SHIP

Spanish Lieutenants Dionisio Galiano and Cayetano Valdes met the British brig *Venus* under the command of Henry Shepherd in (Bear Cove)

near (Port Hardy) on (Vancouver Island) -- August 10, 1792

Captain Shepherd hinted of uncertain conditions at Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)

Spanish captains continued their exploration of the north end of (Vancouver Island) before setting sail for Friendly Cove at Nootka Sound

VANCOUVER RECEIVES A BRITISH VISITOR

Both British ships remained anchored in Safety Cove on the west side of (Vansittart Island) in Queen Charlotte Sound -- August 17, 1792 (Vancouver's August 18)

Vancouver was surprised to suddenly see the arrival of a brig off the entrance to Safety Cove

Venus, flying English colors, was commanded by Captain Henry Shepherd and belonged to John Henry Cox's Bengal Company

she had sailed from Nootka Sound looking for furs sold by the Indians at a better price than could be attained along the Pacific Coast

⁸⁶ Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver's Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 321-323.

Captain Shepherd informed Vancouver that his supply ship *Daedalus* had arrived in Nootka Sound sadly, her commander, Lieutenant Richard Hergest and astronomer William Gooch had been killed in the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)
Hergest had been a close personal friend of Vancouver's
also, Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra
was waiting for Vancouver's arrival with great impatience for the opportunity to resolve the [1790] Nootka Crisis with the British representative

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM INVESTIGATE FITZHUGH SOUND

Repairs on *Discovery* and *Chatham* were completed
Vancouver and Broughton set sail -- 7:00 a.m. August 17, 1792 Vancouver's Saturday August 18)
Broughton on the *Chatham* led the way across Queen Charlotte's Sound headed for Smith Inlet through Master Joseph Whidbey's middle channel between the rocks
Opening to Captain James Hanna's Fitzhugh Sound [1786] appeared in front of them
Chatham continued her investigation up Smith Inlet as the *Discovery* waited in the sound
winds changed to variable and partial fogs returned
treacherous rocks above and below the water forced *Chatham's* effort to be abandoned
Discovery and *Chatham* regrouped in Fitzhugh Sound
both ships were forced to anchor -- 1:00 p.m.
where they faced stormy weather and torrents of rain
Vancouver and Johnstone explored to the north looking for the next place of rendezvous
Captain Vancouver had intended to continue his surveys for another month
but after his reconnaissance he decided his diplomatic duties needed attention
he ended his investigation in the north

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER SAILS TOWARD NOOTKA SOUND

Vancouver and Broughton turned toward Nootka Sound -- August 18, 1792 (Vancouver's August 19)
for the first time this month they enjoyed a pleasant breeze as they sailed toward a passage that appeared to lead to the ocean
Discovery and *Chatham* rode on a flood tide through a "narrows" just east of Fitzhugh Sound where they came to their final anchorage in "Restoration Bay"
(located in today's Codville Lagoon Marine Provincial Park)
Lieutenant James Johnstone was sent out with a crew in one of the boats to inspect "Menziess Point," (Labouchere Channel) and North and South Bentinck Arms (originally named "Benedict Arms" by Vancouver)

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER COMPLETES HIS INVESTIGATION

Captain George Vancouver had spent a leisurely summer exploring, naming and mapping

he identified capes and headlands, changed named and added features
Mt. Rainier, Mt. Baker, Mt. St. Helens, Puget Sound, Hood Canal, Deception Pass,
Elliot Bay, Birch Bay, Bellingham Bay, Port Discovery, Admiralty Inlet, Whidbey Island,
Cyprus Island, Vashon Island, Protection Island, Cape Dungeness, Port Orchard,
New Dungeness Foulweather Bluff, Possession Sound, Restoration Point, Gulf of Georgia,
and Port Townshend (sic) were only a few of the over two hundred named by Vancouver
he had honored officers of his ships, gentlemen influential in backing his venture,
his relatives, friends and place names from home

ROBERT GRAY SAILS THE *COLUMBIA REDIVIDA* OUT OF NOOTKA SOUND

Captain Robert Gray sailed *Columbia* north to join the sloop *Adventure* -- August 24, 1792
which had been trading under Robert Haswell in the Queen Charlotte Islands

DISCOVERY AND *CHATHAM* ARRIVE AT NOOTKA SOUND

Foggy weather delayed the British approach to Nootka Sound
but the fog began to clear about 2:00 p.m. -- August 27, 1792 (Vancouver's Tuesday August 28)
Chatham cleared the entrance to Nootka Sound and was the first ship to circumnavigate
what would shortly be known as (Vancouver Island)
but the larger *Discovery* remained outside waiting for the weather to improve
when the entrance eventually was reached *Discovery* was visited by a Spanish officer
who brought a pilot to conduct the ship into Friendly Cove
Entering Friendly Cove Captain George Vancouver saw the brig *Activa* at anchor
with Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra on board
Vancouver's supply ship *Daedalus* under Master Thomas New also was there
carrying much needed replenishment supplies for the British expedition
she also carried among other things a copy of a Spanish map of the San Juan Islands
made in [1790] by Gonzalo Lopez de Haro
also in the port was a small merchant ship, *Three Brothers*, out of London
commanded by British Lieutenant Joshua Alder
Commandant Quadra resided on shore
Vancouver's pride of rank and diplomatic status made him unfair to Quadra
Vancouver made the Spaniard wait since he considered the Spanish officer to be an inferior
Lieutenant Peter Puget was sent to announce the arrival of the British
Vancouver had Quadra informed that he would salute the Spanish flag with cannon fire
if the commandant would return an equal salute -- Quadra agreed to do so
thirteen guns were fired in salute
Captain Vancouver and some of his officers went ashore
where they were cordially received by the Spanish commandant

BRITISH AND SPANISH NEGOTIATORS COMPARE CHARTS AND MAPS

British Captain Vancouver while at Nootka Sound

learned from Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra
that American trader Robert Gray had entered a great river the previous [May]
and had named it Columbia's River after his ship *Columbia Rediviva*

Vancouver was not impressed with this report of a possible river to the south

he had previously eliminated from his mind the possibility of a river in that location

A copy of Jose Maria Narvaez's [1788] map of (Alaskan waters) was loaned to Vancouver
who had one of his men copy it

COMMANDER VANCOUVER BEGINS HIS SECOND ASSIGNMENT -- THAT OF DIPLOMAT

Spanish officers breakfasted the next morning on the *Discovery* -- August 28, 1792

Captain Vancouver asked Commandant Quadra for restitution of the land

British Captain John Meares supposedly had bought from Mannequin

however, Americans Robert Gray and Joseph Ingraham had previously informed Quadra
that no such sale had ever been consummated

Quadra accordingly declined to hand the land over

he was willing to give only a small area in Friendly Cove to the British

Vancouver was unwilling to accept such a small area

English and Spanish commanders, as gentlemen, agreed to disagree

NATIONAL INTERESTS WERE OF PRIMARY IMPORTANCE IN THE NEGOTIATION POSITIONS

British government position regarding the [1790] Nootka Crisis and the Nootka Sound Convention
placed an emphasis on trade

because the old British Empire was breaking up

Great Britain wanted to add the Spanish Empire to its own

Spanish government was concerned that they were losing control of North America

British, Americans and Russians were active along the Pacific coast

Nootka Sound incident [1790] was viewed by the Spanish as an effort by the British government
to unite North America's internal and coastal trade under British control

Mandan Indian Villages on upper Missouri River were reported

to be trading with the Canadian Nor'Westers

Mandans also were reported to be considering an attempt to forge a link on Spain's frontier
between themselves and the British

COMMANDANT QUADRA SERVES AN ELEGANT BANQUET

As many British officers as could be spared dined at Quadra's residence -- evening August 28, 1792

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra provided a gala feast
fifty-four people sat down to and elegantly served elaborate five course dinner
featuring an excess of an unsurpassed variety foods
270 dinner plates of solid silver were used
toasts to the health of the kings of England and Spain was accompanied by firing salutes
and a seventeen-gun salute was fired to the success of the assignments
being undertaken by Captain Vancouver's *Discovery* and *Chatham*
an extremely friendly Quadra was a thorough gentleman which caused Vancouver to observe:
**"It was a repast we had lately been little accustomed to or had the most distant idea of
meeting with at this place."**⁸⁷

Maquinna was present for the occasion

he informed Quadra that he had been prevented from visiting the *Discovery* early that morning
because he wore no indication of his superior rank

Quadra appeased the chief's injured ego with presents of blue cloth, copper and trinkets

Maquinna appeared satisfied with the offerings but after a few glasses of wine

he resurfaced the subject once again

Quadra took pains to explain that it was the Spaniards' ignorance of Maquinna's people
that had led to the chief being insulted by the British

he further assured the chief the British would treat the natives as kindly as had the Spanish

BRITISH OFFICERS RELISH THEIR RELATIONSHIP WITH COMMANDANT QUADRA

Both Captain Vancouver and Lieutenant-Commander Broughton enjoyed the politeness,

hospitality and friendship shown on all occasions by the Spanish commandant

they dined at his table with several of the officers and gentlemen of both vessels almost every day

these wholesome meals constantly featured a variety of foods long unavailable to the British

Vancouver learned that when Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

arrived at Nootka Sound (April) he had ordered all vessels under his command

to inspect the coast to determine what proposal should be made to the British

and to gather the circumstances that led to the capture of the *Argonaut* and *Princess Royal*

by Spanish Commandant Esteban Jose Martinez [1789]

FORMAL NEGOTIATIONS TO RESOLVE THE NOOTKA SOUND CONVENTION UNDERWAY

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra stated Spain's case in a letter

addressed to the British government which he gave to their representative

Captain George Vancouver -- August 29, 1792

in his letter, Quadra stated he had commissioned all vessels under his command

to inspect the coast to discover the proper limits on British territory

⁸⁷ Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage*, P. 114.

Quadra's letter was accompanied by copies of statements he had gathered from people who had seen the small size of John Meares' tiny settlement [1788] they reported that no buildings had been damaged by the Spanish

Quadra's letter also was accompanied by statements from people who had been present a year later when Chief Pilot of San Blas Esteban Jose Martinez seized the British vessels Francisco de Viana Portuguese captain of the *Iphigenia Nubiana* American Captain Robert Gray commanding the *Columbia Rediviva* American Joseph Ingraham of the *Hope*

Quadra reported that San Blas, New Spain (Mexico) had been maintained by Spain at great expense Spanish efforts to develop the Pacific Northwest included a series of explorations and the establishment to two colonies:

- Santa Cruz de Nuca at Friendly Cove on San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound);
- Nunez Gaona at Neah Bay along the Strait of Juan de Fuca on the coast of (today's Washington state)

San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) was first seen by Juan Josef Perez [1774] and possession was taken by Spanish Captain Bruno de Heceta [1775] Esteban Jose Martinez had found no kind of establishment at all at San Lorenzo Martinez took possession of San Lorenzo [1789] with demonstrations of joy by the Indians thus Spain had prior claim to the region

Spain fortified Friendly Cove without any objection from the Portuguese commander Joseph de Viana of the British ship *Iphigenia Nubiana* then anchored in Friendly Cove [1789]

arrival of the American *Columbia Rediviva* and *Lady Washington* [1789] led to their papers being examined by Chief Pilot of San Blas Esteban Jose Martinez both ships were released after providing adequate explanations to address Spanish concerns

British schooner *North West America* and the sloop *Princess Royal* arrived soon after these ships were permitted by Chief Pilot Martinez to depart [1789]

British Captain James Colnett of the *Argonaut* was concerned about entering Friendly Cove but after assurances by Spanish officials his fears vanished [1789]

Captain Colnett wanted to establish a factory (trading post) at Friendly Cove which led to Colnett's arrest by Martinez and the capture of the *Argonaut*

Colnett was sent to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)

British Captain Thomas Hudson and the *Princess Royal* received the same treatment [1789]

Thus Spain has nothing to deliver to the to British nor was payment of any damages due however, to preserve peace, Quadra was prepared to cede to the British the houses and gardens that had been constructed -- an area of about one-half acre without relinquishing the legitimate claims of Spain

further, Quadra would move to the settlement of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)

the Strait of Juan de Fuca would constitute the northern boundary of Spanish territory
Britain would have no claim south of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

British ships ought not to pass into Spanish waters south of Strait of Juan de Fuca
waters north of the Strait of Juan de Fuca would provide free commerce
to both Spain and Great Britain and no establishments should be undertaken
without permission from the other nation

Santa Cruz de Nuca at Friendly Cove would remain the most northerly Spanish settlement
British Captain Vancouver gave all of these documents to Thomas Dobson to translate
Dobson served as one of the mates on supply ship *Daedalus* -- this task took considerable time

VANCOUVER HAD NO INTENTION OF ACCEPTING ONLY ONE-HALF ACRE OF GROUND

British Captain George Vancouver pointed out the Neah Bay colony of Nunez Gaona
had been organized long after the [1790] treaty between these two nations
Vancouver did not believe any British settlement north of San Francisco
had been founded in the period covered by the agreement
thus Spain's colonial effort should have no status either

BRITISH SAILORS UNDERTAKE VARIOUS NECESSARY PROJECTS IN NOOTKA SOUND

All hands busily carried out their duties such as caulking, overhauling the rigging and sails,
cleaning the ship's hold and storage rooms in anticipation of being filled with stores and provisions
from the supply ship *Daedalus* -- August 29, 1792 (Vancouver's Thursday August 30)
tents, observatory instruments, chronometers and other equipment were taken ashore
Discovery's and *Chatham's* yawls, cutters and launches were all in need of maintenance and repair
and were taken ashore where those tasks were begun

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY ARRIVES IN THE QUEEN CHARLOTTE ISLANDS

Sailing north from Nootka Sound Captain Gray met his sloop *Adventure* -- August 30, 1792
trading in the Queen Charlotte Islands

Trading had been successful with thousands of sea otter pelts collected between the two ships
many thousands of other skins had been acquired by the American traders

John Boit, Robert Haswell and John Hoskins recorded much of the year's activities in their logs

Haswell noted: **"The ship (*Adventurer*) during the cruise had collected upwards of 700 sea
otter skins and 15 thousand skins of various other species."**⁸⁸

Haswell further noted in his book *Narrative*: **"The skins are bears, wolves, foxes, rein, fallow
and moose deers (sic), land otters, raccoons, brown minks, martins, beavers, wild cats, grey rabbits,**

⁸⁸ Oscar Osburn Winther, *The Great Northwest*, P. 29.

the large grey and small brown squirrels common in our country, squirrels, and mice. The fallow deer, wolves, (which are grey) raccoons, squirrels and martins are found in great abundance....”⁸⁹

SUTIL AND MEXICANA ARRIVE AT NOOTKA SOUND

Lieutenant Dionisio Alcalá Galiano on *Sutil* along with Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes on *Mexicana* after taking leave from Captain Vancouver
they had continued surveying the northern portion of (Vancouver Island) on their own
they reached the Spanish colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound -- August 31, 1792
three days too late to take the claim first to circumnavigate Vancouver Island
this honor properly belonged to Captain George Vancouver

Both Spanish captains gave reports to Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra
they described the wildness of the country along the inland channels they had explored
they noted Bahía de Nueces (Neah Bay) had a poor harbor and was unsafe for large ships
they told of Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo’s trouble with the natives at Fort Nueces
which made it unthinkable for the Spanish to remain in their colony
nothing they had seen compared to Nootka Sound in its present state of development
they regretted Nootka might have to be turned over to the British for no reason at all
with Neah Bay untenable and Nootka Sound in the hands of the British
what port would Spain have on its northern frontier?

Spanish Lieutenants Galiano and Valdes received new orders from Commandant Quadra -- August 31
Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Bruno de Heceta’s [1775] Expedition had identified
Bahía de la Asunción de Nuestra Señora (Bay of the Assumption of Our Lady) [1775]
this discovery (of the mouth of the Columbia River) was identified on many maps
as “Heceta’s Entrance” although its existence was pure speculation
both Viceroy Juan Vicente de Güemes and Spanish Captain Alejandro Malaspina
urged Lieutenant Dionisio Alcalá Galiano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes
to investigate Heceta’s Entrance on their back to Acapulco, New Spain

LIEUTENANT GALIANO LEARNS OF AMERICAN CAPTAIN GRAY’S GREAT DISCOVERY

At Nootka Sound Galiano learned from Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra
that American Captain Robert Gray had entered and named the Columbia River
Quadra gave Galiano a sketch map of the river’s mouth based on Gray’s information
Lieutenant Dionisio Alcalá Galiano informed Vancouver that he and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes
intended to take advantage of the serene weather which they had enjoyed since their arrival
and sail for the Spanish ports to the south either that night or early the next morning
Galiano obligingly agreed to carry a short letter to the British Lords of the Admiralty

⁸⁹ Oscar Osburn Winther, *The Great Northwest*, P. 29.

that contained a brief abstract of transactions since the departure of *Discovery* and *Chatham* from the Cape of Good Hope

SPANISH LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES SAIL OUT OF NOOTKA SOUND

Having made their report, Galiano and Valdes sailed from Nootka Sound on the midnight tide to return to Acapulco (New Spain)

while en route they sighted the Columbia River -- September 1, 1792

Galiano and Valdes did not enter the river

they claimed their ships were inappropriate for the task

however, Galiano did fix the location and determine that this was a river and not a strait

VANCOUVER AND QUADRA CONTINUE THEIR MUTUAL ADMIRATION

Walking to the observatory in the early morning Vancouver was stopped by Quadra who informed the British captain -- September 1, 1792 (Vancouver's Sunday September 2)

that he was pleased to say that he derived the greatest satisfaction

from finding a person of Vancouver's character with whom he was to transact the delicate business of resolving the [1790] Nootka Sound Crisis

COMMANDANT QUADRA COMPOSES A SECOND LETTER TO VANCOUVER

Quadra still had received no response from Vancouver regarding his first proposal

in fact, Thomas Dobson had just completed the translation of the original documents

Commandant Quadra sat up late that night composing a new proposal

he suggested to Vancouver that British Captain John Meares' claim was not as clear-cut as had been thought by the British government

Quadra's second letter withdrew his previous proposal to give Nootka Sound to the British

this reflected Quadra's belief that Meares' alleged injuries were imaginary -- September 2, 1792

Translation of this letter was delayed by the illness of Thomas Dobson

several days passed before Vancouver learned of Quadra's change in position

COMMANDANT QUADRA ATTEMPTS TO APPEASE THE INDIANS

Once again Vancouver accompanied Quadra to breakfast

their conversation was very friendly -- September 3, 1792 (Vancouver's September 4)

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra impressed on the Indians

his high personal opinion of Captain Vancouver and his men

Quadra proposed to Maquinna that he hold a ceremonial visit for the British the next morning

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER RESPONDS TO COMMANDANT QUADRA'S LETTER

Vancouver noted that he did not consider himself authorized to enter into a retrospective discussion

of the respective rights and pretensions of the court of Spain or England -- September 3, 1792
those subjects of the [1790] Nootka Sound Convention that had undergone a full investigation
were mutually agreed upon and settled by ministers of the respective courts

Vancouver was empowered only to receive the territories which according to Article I stated

Commandant Quadra was authorized to restore **“the buildings and districts, or parcels of land which were occupied by the subjects of his Britannic Majesty in April, 1789, as well in the port of Nootka or of St. Lawrence, as in the other, said to be called Port Cox, and to be situated about 16 leagues distant from the former to the southward.”**

Vancouver had no intention of admitting the British might be entitled to only one half acre

he noted the fifth article of the convention stated: **“It is agreed, That, as well in the places that are to be restored to the British subjects by virtue of the first article, as in all other parts of the north-western coast of North America, or of the islands adjacent, situated to the north of the parts of the said coast already occupied by Spain, wherever the subjects of either of the two powers shall have made settlements since the month of April, 1789, or shall hereafter, and shall carry on their trade without any disturbance or molestation.”**⁹⁰

he pointed out the Neah Bay colony of Nunez Gaona had been organized

long after the treaty between these two nations had been signed

and fell under the terms of the agreement as a **“‘port of free access,’ as well as all other establishments that have been, or that may hereafter be, formed from thence southward to port San Francisco, conceiving port San Francisco to be the northernmost settlement occupied by the subjects of His Catholic Majesty, in April, 1789.”**⁹¹

Vancouver did not believe any Spanish settlement north of San Francisco

had been founded during the period covered by the agreement

thus Spain’s colonial effort should have no status

That evening Vancouver received a letter from Quadra -- September 3, 1792

inviting he and his officers to a banquet in the native village of Tahsheis

MAQUINNA HOLDS A BANQUET FOR THE SPANISH AND BRITISH OFFICERS

Commandant Quadra accompanied Captain Vancouver

on the *Discovery*’s yawl (similar to a sloop)

followed by a Spanish launch and the *Chatham*’s cutter

these carried as many English and Spanish officers as possible to Maquinna’s village of Tahsheis

Weather was cloudy and very pleasant with a favorable breeze

as the village of Tahaheis was reached -- 2:00 p.m. September 4, 1792 (Vancouver’s September 5)

Maquinna received his visitors with great pleasure

it was evident that his pride was not a little indulged by this display of attention

⁹⁰ Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver’s Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 347-349.

⁹¹ Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver’s Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 347-349.

Maquinna conducted everyone through the village where they were welcomed as guests
all of the inhabitants conducted themselves in a most orderly manner
After visiting most of the houses the visitors arrived at Maquinna's residence -- one of the largest
here they found Maquinna's daughter
not long before she had been publicly and ceremoniously proclaimed sole heiress
to her father's property, power and dominion
near her were seated three of Maquinna's wives and numerous relatives

Vancouver offered presents to Maquinna and his daughter which were received with great approval
as were presents provided to the wives, brothers and other relatives

After these ceremonies were concluded a most excellent dinner was served by Commandant Quadra
Maquinna and his daughter were seated at the head table with the commandant and captain

Vancouver reported: **"After dinner Maquinna entertained the guests with warlike displays. A dozen men first appeared armed with muskets, and equipped with all of their appendages, who took their post in a very orderly manner within the entrance of the house, where they remained stationary, and were followed by eighteen very stout men, each bearing a spear or lance sixteen or eighteen feet long, strong and pointed with a long flat piece of iron which seemed to be sharp on both edges, and was highly polished; the whole however appeared to form but an awkward and unwieldy weapon. These men made several movements in imitation of attack and defense, singing at the same time several war songs, in which they were joined by those with muskets. Their different evolutions being concluded, I was presented with two small sea-otter skins, and the warriors having laid by their arms, performed a mask dance, which was ridiculously laughable, particularly on the part of Maquinna, who took considerable share in the representation."**⁹²

British and Spanish officers contributed to the entertainment with songs and fife and drum music
this event was concluded with folk dances and country dances

After the banquet, the Spanish and British officers made camp several miles from the village
where a very pleasant night was enjoyed by everyone

BRITISH AND SPANISH OFFICERS RETURN TO FRIENDLY COVE

Quadra, Vancouver and their men set out for Friendly Cove from their camp after breakfast
they did not arrive until about 5:00 p.m. September 5, 1792 (Vancouver's Thursday September 6)
During their time together Quadra and Vancouver had developed a lasting friendship
they agreed to name the island where they had formed their friendship

**"Quadra and Vancouver Island" -- Vancouver insisted Quadra's name appear first
(although that decision was ignored by British geographers
who identified the location as "Vancouver Island")**

SEVERAL MEMBERS OF THE BRITISH CONTINGENCY FAVOR THE SPANISH POSITION

⁹² Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver's Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 355-357.

Several of Vancouver's officers became convinced the Meares' settlement really was small they learned from Captain Henry Shepherd of the English brig *Venus* that Meares was not above cheating his own partners out of property Quadra informed Vancouver that his response to the Spanish position had been translated to him negotiations had not gone well Quadra insisted on Spain retaining Nootka Sound which Vancouver could not accept Spain desired to set the Spanish-British boundary at the Strait of Juan de Fuca, but Vancouver insisted on British rights being maintained as far as San Francisco Vancouver also objected to the new Spanish post at Neah Bay A deadlock prevailed after the second exchange of documents from Quadra neither commander would change his mind although they continued to enjoy pleasant social visits

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER CAAMANO COMPLETES HIS INVESTIGATION IN (ALASKA)

Jacinto Caamano coasted southward from Russian-America waters on *Aranzazu* he arrived at Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound -- September 7, 1792 Caamano's expedition did a thorough study of the coast between Nootka Sound and Bucarelli Bay off the western coast of Prince of Wales Island (Alaska) While in Nootka Sound British Captain George Vancouver was supplied with Caamano's chart of his cruise including a map of the Queen Charlotte Islands (which was one later carried by Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton to England) Caamano's generosity motivated Vancouver to keep many Spanish names these were added to the British map (and are still in use today) (but no general report on Lieutenant-Commander Caamano's investigation of Russian-American waters was published by Spain until long afterward)

RESOLUTION OF THE NOOTKA CRISIS PROVES TO BE DIFFICULT

Commandant Quadra's response to Captain Vancouver's proposal to resolve the Nootka Crisis was finally translated into English -- September 9, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday September 10) Vancouver was surprised to learn the two negotiators were so far apart

Quadra informed Vancouver that by the terms of **“the first article of the Nootka Convention and the royal order of the Spanish King, he could only restore to His Britannic Majesty the edifices, districts, or portions of land which in April, 1789, were taken from his subjects; that he was in possession of full proof that the small hut the English had was not in existence on the arrival of Martinez, and that the then establishment of the Spaniards was not in the place where the British subjects had theirs. That if I did not think myself authorized to subscribe to the tenor of his commission and instructions, he would recommend that each should lay before his respective court all the circumstances of the pending negotiation, and wait for further instructions;...”**⁹³

⁹³ Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver's Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 360-361.

BRIG *FENUIS* AND *ST. JOSEPH* ENTERS NOOTKA SOUND

Fenis and *St. Joseph* under Portuguese Captain Joao de Barros Andrade flying a Portuguese flag arrived at Nootka Sound -- mid-September 1792

Englishman Robert Duffin served as supercargo on board the ship

Duffin had been at Nootka Sound with John Meares [1788] and with James Colnett [1789] both were involved in the events of the Nootka Sound Crisis

Vancouver asked Duffin for a sworn statement about the [1789] events at Nootka Sound

Duffin's report contradicted the reports of Americans Robert Gray and Joseph Ingraham that Quadra had been using to undermine Vancouver's diplomatic position

Gray and Ingraham had sworn that John Meares never purchased any land from the local indigenous Chief Maquinna

Duffin said Meares had in fact purchased all of Friendly Cove this dispute was central to resolving the Nootka Crisis

Vancouver seemed to doubt the truth of Duffin's account but confronted Quadra with the information

Quadra dismissed it claiming that Duffin could not be objective on the matter

Quadra sought a formal statement from Maquinna who came before a group assembled at Quadra's house, including Barros Andrade, captain of the *Fenis and St. Joseph*

all of whom were to serve as witnesses for an affidavit

Maquinna flatly denied selling Meares any land

he had only sold a bit of land in (Marvinas Bay) to the American John Kendrick

he had donated the land at Friendly Cove where the Spanish settlement stood

to Francisco de Eliza on the condition that the land be returned when the Spanish withdrew

Between the statements of Duffin and Maquinna negotiations between Vancouver and Quadra reached a complete deadlock

TREATY NEGOTIATIONS MAKE LITTLE PROGRESS

Spanish negotiator Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra and British negotiator George Vancouver came to no official agreement

Vancouver demanded all Spanish property north of San Francisco be surrendered

he especially believed Spain should turn over the entire settlement

of Santa Cruz de Nuca at Friendly Cove and Nootka Sound

in truth, Vancouver's demand could not be justified

Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra took a more reasonable position

Quadra believed the original treaty provided only for restoration of Meares' property

and had nothing to do with claims south of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Spain would maintain her claims north of San Francisco

Day after day they pleasantly bickered while meeting each night for a stately dinner

AN AGREEMENT TO DISAGREE IS REACHED

Autumn was fast approaching with its usual stormy weather

Vancouver wrote to Commandant Quadra: **“Would the governor restore the territories of Nootka and Clayoquot to the British?”**⁹⁴

Quadra answered that he could not

Vancouver responded: **“Then I shall consider Nootka a Spanish port until our governments reach some other decision.”**⁹⁵

Both Commandant Quadra and Captain Vancouver agreed to refer the matter once again to their respective governments for final resolution

Quadra would remain at Nootka Sound only until the carpenters had finished some additional accommodation to his apartments on board his little brig then he would either wait for Vancouver’s departure and accompany him south to any Spanish ports he might want to visit or Quadra would sail and wait for Vancouver at any proper port

Quadra recommended San Francisco or Monterey for that purpose

Quadra announced that the store houses would immediately be cleared for use by the British he requested Vancouver join him in a walk around the premises to evaluate the buildings these appeared to be sufficiently secure and more extensive than Vancouver first believed a large new oven had recently been built for the British and remained unused houses had all been repaired and the gardeners were busily employed at their work poultry, fowls and turkeys, were in excellent condition and in abundance as were black cattle and swine -- Quadra said he should take only a sufficient quantity for his passage to the southward to Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) leaving the rest along with a large assortment of garden seeds for Broughton

Vancouver added both hogs and goats to leave with Broughton whose needs were well enough provided for to allow him to live comfortably Vancouver gave directions for clearing the store ship *Daedalus*

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER PREPARES TO LEAVE FRIENDLY COVE ON NOOTKA SOUND

Astonished British sailors were ordered to move supplies out of shore buildings and place them back aboard the British ships

Vancouver turned his attention to reloading the *Chatham* whose hold had been emptied to allow for inspection of the damage to the hull when she became grounded supplies from the *Daedalus* which were found to be in a deteriorated state were loaded by all hands

⁹⁴ Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage*, P. 118.

⁹⁵ Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage*, P. 118.

During these preparations Commandant Quadra and Captain Vancouver agreed to a rendezvous in Monterey, California where they thought fresh orders might await them

VANCOUVER WAS UNSURE OF WHAT TO DO WITH PROPERTY ONCE HE RECEIVED IT

Vancouver's orders were unclear regarding the territories he received for His Britannic Majesty
Vancouver assumed that maintaining the commercial advantages of Great Britain in this part of the world was a goal as, perhaps, was a settlement at this important location
Vancouver placed Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton in charge of Nootka Sound but only to insure proper conduct by the traders who frequented the area
governmental oversight would be provided strictly by Spanish officials
Vancouver, himself, would continue to follow His Majesty's commands regarding exploration until he received further instructions from the British government

ARRANGEMENTS ARE MADE BY THE SPANISH TO GOVERN NOOTKA SOUND

Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra -- September 17, 1792 (Vancouver's Tuesday September 18)
he informed Captain Vancouver that Spanish Lieutenant Jacinto Caamano would be left in charge of the port until the arrival of the *Princesa* commanded by Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo who would take command
Quadra noted the British government could be assured they would receive every consideration
Vancouver presented Quadra with a copy of the charts of his extensive survey

AMERICAN ROBERT GRAY SELLS THE SLOOP *ADVENTURE* TO COMMANDANT QUADRA

Sailing from the Queen Charlotte Islands Captain Robert Gray entered Nootka Sound where he paid a social call -- September 21, 1792
he may have given a copy of a casual sketch of the entrance to the Columbia River to Quadra at this time
it is known the British carried a rough drawing which they attributed to Gray and was later used by Lieutenant-Commander Broughton of the *Chatham*
Gray sold the *Adventure* to Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra who paid a price of seventy-five choice sea otter pelts worth about \$4,125
Commandant Quadra renamed the sloop the *Orcasitas*
he planned to give it as gift to Viceroy Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo

SPANISH COMMANDANT QUADRA PREPARES TO SAIL OUT OF NOOTKA SOUND

This day in Nootka Sound -- September 21, 1792 (Vancouver's Saturday September 22)
was spent in cheerfulness and hilarity
Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra planned to sail to the colony of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) the next day

Commandant Quadra provided a farewell dinner in honor of British Captain George Vancouver attended by most of the Spanish officers
Arrangements were made for Quadra and Vancouver to meet in the future at the Royal Presidio of Monterey, California

COMMANDANT QUADRA DEPARTS FROM NOOTKA SOUND

Commandant Quadra relinquished his command to Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano who was temporarily left in charge of Nootka Sound
Quadra sailed the *Activa* and *Orcasitas* (Robert Gray's former *Adventure*) out of Friendly Cove to an exchange of thirteen-gun salutes
with Captain George Vancouver -- September 22, 1792 (Vancouver's September 23)

SPAIN'S NUNEZ GAONA PROTECTS THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA'S ENTRANCE

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo had spent an anxious two months in the colony wondering what his future held in store for him
Under the leadership of Salvador Fidalgo Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) had grown small gardens introduced foreign vegetables such as: tomatoes, garlic, corn, cabbages, turnips, carrots and lettuce
grains, fruits, an orchard and mastic trees carried from New Spain (Mexico) were planted from this settlement the Spanish recorded scientific studies of local flora and fauna language, songs, religion and customs of the native Makah people were preserved maps of the region and key geographical locations were named

CHANGE OF COMMANDERS AT NUNEZ GAONA (NEAH BAY)

(Captain Joseph Ingraham of the American brigantine *Hope* out of Boston had spent the (summer) trading along the coast before stopping at Nootka Sound)
Ingraham arrived in Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) from Nootka Sound -- September 24, 1792 bringing the news that Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo was to be ready to sail on the *Princesa* when Commandant Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra arrived from Nootka Sound
Fidalgo was to go to Nootka Sound to take command of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at (Friendly Cove)
until the two negotiating governments settled the fate of the colony replacing temporary commander Jacinto Caamano

TINY BRITISH SHIP *JENNY* REACHES NEAH BAY

British trader Captain James Baker out of Bristol, England arrived at Neah Bay with the little 78-ton schooner *Jenny*
Jenny was a former slave ship but British resentment toward slavery

encouraged the ship's owners to take up the fur trade
Captain Baker was under orders not to talk about his activities or keep a ship's log
as a consequence little is known about him or his voyage

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY ARRIVES IN NEAH BAY

Captain Robert Gray sailed the recently repaired *Columbia Rediviva* from Nootka Sound
arriving in Bahia Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) -- September 26, 1792
Captain Gray noted the presence of the *Hope* and Joseph Ingraham in the port

NUNEZ GAONA RECEIVES COMMANDANT QUADRA

Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra's *Activa* and *Orcasitas* came within sight
of Nunez Gaona (at Neah Bay) -- evening of September 26, 1792
Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo's launch from the *Princesa*
carried out a light to meet the new arrivals
all three ships in the harbor, Spain's *Princesa* America's *Columbia Rediviva* and *Hope*
hoisted masthead lanterns to greet them
Orcasitas arrived safely and anchored beside the *Columbia Rediviva*
but *Activa* was still four leagues distant and having difficulty entering
Commandant Quadra's *Activa* finally anchored in the harbor -- night of September 26, 1792
all of the ships fired salutes honoring the arrival of the commandant
All hands were concerned the Indians might take revenge
for Captain Gray's previous sinking of a canoe and killing of all but two natives
Indians did a great deal of yelling in the night -- whites kept their guns ready

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY SAILS FROM NEAH BAY

After a successful trading season Captain Robert Gray sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* from Neah Bay
he fired a thirteen-gun salute to the Spanish flag as he exited -- September 28, 1792
(Captain Robert Gray held such high regard for his friendship with Commandant Quadra
that he named his next son Robert Don Quadra Gray)
Columbia Rediviva left the Pacific Northwest coast for the last time
(she continued on via the Sandwich Islands [Hawaii] to Macau, China
there Captain Gray sold or traded the furs he had acquired for a cargo to be taken to Boston
where he arrived [July 1793])

SPANISH COLONY OF NUNEZ GAONA AT NEAH BAY IS LEFT TO COMMANDANT QUADRA

Spanish Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo departed from Bahia de Nunez Gaona
on the *Princesa* bound for Nootka Sound -- midafternoon September 29, 1792
after only four months (Washington State's) first colony was abandoned

in favor of the more developed facility at Santa Cruz de Nuca on Friendly Cove
which was protected by Fort San Miguel
American trading ship *Hope* under Joseph Ingraham departed from Neah Bay the same day
with fifty-five excellent sea otter pelts bound for China by way of the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)
(on the return trip to Boston Ingraham would pass by [Formosa]
becoming the first American to visit that island
Hope would make a second voyage the following year
both of these ventures were financial failures)
Tiny British merchant ship *Jenny* sailed with *Princesa* and *Hope* to Nootka Sound

SPANISH NUNEZ GAONA AT NEAH BAY IS ABANDONED

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra's ships *Activa* and *Orcasitas* (former *Adventure*)
sailed out of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) -- mid-afternoon September 29, 1792
departure of the last Spanish officials marked the end of Spanish settlement
on (Washington's) coast
After the Spanish left Makah Chief Tatoosh tore down the fort
and threw the bricks into a stream to show his contempt for whites
(Nunez Gaona was officially relinquished by the Spanish
under the terms of the third Nootka Sound Convention [1794])
(Spain officially relinquished its claim to this region under the [1819] Adam-Onis Treaty)

FENIS AND ST. JOSEPH SAILS FROM NOOTKA SOUND

Portuguese brig *Fenis and St. Joseph* under Captain Joao de Barros Andrade
left Nootka Sound sailing for China -- October 1, 1792
Captain George Vancouver placed on board British Naval Lieutenant Zachary Mudge
with copies of journals, charts and logs, as well as reports from Vancouver
to the British government regarding the diplomatic impasse that had developed
(Zachary Mudge arrived in London [June 1793])

TINY MERCHANT SCHOONER JENNY ARRIVES IN NOOTKA SOUND

British Captain James Baker sailing from Neah Bay entered Nootka Sound -- October 6, 1792
Jenny had begun her trade expedition in Bristol, England [1791]
and had stopped for supplies at the island of (Oahu) in the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)
members of the crew had kidnapped two young native women, Raheina and Tymarow
Captain Baker asked Vancouver to return them to their home when he journeyed there
Vancouver agreed with Captain Baker's request

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE BEGINS HIS SECOND EXPEDITION TO REACH THE PACIFIC

Alexander Mackenzie had dispatched two canoes of Nor'Westers a few days before he set out to journey ahead to complete construction on a (winter) post on the upper Peace River
Alexander Mackenzie, six Canadian voyageurs and two Indian companions
left Fort Chipewyan on Lake Athabasca -- October 10, 1792
they proceeded up the Slave River paddling toward the Rocky Mountains
in an effort to find a westerly running river on the Pacific side of the Rocky Mountains
Mackenzie was carrying Captain James Cook's map of the northwest coast
Alexander Mackenzie was concerned about the winter freeze up
once ice covered lakes and rivers the canoes would be useless
no roads or even trails existed through the forest and the expedition would be sure to perish
As he had done during his first expedition [1789]
Mackenzie got his traveling companions out at unbelievably early hours
his men would be awakened and the canoe launched at 3:00 a.m.
for fear the river might freeze in the coming winter
he kept them paddling until exhaustion

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER DEPARTS FROM NOOTKA SOUND

Vancouver accepted two kidnapped Hawaiians aboard the *Discovery*

Vancouver noted in his journal (misdated October 12, 1792): **"I received on board two young women for the purpose of returning them to their native country, the Sandwich Islands; which they had quitted in a vessel that arrived at Nootka...called the Jenny[.] Mr. Baker her commander very earnestly requested, that I would permit these two unfortunate girls to take a passage in the Discovery to Onewhow [Oahu], the island of their birth and residence; from whence it seems they had been brought, not only very contrary to their wishes and inclinations, but totally without the knowledge or consent of their friends or relations."**

Captain Vancouver's three vessels, *Discovery*, *Chatham* and *Daedalus* sailed out of Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound -- October 11, 1792 (Vancouver's Friday October 12)

headed for the Spanish port of San Francisco to complete their mapping of the California coast from San Francisco to Monterey where Commandant Quadra was to be met
Vancouver was anxious to see if the British government had sent further instructions or if Spain had provided new directions for Bodega y Quadra
(nothing had been received in Monterey)

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS EXPEDITION REACH THE PEACE RIVER

Mackenzie and his six Canadian voyageurs and two Indian companions
left the Slave River and entered the Peace River -- October 12, 1792
traveling upriver toward the river's source

Canoe journeys were well known to the Canadian voyageurs who accompanied him

but the weather was so cold and raw that travel was already unpleasant

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER'S FLEET REACHES BULLFINCH (GRAYS) HARBOR

Discovery, *Chatham* and *Daedalus* passed Cape Flattery and reached the Quinault River where two Indians in a canoe sold a pair of pelicans to the men of the *Chatham*
When Vancouver's fleet reached American Captain Robert Gray's Bullfinch Harbor *Discovery* and *Chatham* continued on to investigate Captain Robert Gray's large river *Daedalus* under Thomas New was assigned to explore the area along with Master Joseph Whidbey who took the *Discovery's* launch to conduct a thorough survey of the harbor *Daedalus* was forced to wait in the harbor three days for a change in the weather before it was safe enough to attempt an exit [October 18]
Surveying Bullfinch Harbor proved to be difficult as the winds blew and rain poured Whidbey named all of its prominent features, including "Point Hanson" on the southern tip for James Hanson one of Vancouver's lieutenants
Whidbey concluded the harbor was of little importance
he named the inlet "Gray's Harbor" -- Vancouver later applied the name to his charts (Bullfinch Harbor became today's Grays Harbor -- no apostrophe)

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM CONTINUE SOUTH FROM GRAYS HARBOR

George Vancouver and William Broughton sailed south from Grays Harbor to investigate American Captain Robert Gray's claim of the Columbia River -- October 15, 1792
Vancouver became thoroughly enchanted by his Hawaiian guests Raheina and Tymarow these two kidnapped Kanaka (Hawaiian) shipboard companions proved to be good company
Vancouver estimated their ages as fifteen and twenty respectively while he criticized their kidnapping by the crew of the British trading ship *Jenny*
he pointedly noted in his journal that **"...they had been treated with every kindness and attention whilst under [Captain James Baker's] protection."**

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION REACHES ITS FIRST PORTAGE

Mackenzie and his men reached a waterfall that required two considerable portages to bypass here they found recent campfires showing the canoes dispatched a few days before were not far ahead -- October 17, 1792

VANCOUVER AND BROUGHTON ARRIVE AT CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY'S RIVER

Discovery and *Chatham* reached the Columbia River -- October 19, 1792 (Vancouver's October 20)
Vancouver did not want to risk the *Discovery*
he thought his ship was too large to be of use in exploring the river
Discovery made ready to proceed down the Pacific coast toward Monterey, California

Chatham stood at anchor waiting for favorable wind and tide to enter into the river's mouth
Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton began a detailed investigation of the river's entrance
Broughton carried a copy of American Captain Robert Gray's chart

MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN ARRIVE AT AN EARLY FUR TRADING POST

After journeying seven days up the Peace River the weather turned unusually cold
falling snow delayed the start for the day for an hour or two -- October 19, 1792
Alexander Mackenzie reached what was called the "Old Establishment"
he found that the men he had sent ahead had slept at the old trading post the previous night
and had carelessly set a large house on fire
had Mackenzie's expedition not arrived when they did all of the buildings
would have been destroyed
On either side of Peace River there were extensive plains which offered pasture
for the great herds of buffalo

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE REACHES FORT VERMILLION

Mackenzie and his men arrived at North West Company's Fort Vermillion -- October 20, 1792
where they were received with shouts of rejoicing and volleys from the guns
of the approximately three hundred Indians who lived there -- who now expected rum
Mackenzie stayed only long enough to give some advice and presents to the Indians
and instructions to his employees there before he continued up the river
it was constantly growing colder and ice on the Peace River was becoming a problem
Mackenzie always took whatever steps were necessary to hasten his progress up the Peace River
on one occasion when a conference with the Indians continued for too long
he distributed nine gallons of watered-down rum
in spite of his own belief that liquor was an evil for the natives

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER AND LT.-COMMANDER BROUGHTON PART COMPANY

William Broughton guided the *Chatham* accompanied by several boats up the Columbia River
to explore and lay claim -- October 20, 1792 (Vancouver's October Sunday 21, 1792)
Chatham had a rough entry past Cape Discovery into the river's mouth across the sand bar
waves broke completely over Broughton's ship smashing one of her small boats
Broughton found less water in the river than Captain Gray had reported as the river was at low tide
he thought the signs of high water must have been left by unusual floods
and remarked that Gray's chart: "**did not much resemble what is purported to represent**"⁹⁶
he gave the river's width repeatedly as half a mile or one-quarter mile
(actually at almost no point below the Cascade Mountains is it less than a mile wide

⁹⁶ George Fuller, *A History of the Pacific Northwest*, P. 55.

but one and a half miles is more usual)
Broughton consistently understated the size of the river
he insisted that it could never be used for navigation to save face with British Admiralty
after both he and Vancouver (and Captain James Cook before them)
had sailed past it without giving any notice
by showing the river's mouth to be an inlet of the sea Broughton hoped to lay a British claim
in opposition to the legitimate discovery of American Captain Robert Gray
Broughton anchored for the night almost on the bar (near today's Sand Island)
once safely inside the sand bar Broughton fired a cannon to signal his safe crossing

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER WILLIAM BROUGHTON MOVES UP THE COLUMBIA RIVER

Broughton sailed *Chatham* past Sand Island and entered a bay -- October 21, 1792 (Vancouver's 22nd)
there he was surprised to discover the small merchant ship *Jenny* under Captain James Baker
Baker had also learned of the existence of the river from Captain Gray
Broughton fired a cannon as a signal of the sighting to Captain Vancouver
who was anchored outside the mouth of the river
Vancouver heard the cannon fire from the *Chatham*
and correctly guessed Broughton had found a ship inside the sandbar
Broughton had no conversation with Captain Baker at that time
but he named "Baker's Bay" in honor of his fellow Englishman Captain James Baker
this was the first anchorage inside the river deep enough to prevent grounding at low tide
Chatham moved about a mile and a quarter inside the mouth of the river
to the vicinity a large deserted Indian village (on today's Chinook Point, Washington)

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER BROUGHTON INVESTIGATES THE COLUMBIA RIVER

William Broughton spent three weeks on the Columbia River moving *Chatham* from place to place
nothing about the Columbia River, so far as Broughton could see, matched Gray's description
Broughton voiced doubts that Gray had ever been into the river itself
he did not take into account the Yankee had entered during spring floods
and the *Chatham* during low water season
Broughton found navigation difficult and constantly checked the depth
until he determined he could not safely continue up the river aboard his ship
Broughton continued his exploration in *Chatham's* pinnace -- October 22, 1792 (Vancouver's 23rd)
he left *Chatham* about twenty miles above the bar and led several small boats
taking soundings and observing he charted and named many geographic features along the way

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER BELITTLES CAPTAIN GRAY'S COLUMBIA RIVER

British Captain George Vancouver noted in his ship log: **“The river Mr. Gray mentioned should from the latitude he assigned to it, have existence in the bay south of Cape Disappointment. This we passed on the forenoon of the 27th [October 26]; and as I then observed, if any inlet should be found, it will be a very intricate one, and inaccessible to vessels of our burden, owing to the reefs and broken water which appeared in its neighborhood. Mr. Gray stated that he had been several days attempting to enter it, which he at length was unable to effect in consequence of a very strong outset.... I was thoroughly convinced, as were also most persons of observation on board, that we could not possibly have passed any safe navigable opening, harbour, or place of security for shipping on this coast, from Cape Mendocino to the promontory of Classet; nor had we any reason to alter our opinions, notwithstanding that theoretical geographers have thought proper to assert, in that space, the existence of arms of the ocean, communicating with a Mediterranean sea, and extensive rivers, with safe and convenient ports. These ideas, not derived from any source of substantial information, have, it is much to be feared, been adopted for the purpose of giving unlimited credit to the traditional exploits of ancient foreigners, and to undervalue the laborious and enterprising exertions of our own countrymen in the noble science of discovery.”**⁹⁷

Vancouver turned the *Discovery* toward San Francisco where he would take up his coastal survey

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER BROUGHTON CONTINUES ON THE COLUMBIA RIVER

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton sailed *Chatham's* pinnace up the Columbia he named “Mount Hood” (Oregon) -- October 29, 1792
in honor of British Admiral Samuel Hood, 1st Viscount Hood
who had been a British naval officer during the (American Revolution)

WILLIAM BROUGHTON CLAIMS THE COLUMBIA RIVER FOR GREAT BRITAIN

Broughton reached the farthest point up the Columbia River -- October 29, 1792 (Vancouver's 30th)
arriving at (today's eastern Multnomah County east of Portland and northwest of Mount Hood)
Landing in full view of a majestic peak he called Mount Hood Broughton went ashore
in the moonlight he formally took possession of the country in the name of King George III
at Possession (Cottonwood) Point (above Washougal, Washington)
even though Spanish Captain Bruno de Heceta had found indications of a great river [1775]
but could not confirm the fact and named the area “Rio San Roc” (Rogue)
Spain subsequently named the land near Rio San Roc “Heceta”
and American Captain Robert Gray had entered and named the Columbia River
in honour of his ship the Columbia *Rediviva* [May 18, 1792]
(this event later was used by Great Britain during the boundary dispute with the United States)

⁹⁷ George W. Fuller, *A History of the Pacific Northwest*, P. 52.

able-bodied seaman Alexander Bell wrote in his journal that the river “**might communicate with some of the Lakes on the opposite side of the continent**”⁹⁸

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton and his men camped on (Government Island)
(opposite Ellsworth Springs in today’s Vancouver, Washington)

MACKENZIE ARRIVES AT HIS WINTER CAMP AT A FORK IN THE PEACE RIVER

(Two North West Company traders had been dispatched by Roderick Mackenzie [the prior summer] to cut and square timbers for the construction of a factory [trading post], “Fort Fork”

[near the junction of the Peace and Smoky rivers -- today’s Peace River, Alberta, Canada] they were joined by about seventy Indians who assisted them in their work

enough timber had been prepared to build a considerable fort

and a ditch had been dug to set up the walls of the stockade

open plains on either side of the river in this region attracted buffalo, elk, wolves, fox and bear

while a ridge of mountains to the west was inhabited by great numbers of deer)

After fifty-seven days of constant effort paddling against the current for three hundred miles

Mackenzie’s men were exhausted

Alexander Mackenzie’s arrival at Fort Fork -- November 1, 1792

was greeted by shouts of celebration and volleys from the guns

Mackenzie’s first business was to call the Indians together

they drank the rum, smoked tobacco, listened to Mackenzie’s advice

and promised everything he asked

BRITISH LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER BROUGHTON RETURNS DOWN THE COLUMBIA

Provisions ran low and Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton gave up further effort

William Broughton had made a careful examination of Columbia River as far upriver as the mouth of the Sandy River (near today’s Troutdale, Oregon)

Broughton estimated he had journeyed one hundred miles from the mouth

eighty miles beyond the point reached by the American Captain Robert Gray

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton’s expedition turned back downriver

they reached the *Chatham* -- November 2, 1792

LIEUTENANT ALFREZ MANUEL QUIMPER REACHES SAN BLAS, NEW SPAIN

After a difficult Pacific Ocean crossing from Manila, the Philippines, Quimper

sailed the frigate *San Jose de las Animas* into San Blas, New Spain (Mexico) -- November 6, 1792

Once in San Blas Lieutenant Quimper learned that orders had been issued [on October 16]

appointing him special assistant to his friend Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

⁹⁸ Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest*. P. 88.

who was in failing health but did not want to resign his command
while the international situation was deteriorating and war was likely
(Quimper would hold this position until [February 1794] when Bodega y Quadra died
Quimper himself was in poor health
he was granted permission to return to Spain [June 1795])

WILLIAM BROUGHTON RETURNS TO THE MOUTH OF THE COLUMBIA RIVER

Chatham, due to foul weather, was forced to remain in the Columbia River
along with the merchant ship *Jenny*

On this occasion, Lieutenant-Commander Broughton had a conversation with Captain James Baker
he learned the *Jenny* had been inside once before shortly after the *Columbia Rediviva*
but while at Nootka Sound Baker had said nothing about having entered Columbia River
as he had been instructed by the ship's owners

Captain Baker, now familiar with the channel, led Broughton and the *Chatham*
across the sandbar and out of the river -- November 10, 1792

Chatham and *Jenny* separated in the stormy weather

as Broughton sailed for California to join Captain Vancouver and the *Discovery*
Captain Baker continued to trade for furs along the Pacific coast

On his charts William Broughton showed the Columbia River's mouth as an estuary
he believed the "real river" began twenty-two miles inside Cape Disappointment
suspiciously, this was two miles beyond Captain Robert Gray's deepest penetration
both he and Vancouver agreed that what Gray entered was not the river itself but merely a bay
Broughton asserted that he was the true discoverer of the great river
in the hope this claim might override Gray's legitimate discovery

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton, in fact, made a considerable addition
to Columbia River geography when he named "Baker Bay," "Puget's Island," "Walker Island,"
"Young's River," "Young's Bay," "Tongue Point," "Menzie's Island," "Whidbey's River,"
"Mount Hood" (in honor of Lord Hood) "Point Vancouver," "Oak Point,"
"Broughton Strait" and he sited "Coffin Mountain" in the distance
this was an Indian burial place where the dead were placed in canoes

(Captain George Vancouver later commented on Broughton's work: "**Mr. Broughton gave up the idea of any further examination, and was reconciled to this measure, because even thus far the river could hardly be considered as navigable for shipping. Previously to his departure, however, he formally took possession of the river and the country in its vicinity, in His Britannic Majesty's name, having every reason to believe that the subjects of no other civilized nation or state had ever entered this river before; in this opinion he was confirmed by Mr. Gray's sketch, in which it does not appear that Mr. Gray either saw or was ever within five leagues (fifteen miles) of its entrance.**"⁹⁹)

⁹⁹ George W. Fuller, *A History of the Pacific Northwest*, P. 56.

(No effort was made by the British to change the name of the river provided by Captain Robert Gray it was even called the Columbia River on Vancouver's map [published in 1798]
Vancouver even accepted the name of Point Adams named in honor of John Adams
but rather than keeping Gray's identification of Point Hancock for the great northern headland
he changed it back to Captain John Meares Cape Disappointment
to emphasize the British discovery of the great river
Vancouver's map added most of the important geographic features of the coast

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER AND THE *DISCOVERY* REACH SAN FRANCISCO

Discovery sailed into the Golden Gate and anchored at the Spanish fort
at the Royal Presidio of San Francisco -- November 14, 1792
British officers and crewmen received a friendly and helpful reception from the Spanish
When Vancouver's other ships, the *Chatham* under Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton
and the supply ship *Daedalus* under Master Thomas New arrived in San Francisco
reports of their expedition were made by Broughton and Sailing Master Joseph Whidbey
(After a visit of a few days, Vancouver's fleet sailed south along the coast of California
visiting Chumash Indian villages at Point Conception and the Mission San Buenaventura)

UPPER PEACE RIVER FREEZES OVER

Although game was plentiful in this area the Peace River separated Alexander Mackenzie
from the source of food
since the river could not be crossed there was a potential that food could become scarce
Peace River froze over allowing Mackenzie's men to walk across to hunt -- November 22, 1792

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER'S FLEET ARRIVES IN MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

Discovery, *Chatham* and *Daedalus* reached
Monterey, California -- November 25, 1792 (Vancouver's Monday November 26)
Captain Vancouver was well received Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra
Vancouver was resupplied free of charge
as the British captain reported in his journal: **"The Spanish officers with whom we had the honor of being acquainted, demanded from us the highest sentiments of esteem and gratitude. Even the common people were entitled to our good opinion and respect, as they uniformly subscribed to the exemplary conduct of their superiors, by a behavior that was very orderly and obliging."**¹⁰⁰

CHATHAM RECEIVES A NEW COMMANDER

British Captain Vancouver and Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra
agreed that Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton should proceed to Europe

¹⁰⁰ Charles Chapman, *History of California*, P. 405.

traveling across New Spain (Mexico) carrying communications from Vancouver and Quadra to the courts of Great Britain and Spain regarding the agreement they had reached on the resolution of the Nootka Sound Crisis
this was, in essence, their agreement to disagree
(it would be two more years before the dispute was settled)
Vancouver believed the arrival of either Lieutenant Zachary Mudge who was crossing Siberia or Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton in London would result in a speedier resolution
Vancouver expected a reply from London about Nootka Sound sometime the following year
William Broughton began preparations to return to Europe
he was given dispatches, reports and maps from Vancouver who sought further instructions
Lieutenant Peter Puget was placed in command of *Chatham* in spite of objections from Dr. Menzies who would have preferred the honor go to his friend Lieutenant James Johnstone

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE MAKES WINTER CAMP IN THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS

North West Company trappers completed the 120 foot square stockade of Fort Fork at the junction of the Peace and Smoky rivers at the falls of the Peace River
three hundred miles up the Peace River
(Fort Fork was located near the site of present settlement of Peace River, Alberta)
Construction was begun on six cabins with fireplaces for the men -- December 7, 1782

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE WORKS WITH THE INDIANS

Indian legends told of a time when no timber grew on the hills and plains along Peace River they were covered with moss and reindeer were the only animal available for food when timber spread on across the hills elk and buffalo appeared
reindeer withdrew to the highlands called "Deer Mountain"
Mackenzie made note of the Indians living in the vicinity of Fort Fork
these natives used bows and snares but since the first trapper arrived on the Peace River [1786] they had become well-armed -- bows were little used and snares were unknown they were excellent hunters and such hard workers that they were extremely lean and were always in the best physical condition
when a relative died
men blackened their faces, cut off their hair and gashed their arms with knives and arrows
women often cut off a finger at the death of a favorite son, husband, or father
Mackenzie continued to trade with the Indians in the area throughout the winter
he was receiving plenty of beaver pelts from the natives but he faced the usual annoyances
Indians showed a tendency to quarrel among themselves
especially over liquor, gambling and women
however, on the whole winter passed quietly

NOR'WESTER ALEXANDER MACKENZIE IS FORCED TO TAKE UP MEDICINE

Using simple remedies and by paying close attention to each case

he cured a number of severe ailments among the Indians

on one occasion when a combination of rum and soap failed to cure the victim,

he bled him as was the state of medicine at that time

when the patient recovered Mackenzie's reputation as a healer was established

Mackenzie described another example: **"On my arrival here last fall, I found that one of the young Indians had lost the use of his right hand by the bursting of a gun, and that his thumb had been maimed in such a manner as to hang only by a small strip of flesh. Indeed, when he was brought to me his wound was in such an offensive state and emitted such a putrid smell that it required all the resolution I possessed to examine it. His friends had done everything in their power to relieve him, but as it consisted only in singing about him and blowing upon his hand, the wound, as may be well imagined, had got into the deplorable state in which I found it. I was rather alarmed at the difficulty of the case, but as the young man's life was in a state of hazard, I was determined to risk my surgical reputation, and accordingly took him under my care. I immediately formed a poultice of bark, stripped from the roots of the spruce fir, which I applied to the wound, having first washed it with the juice of the bark. This proved a very painful dressing. In a few days, however, the wound was clean and the putrid flesh around it destroyed. I wished very much in this state of the business to have separated the thumb from the hand, which I well knew must be effected before the cure could be performed, but he would not consent to that operation till, by the application of vitriol, the flesh by which the thumb was suspended was shriveled almost to a thread. When I had succeeded in this object I perceived that the wound was closing rather faster than I had desired. The salve I applied on the occasion was made of the Canadian balsam, wax, and tallow dropped from a burning candle into water. In short, I was so successful that about Christmas my patient engaged in a hunting party, and brought me the tongue of an elk.... When he left me I received the warmest acknowledgments, both from himself and the relations with whom he departed, for my care of him. I certainly did not spare my time or attention on the occasion, as I regularly dressed the wound three times a day during the course of a month."**¹⁰¹

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE MOVES FROM HIS TENT TO HIS HOUSE

Work was underway at Fort Fork on houses for the men who were lying out in the cold and snow with only an open shed and tents for shelter

Alexander Mackenzie's house was completed -- just before Christmas

long before this event the temperature had fallen far below zero

Mackenzie made note of the situation: **"It would be considered by the inhabitants of a milder climate as a great evil to be exposed to the weather at this rigorous season of the year, but these**

¹⁰¹ Alexander Mackenzie, *The Journals of Alexander Mackenzie: Exploring Across Canada in 1789 & 1793*, P. 65.

people are inured (hardened) to it, and it is necessary to describe in some measure the hardships which they undergo without a murmur, in order to convey a general notion of them.”¹⁰²

CONSTRUCTION OF FORT FORK IS COMPLETED

Construction of the fort had started none too soon

two days after Christmas the cold was so severe **“that the axes of the workmen became almost as brittle as glass”**¹⁰³

however, cabins with fireplaces for everyone were completed

and all of the tents abandoned -- December 27, 1792

here it was here that Alexander Mackenzie and his men would spend the winter

Alexander Mackenzie reported on his traveling companions: **“The men who were now with me (but who had arrived there in the spring to begin construction and establish trade) left this place in the beginning of last May and went to the Rainy Lake in canoes, laden with packs of fur, which, from the immense length of the voyage and other occurring circumstances, is a most severe trial of patience and perseverance; there they do not remain a sufficient time for ordinary repose, when they take a load of goods in exchange, and proceed on their return, in a great measure, day and night. They had been arrived near two months, and all that time had been continually engaged in very toilsome labor, with nothing more than a common shed to protect them from the frost and snow. Such is the life which these people lead, and is continued with unremitting exertion till their strength is lost in premature old age.”**¹⁰⁴

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SENDS HIS SUPPLY SHIP TO AUSTRALIA

Captain Vancouver decided to send the *Daedalus* to Port Jackson, New South Wales, Australia

Daedalus was partially unloaded at Monterey, California and some sick sailors were discharged

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra offered cattle and sheep

to be consumed during the voyage to Port Jackson

and Spanish sailors were dispatched to make complete the crew requirements of the *Daedalus*

which had been depleted by death, desertion and illness

Daedalus sailed from Monterey, California under Master Thomas New -- December 29, 1792

SPAIN MAINTAINS ONLY ONE COLONY IN THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST

Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel remained a lonely Spanish outpost

on the northern frontier of the Spanish empire

Santa Cruz de Nuca was commanded by Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo

¹⁰² Alexander Mackenzie, *First Man West: Alexander Mackenzie's Journal of His Voyage to the Pacific Coast of Canada in 1793*. P. 63.

¹⁰³ Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations*, P. 225.

¹⁰⁴ George Bird Grinnell, *Trails of the Pathfinders*, P. 106-107.

(eventually Fidalgo returned to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico))
Spanish Lieutenant Ramon Saavedra with a force of one hundred twenty men
of the First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia
sat out the winter at Nootka Sound --1792-1793
his main duty was to warn off French and American trading vessels
it had been agreed that only Spanish and English vessels would be allowed at Nootka Sound
Winter 1792-1793 was very difficult
salmon run had been later than usual the (preceding fall)
Spanish and Indians alternately had to help each other ward off starvation

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER WILLIAM BROUGHTON TRAVELS WITH QUADRA

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton left Vancouver's expedition -- January 14, 1793
he traveled as a passenger with Commandant Quadra on the *Activa* to San Blas, New Spain
Broughton received permission from Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra
to cross New Spain (Mexico) carrying dispatches, reports and maps written by Vancouver
for the British government
Lieutenant-Commander Broughton also carried a copy of Narvaez's map
(another copy of this was used by the United States after inheriting Spain's claim
to demonstrate that Spain had discovered the San Juan Islands first
and thus the islands should become the possession of the United States)
(from San Blas, Broughton proceeded overland to Vera Cruz, New Spain
next Broughton was to take a ship to England to deliver Vancouver's messages to London
Lieutenant-Commander Broughton arrived in London [July 1793]
one month after Lieutenant Zachary Mudge had arrived in China)

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY ARRIVES IN CANTON, CHINA

American Captain Robert Gray had sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* from Neah Bay [September 1792]
to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) and into Macau, China
where he exchanged his year's take of furs for tea, nankeens, sugar and porcelain -- 1793
Preparations were undertaken for the final leg of his journey back to Boston

NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS DIMINISHES IN IMPORTANCE IN EUROPE

Revolutions in the United States and France caused grave concerns in Great Britain and Spain
where kings ruled and the government responded to their Royal demands
In an effort to save their monarchies, England and Spain became allies against republican France
Spanish and English hard feelings over conflicting interests at Nootka Sound
dwindled in importance
For practical reasons, Spain decided to abandon her claims on the Northwest Coast

and try (with utter futility as it soon turned out) to hang on to her imperial possessions
in (today's American Southwest)

SECOND NOOTKA CONVENTION IS SIGNED IN MADRID, SPAIN

This was the second treaty between the Kingdom of Spain and the Kingdom of Great Britain
it was signed to resolve the conflict triggered by the seizure of British ships and property
by Spanish naval Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza at Nootka Sound [1789]

this treaty was signed to supersede the [1790] Nootka Agreement -- February 12, 1793

British Captain John Meares was awarded 210,000 Spanish dollars

half the amount of his claim

Spain accepted 42° north (California-Oregon border) from the Rockies to the Pacific Ocean
as the international boundary line:

- Spain held the land south of 42°

Spain abandoned all claims to Nunez Gaona at Neah Bay

a small Spanish garrison of Spanish soldiers remained at Friendly Cove

at Nootka Sound until a final determination could be achieved;

- Great Britain held the land north of 42°

Britain was to send a British officer was to go through the formality
of unfurling a flag as a sign of possession;

- both countries were free to use Nootka Sound to conduct trade with the natives;

- they could make temporary settlements on any part of the coast not already occupied
and erect needed temporary buildings,

- but no permanent buildings were to be constructed;

- neither country could claim sovereignty or attempt to exclude the other nation

- additional details would be resolved by respective national representatives at Nootka
these meetings would take place at some future date to be announced

PACIFIC NORTHWEST BECOMES AN AREA OF INTERNATIONAL DISPUTE

In addition to Spain and Great Britain who had negotiated a settlement to their dispute

two other nations also held claims to the Northwest between 42° and 54°-40' north latitude:

- United States held a claim of discovery -- American Captain Robert Gray's Columbia River;

- Russia had the claim of settlement

with the establishment of posts for the fur trade with the Alaskan natives

and Fort Ross along the Sacramento River in northern California

BRITISH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ARRIVES IN THE SANDWICH ISLANDS (HAWAII)

Discovery sailed around the north side of the Big Island of Hawaii

Chatham, now under the command of Lieutenant Peter Puget, sailed around the south side
both British ships met at Kealakekua Bay on the Kona Coast
on the big island of Hawaii -- middle of February 1793

Vancouver had access to scientific equipment that allowed him to make adjustments
to improve the accuracy of his own instruments
he also adjusted his ship's log to reflect the correct day and date for his entries
Vancouver ordered numerous improvements to the small boats that did the detailed survey work,
he implemented changes that provided better shelter for his crewmen
and developed improved methods to store supplies
(these improvements would enable his crews to survey to about 56°30' North latitude
which allowed for the charting one of the most complex coastlines in the world
until weather ended the survey season)

SPAIN'S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION RETURNS TO MANILA, THE PHILIPPINES

(Spanish explorer Alejandro Malaspina aboard the corvette *Descubierta*
and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra sailing the corvette *Atrevida* crossed the Pacific Ocean
from Acapulco, New Spain by way of the Mariana Islands to Manila in the Philippines)
there Spanish Lieutenant Manuel Quimper helped them to create charts of their findings
when the coastal surveys were completed by Malaspina and Guerra
they made a side-trip to Macau, China
from China both corvettes sailed southwest landing at Espiritu Santo in the New Hebrides Islands
then continued on to southern New Zealand
after a visit to Dusky Sound, New Zealand, previously explored by British Captain James Cook,
Malaspina's scientific expedition explored Doubtful Sound in New Zealand
which no European had visited before)
From New Zealand Spain's scientific expedition sailed west to Port Jackson, Australia
(part of Sydney today) where they arrived -- early March 1793
about five years after the British first colonized Australia

BRITISH CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER MAKES AN IMPACT ON THE KONA COAST

Hawaiian natives were frustrated by the demeaning treatment they usually received from Europeans
as a result of this mistreatment they had become less than friendly
because of this circumstance Vancouver's visit in the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) was difficult
maintaining order consumed much of his time and energies
Captain Vancouver took a keen interest in the Hawaiian natives
he met John Young, a British Sailor living on the island of Hawaii, who acted as an interpreter
Young helped Vancouver negotiate with Hawaiian King Kamehameha
Vancouver formed an alliance with Kamehameha to protect the Hawaiian Islands from foreigners

(that agreement, however, was never officially acknowledged by the British government)
Kamehameha attempted to consolidate his power as a first step to unify the islands
with Vancouver's help he managed to gain control of the Big Island of Hawaii [1793]
Vancouver conducted surveys of the waters around the Sandwich (Hawaiian) Islands
and impressed Kamehameha with the reach of British power
At the same time Dr. Archibald Menzies collected Hawaiian flora and fauna specimens

HMS *DISCOVERY* AGAIN SAILS TO THE NORTHERN COAST OF NORTH AMERICA

With access to several chronometers and other instruments available in the Sandwich Islands
Vancouver corrected his navigational instruments and the day and date of his journal entries
Captain Vancouver sailed out of his anchorage along the Kona Coast of the big island of Hawaii
to resume his investigation of the North American coast -- March 30, 1793
Lieutenant Peter Puget aboard the *Chatham* accompanied
Vancouver left behind in the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) some cattle and sheep
and plants collected in California by Dr. Archibald Menzies

SPAIN'S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION SAILS FROM AUSTRALIA

Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra stayed in Australia for about a month
while they visited there they established friendly relations with the colonists
as the Spanish collected many specimens of flora, fauna, and minerals and conducted
scientific experiments, including astronomical and hydrographic observations
Malaspina also observed the British settlement itself, taking special note
of any potential threat to Spanish interests in the Pacific
he was concerned that an increasing British presence in the Pacific
might jeopardize Spanish trade between the Americas and the Philippines
which Manila galleons had conducted for over two centuries
with virtually no outside interference
Malaspina's and Guerra's Spanish corvettes *Descubierta* and *Atrevida*
left Port Jackson, Australia -- April 11, 1793
they sailed northeast to Tonga, then known as the Friendly Islands
(Captain James Cook had visited the southern Tonga Islands [1773])
Malaspina opted to visit the northern archipelago (now known as Vava'u)

PRESIDENT GEORGE WASHINGTON SETS UNITED STATES FOREIGN POLICY

President Washington and Secretary of State Jefferson believed Great Britain would march south
from Canada and attack New Spain (Mexico) through the Western territory claimed by the U.S.
and capture all of Spain's western territory
however, President George Washington was leery of any foreign entanglement

he believed the young United States of America was too weak and unstable
to fight another war -- especially with a major European power
he insisted the president alone, without the guidance of congress, could set foreign policy
President Washington responded to the rising threats from Europe by insisting that the United States
would observe a strict neutrality [in the affairs of Europe] so long as circumstances and events
permitted the United States to do so -- Declaration of Neutrality -- April 22, 1793
Neither Jefferson nor Hamilton and their followers agreed with President Washington's policy
Jefferson's anti-British Democrat-Republican expansionists were not happy
with lack of support for American settlers facing the dangers of living on the frontier
and the opportunity to remove Britain from America's northern regions
Hamilton's pro-British Federalists were not happy with neutrality toward Spain
especially when Florida remained Spanish territory on America's southern boundary

AMERICAN FUR TRAPPERS WORK THE UPPER MISSOURI RIVER REGION

While under French control, St. Louis quickly emerged as a trading center
and the village grew into an oasis of wealth, culture and privilege
American merchants in St. Louis were encouraged by the new United States government
to form business syndicates -- 1793
American trappers were to explore and occupy the Upper Missouri River
above the mouth of the Platte River
hardy independent trappers also pushed beyond the Mandan Villages (in today's North Dakota)
America's St. Louis fur syndicate was interested in trade -- not exploration
they were reluctant to establish defensive garrisons to protect their business interests
because of French domination over the region

THOMAS JEFFERSON SENDS AN EXPEDITION TO THE WEST

Thomas Jefferson became Vice President of American Philosophical Society in Philadelphia -- 1793
he convinced the Society to fund famous French world traveler and botanist Andre Michaux
on a one-man expedition to explore the Missouri River and then travel on to the Pacific Ocean
in his instructions, Jefferson wrote, **"As a channel of communication between these states
and the Pacific Ocean the Missouri, so far as it extends, presents itself under circumstances of
unquestioned preference. It has therefore been declared as a fundamental object of the subscription
(not to be dispensed with) that this river shall be considered and explored as a part of the
communication sought for.... You will then pursue such of the largest streams of that river as shall
lead by the shortest way and the lowest latitudes to the Pacific Ocean.... It would seem by the latest
maps as if a river called Oregon, interlocked with the Missouri for a considerable distance, and
entered the Pacific Ocean not far southward of Nootka Sound. But the society are (sic) aware that
these maps are not to be trusted so far as to be the ground of positive instruction to you. They**

therefore only mention the fact, leaving to yourself to verify it, or to follow such other as you shall find to be the real truth.”¹⁰⁵

Michaux set out on his trek across North America but never returned -- he was never heard from again

SPANISH VICEROY SENDS ANOTHER EXPEDITION NORTH TO PROTECT SPAIN'S CLAIMS

Viceroy Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo, was annoyed that British Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton had taken possession of Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Bruno de Heceta's Bahía de la Asunción de Nuestra Señora (Bay of the Assumption of Our Lady), Ensenada de Heceta (Heceta's Entrance) and Río San Rogue (Columbia River) Viceroy Guemes considered founding a settlement there at once to protect Spain's claim but he reconsidered in light of the unsettled conditions between Spain and Great Britain instead, the Spanish Viceroy sent Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza on *Activa* to lead an expedition to examine the mouth of San Rogue (Columbia River) and the Oregon coast -- early spring 1793 his consort ship, *Mexicana*, was commanded by Lieutenant Juan Martínez y Zayas (Eliza had spent three years [1790-1792] exploring and strengthening Spain's northwest claim he had been prevented by scurvy from making a complete survey of the Nootka Sound region he did investigate Clayoquot Sound, the channels and islands of Gulf of Georgia, he had named Seno de Gastón [Bellingham Bay], Montaña del Carmelo [Mount Baker] and Eliza, Sucia, Lopez, Guemes and Fidalgo islands) Lieutenant Eliza Zayas left San Blas, New Spain -- April 30, 1793

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE MAKES FINAL PREPARATIONS FOR HIS TREK TO THE PACIFIC

In addition to trading with the Indians Mackenzie had been busily preparing for his push across the Rocky Mountains in an effort to reach the Pacific Ocean he had ordered his old canoes to be repaired with bark and added four new ones Six canoes were loaded with furs acquired from the natives and provisions purchased from the Indians these were sent to Fort Chipewyan when ice left the Slave River -- May 8, 1793 Mackenzie's private and public dispatches to the North West Company to date also were sent downstream Mackenzie kept his cousin, Alexander Mackay, who served as second in command of the expedition he was a trader and explorer of admired abilities (he was later to figure importantly in the fur business of the Far West) Alexander Mackenzie's twenty-five-foot-long birch bark canoe had been sewn by Indian women it was four feet nine inches wide at the beam and twenty-six inches deep

¹⁰⁵ Joseph Schafer, *A History of the Pacific Northwest*, P. 37.

Mackenzie noted it was “...so light, that two men could carry her on a good road three or four miles without resting”¹⁰⁶

Mackenzie’s canoe was loaded with thirty ninety-pound packs -- 2,700 pounds

- some packs were composed of kegs of powder, musket balls and shot;
- some were bales of blankets, guns, knives, kettles, tobacco and trinkets for trade;
- some of the bales were food

in addition he and his men brought clothing, oilcloths to cover the packs when it rained, a sail, a big kettle to cook in, a cordelling (tow) line to pull the canoe up rapids

and other equipment including scientific instruments to measure latitude and longitude

He left two men at Fort Fork to trade ammunition with the natives for furs

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE SETS OUT ON HIS SECOND GREAT EXPEDITION

Two Scotsmen Alexander Mackenzie the leader of the expedition to cross the Rocky Mountains

his cousin Alexander McKay who served as second in command were accompanied by

six Canadian voyageurs Joseph Landry, Charles Ducette, Francois Beaulieux, Baptiste Bisson, Francois Courtois and Jacques Beauchamps

Landry and Ducette had accompanied Mackenzie on his [1789] adventure to the Arctic two Plains Indians, one named Cancre, were hired to serve as hunters and interpreters

they also were used to introduce the whites to local natives along the route

and make assurances of the peaceful nature of the expedition

and a dog simply called “Our Dog”

Mackenzie’s nine-man expedition set out from Fort Fork up the Slave River -- 7:00 p.m. May 9, 1793

local Indians were a concern for Alexander Mackenzie

but only because he feared they would entice his two hunters to desert

At times one or both of the commanders, Mackenzie and Mackay, would leave the main party

to cut across country from one bend in the river to another exploring as they went

After paddling against a strong current all day they landed before eight on an island for the night

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION CONTINUES UP THE SLAVE RIVER

Mackenzie and his nine men set out -- 3:00 a.m. May 10, 1793

weather was clear and pleasant with a sharpness in the air

After traveling eleven miles with their heavy cargo of goods

Mackenzie’s canoe showed signs of needing repair and began to leak under the heavy load

he put ashore and repairs undertaken when they stopped for dinner -- noon

Mackenzie took this opportunity to establish his latitude

When they set out once again Mackenzie dropped his pocket compass into the river and lost it his education in navigation acquired in England now became especially valuable

¹⁰⁶ Johansen and Gates, *Empire of the Columbia*, P. 84.

as the party paddled up the strong flowing Slave River Mackenzie spent much of his time making observations: **“From the place which we quitted this morning the west side of the river displayed a succession of the most beautiful scenery I had ever beheld. The ground rises at intervals to a considerable height and stretches inward to a considerable distance; at every interval or pause in the rise there is a very gently ascending space or lawn, which is alternate with abrupt precipices (cliffs) to the summit of the whole, or, at least, as far as the eye could distinguish. This magnificent theatre of nature has all the decorations which the trees and animals of the country can afford it; groves of poplars in every shape vary the scene, and their intervals are enlivened with vast herds of elks and buffaloes, the former choosing the steeps and uplands, and the latter preferring the plains. At this time the buffaloes were attended with their young ones, who were frisking about them; and it appeared that the elks would soon exhibit the same enlivening circumstance. The whole country displayed an exuberant verdure (greenness); the trees that bear a blossom were advancing fast to that delightful appearance, and the velvet rind of their branches reflecting the oblique rays of a rising or setting sun, added a splendid gaiety to the scene, which no expressions of mine are qualified to describe. The east side of the river consists of a range of high land covered with the white spruce and the soft birch, while the banks abound with the alder and the willow. The water continued to rise, and the current being proportionately strong, we made a greater use of setting poles rather than paddles.**¹⁰⁷

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION REACHES THE PEACE RIVER

Setting out at 4:00 a.m. May 12, 1793

Mackenzie his cousin Alexander Mackay, his six voyageurs and two Indian hunters reached the location where the Peace River enters the Slave River

they entered the Peace River and began their journey toward the Rocky Mountains

Most of the Indians they encountered were Rocky Mountain natives

who had no knowledge of any route to the Pacific Ocean

Mackenzie enquired about an old man he had met the year before at Fort Chipewyan

who had described a fork in the river between the mountains

he instructed the Southern branch was the correct route

from there it was about a day’s trek to get to a carrying-place to reach the river to be taken to cross the Rockies

but the old man had not been seen for over a month

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION SEES AN ABUNDANCE OF GAME

Animals continued to abound as Mackenzie noted in his journal: **“We saw one of their (bear) dens, or winter quarters, called watee, in an island, which was ten feet deep, five feet high, and six feet wide, but we had not yet seen one of those animals. The Indians entertain great apprehension of this kind of**

¹⁰⁷ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 32.

bear which is called the grisly bear, and they never venture to attack it but in a party of at least three or four.”¹⁰⁸ -- May 13, 1793

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION IS SLOWED BY THE WEATHER

Weather conditions deteriorated as Mackenzie noted -- May 15, 1793

“rain prevented us from continuing our route till past six in the morning”¹⁰⁹

Signs of beaver were to be seen along the course of the Peace River which was full of islands and the land to the south thick with wood

Mackenzie described the land in glowing terms: **“Some parts, indeed, offer a beautiful scenery, in some degrees similar to that which we passed on the second day of our voyage, and equally enlivened with the elk and the buffalo, who were feeding in great numbers and unmolested by the hunter.”**¹¹⁰

MACKENZIE AGAIN REFLECTS ON THE SURROUNDING SCENERY

Mackenzie’s men were again in their canoe in clear weather -- 4:00 a.m. May 16, 1793

Mackenzie’s exuberance continued: **“This spot would be an excellent situation for a fort or factory, as there is plenty of wood and every reason to believe that the country abounds in beaver. As for the other animals, they are in evident abundance, as in every direction the elk and the buffalo are seen in possession of the hills and the plains.”**¹¹¹

Two elks were killed and a buffalo was wounded -- May 16, 1793

land above their camp spread out in an extensive plain gradually rising to a high ridge covered with grasses and dotted with poplar and white birch trees

Mackenzie noted, **“The country is so crowded with animals as to have the appearance, in some places, of a stall-yard, from the state of the ground and the quantity of dung which is scattered over it. The soil is black and light. We this day saw two grisly and hideous bears.”**¹¹²

On the following days camps of “Beaver” Indians (today’s Dane-zaa natives) were seen

Mackenzie was somewhat concerned these natives would encourage his hunters to desert but that did not happen

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S JOURNEY BECOMES MORE DIFFICULT

Freezing weather hit but the time lost to the last start on [May 15] was made up by launching the canoe at 2:00 a.m. May 17, 1793

Rocky Mountains came into view for the first time (eight days into the journey) -- 2:00 p.m.

several rapids were climbed during the course of the day and camp was made -- 7:00 p.m.

¹⁰⁸ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 40.

¹⁰⁹ Gordon Speck. *Northwest Explorations*, P. 226.

¹¹⁰ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 43.

¹¹¹ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 43.

¹¹² Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 44.

AN ACCIDENT SLOWS MACKENZIE'S PROGRESS

After the usual early start the explorers had traveled only about two hundred yards before the canoe was damaged in an accident but was rapidly repaired a second occurred when the canoe ran on a tree stump in the river where the river bank was so steep they could not make repairs a spot was found where the bow was beached and the canoe partially unloaded which allowed the damaged portion to rise above the water line about noon a place was found where repairs could be undertaken on an island eight lodges used the year before were seen at a place to gather bark outer bark to be used for canoes and inner bark for food When the weather darkened and became cloudy with thunder, lightning and rain they were forced into camp that evening at 6:00

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION FACES THE LONG RAPIDS

Travel up the Peace River had not been easy as they had frequently been forced to stop and unload the heavily burdened canoe to make repairs Alexander Mackenzie, Alexander Mackay and two hunters left the canoe to lighten the load they walked up hills covered with cypress trees but with very little underbrush -- May 19, 1793 they found a well-worn path through the woods and they came upon a buffalo herd Mackenzie refused to allow their Indians to fire their weapons for fear local Indians would become aware of their position instead their dog was sent after the herd he soon killed a calf that was skinned and butchered Two shots were heard from the direction of the canoe which was answered by Mackenzie when another shot was heard the four men quickened their pace as they hiked back to the canoe they met one of their men who explained they were stopped in front of a very strong rapids and several more waterfalls appeared upriver Indians has previously told Mackenzie of these barriers but they said there was a way around that took a day's march White water of the Peace River gave way to impassable turbulence there was no way to drag the canoe through the gorge and no footing at all along river bank was to be found Mackenzie moved the canoe to where it could be towed along an island this worked well until the end of the island was reached -- there extremely swift currents drove the canoe with such violence onto the stony shore that it was badly damaged every effort was made to repair the damage and to dry the packages everything was carried across a point of land and the canoe was reloaded

they set out again about three-quarters of a mile up the Peace River
but were soon blocked by the swift current ahead and the threatening rapids behind them
which threatened their destruction if accidentally entered
they had no choice but to attempt to cross the river or retrace their route back toward the rapids
They retreated with their canoe until they reached a series of table-sized islands used to cross the river
Alexander Mackay and the Indian hunters watched from the top of a rock
in constant fear for the safety of their companions
in fact, the heavy load carried by the canoe added to the dangers faced by Mackenzie and his men
When the other side of the river was reached the current there was as swift as what they had left
but the craggy bank was somewhat lower and they were able to use a long line to tow the canoe
until they reached the foot of the greatest rapids they had yet encountered
here they unloaded and carried everything 120 steps over a rocky point and reloaded
Mackenzie climbed up a high point of land where he could see the canoe the men were towing
as they were approaching an especially dangerous stretch of water
one false step, or if the line broke, the canoe and everything in it would be destroyed
when this danger was successfully overcome it was followed by another
rocks large and small rained down on the men and canoe from the high cliffs above
Mackenzie's men moved out of his sight
Mackenzie struck out through the woods to return to the river ahead of his men
he saw where Indians had set snares for elk and walked for hours through forests of spruce, birch,
and the largest poplars he had ever seen
he reached the river and anxiously awaited the arrival of his men and their canoe
Mackenzie sent Alexander Mackay and one of the Indian hunters down the Peace River
in search of the canoe
Mackenzie himself set out alone to scout the river ahead
he found that a mile-and-a-half ahead the river washed against lofty cliffs with no bank
and was filled with a series rapids and cascades
since the canoe could not be seen Mackenzie returned to where he and Mackay had separated
Mackenzie saw the men carrying the canoe over a small rocky point of land
they met at a narrow channel where Mackenzie learned their trials had been great
their canoe had been broken but they continued on
having missed the carrying-place Mackenzie decided to continue on using the tow-line
as far as Mackenzie had scouted before they crossed the river and made camp on the beach
there was no wood on their side of the river as fire had swept through the area
several elks were seen feeding across the river on the edge of the 300-foot high cliffs

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SPENDS HIS SPRING ON THE PACIFIC COAST

Captain Vancouver reached Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound as the *Discovery*

arrived from the Sandwich Islands -- 5:00 p.m. May 20, 1793

Vancouver immediately dispatched an officer to inform
Spanish Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo of their arrival
arrangements were made for an eleven-gun salute to be fired by the Spanish and British
Captain Vancouver learned the *Chatham* had arrived in port [May 18]
and completed several repairs
Vancouver and Puget had been previously arranged that if *Discovery*
had not arrived by the middle of May
Lieutenant Peter Puget would sail to Fitzhugh Sound to begin an investigation there

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE ALLOWS HIS MEN TO SLEEP IN

After the exertion of the day and night before carrying their baggage and canoe
the members of the expedition remained in bed until about 8:00 a.m. May 20, 1793
after rising Mackenzie's and his men worked their way along the rock cliff with great difficulty
by cutting steps into the rock face for about twenty feet
at one place Mackenzie leaped onto a small rock below **“where I received those who followed
me on my shoulders. In this manner four of us passed and dragged up the canoe, in which attempt we
broke her. Very luckily, a dry tree had fallen from the rock above us, without which we could not
have made a fire, as no wood was to be procured within a mile of the place. When the canoe was
repaired, we continued towing it along the rocks to the next point, when we embarked....”**¹¹³

Soon the current became too swift to paddle and the water became too deep to use poles
there was no option but too once again resort to the towline
this was made extremely dangerous by trees that grew to the edge of the cliff above the river
and the rope had to be handed from person to person beyond their limbs
which reached over the river
swift water was again reached and some of the men stripped to their shirts
in preparation for a forced swim -- but this obstacle was overcome without inconvenience
Another waterfall required the canoe to be unloaded and portaged again
Mackenzie called a halt at noon for a rest and to take a sighting to determine their latitude
When they again set out the Peace River's current became ever more rapid
in the next two miles they were forced to unload, portage and reload four times
They arrived at a place where the river became one continual rapid -- 5:00 p.m.
everything was unloaded and a towline attached to the canoe
pulling the canoe up through the rocks was difficult and extremely hazardous
water in the river became so rough that a wave struck the bow and broke the towline
dismay swept through the expedition as it appeared impossible to save the canoe
and the four men in it from being dashed to pieces on the rocks

¹¹³ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 54.

luckily another wave drove the canoe out of the cascading water
so it could be brought ashore with no injury to the men or vessel
Members of Mackenzie's expedition, especially those that had been in the canoe, were in such a state
that he called a halt -- the men climbed the river bank and made camp for the night
as far as they could see the river was a white sheet of foaming water
discouragement and low moral among the men quickly led to grumbling about turning back
Mackenzie and one of the Indians set out to find a way around the barrier
although he searched almost until dark he could find no end to the rapids and waterfalls
it was impossible to proceed by water

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION SEARCHES FOR A WAY AROUND THE LONG RAPIDS

Morning brought rain to add to their misery -- May 21, 1793

Alexander Mackenzie allowed his men to sleep in until 8:00 a.m.

Mackenzie sent Alexander Mackay with three voyageurs and two Indians to climb
to the top of the nearby mountain and follow the river to where it once again became navigable
if they found there was no such place, two of the men were to return
while the other two sought a portage, route used by Indians -- if one existed
those who remained in camp repaired the canoe

Mackay and one of the men returned about sunset and the other two men about two hours later
they had penetrated thick forests, climbed hills and crossed valleys to the end of the rapids
they estimated the distance to be nine miles

Mackenzie sent a voyageur and an Indian to scout the rapids ahead

one of these men went in pursuit of a beaver seen in shallow water on a stony island
he was joined by Mackay and the other Indian hunter but they animal got away

just as it was getting dark the man scouting alone returned to camp

he reported it was impractical to navigate several impending rapids and promontories

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE CREATES HIS OWN PORTAGE AROUND THE LONG RAPIDS

When daylight broke -- May 22, 1793

Mackenzie's men began up the mountain to cut a trail through the forest

they followed Mackenzie's instructions to fell the trees parallel to the trail

and not completely detached from the stump to form a railing on either side

camp was established at the top of the climb

next the baggage was brought from the water to the encampment

this was a very perilous activity as one false step would have sent the man headlong
into the rapids below

When the men had rested, they proceeded with no small degree of apprehension to deliver the canoe
up the mountain by pulling on a rope wrapped around successive stumps

as a man at the end of the canoe carefully bent it around obstacles
3000 pounds less the food they had consumed and their canoe were at the summit -- 2:00 p.m.
Another trail was cut down the mountain for about a mile
that day's weather had been cloudy with showers and thunder

MACKENZIE'S MEN CONTINUE TO PORTAGE THEIR EQUIPMENT

Weather this morning was clear -- May 23, 1793
as a second day of portaging their canoe and equipment began
Mackenzie joined Alexander Mackay and two Indians in cutting the road down the mountain
Although they were at a high altitude they could see very little
because they were surrounded by even higher mountains covered with snow
they continued cutting the road over hills, through thick woods and across deep ravines
those carrying the canoe and baggage overtook the road builders -- 4:00 p.m.
Camp was made by a rivulet beneath a large mass of ice and snow -- 5:00 p.m.
they had traveled about three miles through a burn area of fallen timber and Devil's club plants
intermixed with shrubs of gooseberry and currants and several kinds of briars

DISCOVERY DEPARTS FROM NOOTKA SOUND

Captain George Vancouver sailed out of Nootka Sound traveling through hazy, rainy
and unpleasant weather -- May 23, 1793
Vancouver decided to investigate the area from Cape Scott on the north end
of Quadra-Vancouver Island (Vancouver Island) to the entrance of Fitzhugh Sound
in the waters of (today's northern British Columbia)
when the weather became pleasant gathering more accurate information
about Queen Charlotte Sound became easy
it was decided to pass by Galiano, Valdes and Calvert's islands to reach Fitzhugh Sound

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN REACH THE END OF THEIR LONG PORTAGE

Mackenzie's expedition continued their labors for a third day -- May 24, 1793
they progressed down steep hills and through the forest of tall pines
after a great deal of toil and trouble they brought their canoe and gear through the difficult passage
they arrived at the river about a hundred yards beyond the rapids -- 4:00 p.m.
this day they had traveled about four miles
Mackenzie named his route "Rocky Mountain Portage"
(in fact, an ancient Indian trail requiring only four hours of walking around the gorge existed
[and still exists today] -- it was missed by the scouts)

MACKENZIE MAKES PREPARATIONS TO CONTINUE THE JOURNEY

It had rained through the night and continued until noon -- May 25, 1793

in the short time they had remained at this location the water had risen a foot and a half
Having survived the hazards of Rocky Mountain Portage, Mackenzie and his men were occupied
with cutting long and short poles to propel the canoe and putting the canoe in order

Mackenzie attached a knife, steel and flint, beads and other articles to a pole
as a token of goodwill to the natives

one of his hunters added a small piece of green wood chewed on one end to form a brush
used to pick the marrow out of bone -- this was a sign the country abounded with animals
Alexander Mackenzie's expedition set out water-bound once again -- 5:00 p.m.

there were snow covered mountains on all sides -- one peak to the south rose to a great height
almost four miles farther up the Peace River they made camp

MACKENZIE CONTACTS THE LOCAL INDIANS

When the men took to their canoe the air was so cold that although they were actively employed
they could keep warm without the aid of their blanket coats -- 4:00 a.m. May 26, 1793

Mackenzie and his nine men came upon an encampment of local "Knisteneaux" (Cree) Indians
who had not previously seen white men, but had some iron which they had procured by trade
from other natives who had journeyed a great distance to the Pacific Ocean
Mackenzie hired one of these Indians to travel with the party and serve as guide
camp was made -- 7:00 p.m.

VANCOUVER INVESTIGATES FITZHUGH SOUND

HMS *Discovery* sailed up Fitzhugh Sound -- May 26, 1793

gentle breezes brought them to the arm leading to Menzies Point [visited in 1792]

here Vancouver expected to meet the *Chatham* but progress was impeded
by unfavorable winds and a strong ebb tide

when the tide changed *Discovery* continued up Fitzhugh Sound through thick misty weather
Chatham was revealed in the distance and *Discovery* anchored beside her in a cove -- noon May 26

Lieutenant Peter Puget informed Vancouver that *Chatham* had arrived the day before
and had enjoyed an uncomplicated voyage from the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)

Since *Discovery* was in need of repairs Vancouver decided that a two boat expedition
would be dispatched to investigate the region

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER SAILS FURTHER UP FITZHUGH SOUND

Captain Vancouver moved north to a large cove

there repairs were begun on the *Discovery* -- May 27, 1793

her bow had a leak that needed immediate attention and the stern of the ship needed caulking
and several spars needed replacement

Discovery's launch needed repairs and her sails needed mending
gunpowder needed airing to remove the humidity
however, rainy weather impeded the pace of the work

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE TAKES AN UNUSUAL DAY OFF

Violent rains continued throughout the day which kept the expedition in camp -- May 29, 1793
to amuse himself Mackenzie wrote a letter reporting their hardships to date
he wrapped it in bark, placed it in an empty rum keg and sent it down the Peace River
(this prank later led to the legend that Mackenzie sent his reports to headquarters down the river
sealed in a rum keg)

BRITISH CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SENDS OUT A BOAT EXPEDITION

Lieutenants James Johnstone was dispatched in *Chatham's* cutter attended by another small cutter
on the first boat expedition of 1793 -- May 29
to investigate the waters in the vicinity of (today's King Island) which had been abandoned
due to bad weather the year before

VANCOUVER LEADS A BOAT EXPEDITION OF HIS OWN

Vancouver took the *Discovery's* yawl accompanied by Lieutenant Spelman Swaine in the cutter
to examine an arm of this inlet in a northerly direction -- May 30, 1793
Vancouver named this arm "Burke's Canal" (today's Burke Channel)
to honor eminent political theorist and author the Right Honorable Edmund Burke
the northwest point of land at the entrance was identified as "Point Walker"
and the southwest point was named "Point Edmund"
Vancouver arrived at what appeared to be the main branch leading from Fitzhugh Sound -- 9:00 a.m.
he named "Fisher's Canal" (today's Fisher Channel) after a much-respected friend
landing on the western shore Vancouver's party was visited by a few shy natives
but distribution of a few trinkets gained their confidence and friendship
they appeared to be different from other natives in the region and used a different language
not at all like the Indians of Nootka Sound
Vancouver named "Port John" which provided a good harbor
evening brought rough water and rainy, unpleasant weather
steep cliffs kept the boat expedition from landing until nearly midnight

UNPLEASANT WEATHER CONTINUES FOR A SECOND DAY FOR CAPTAIN VANCOUVER

Rain fell throughout the night and daylight -- May 31, 1793
daybreak showed they were camped in a marsh and their possessions were very wet
Continuing on, the channel divided into two branches and Vancouver followed the one to the right

until they reached what Vancouver named "Point Edward" where camp was set up

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION REACHES THE HEAD OF THE PEACE RIVER

After three weeks of hard toil and constant peril Alexander Mackenzie reached the point where the Peace River is formed by the (Finlay River) and the (Parsnip) river -- May 31, 1793

Finlay River that flowed north-north-west was smooth and easy to follow
(Parsnip) river that flowed swiftly south-south-east was full of rapids
Mackenzie had learned from an old Indian at Fort Chipewyan the year before that route that led across the Rocky Mountains was the south-south-east (Parsnip) river the native had said that a carrying-place would be discovered which led to a large river (Finlay River would have taken them a considerable distance into the Rockies but many hundreds of miles from the Pacific Ocean

whereas the (Parsnip) river is the only river, other than the Laird River 300 miles north, that cuts through the mountains)
forced to take the far more challenging route Mackenzie's men began to complain they demanded the expedition return downriver -- Mackenzie would not consider it

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE REMAINS A POSITIVE LEADER

Mackenzie and his nine companions continued their travels as he and his six voyageurs launched their canoe up the (Parsnip) river -- sunrise June 1, 1793
Alexander Mackay and the two Indian hunters walked to lighten the burden on the canoe about noon the river's current began to slacken but toward evening it once again increased even so, Mackenzie kept his men moving forward and relished in the beauty of the region: **"In no part of the Northwest did I see so much beaver-work within an equal distance as in the course of this day. In some places they had cut down several acres of large poplars; and we saw also a great number of these active and sagacious (intelligent) animals. The time which these wonderful creatures allot for their labors, whether in erecting their curious habitations or providing food, is the whole of the interval between the setting and the rising sun."**¹¹⁴

When Mackay and his two native traveling companions arrived in camp in the evening they were exhausted by their efforts -- they had crossed swamps and had to swim to the river to reach our camp which was inadvertently located on an island
they reported hearing more gunfire during the day than could be accounted for by the expedition which used gunfire to communicate their location during their travels
Camp was uneasy and restless that night as each man posted himself at the foot of a tree fully prepared

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION FOR A THIRD DAY

Cloudy but mild weather greeted the boat expedition members -- June 1, 1793

¹¹⁴ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 74.

Point Menzies was seen faced by Burke's Canal on the opposite shore
(these had been visited by Lieutenant James Johnstone [1792])
Captain George Vancouver left a note for Lieutenant James Johnstone in a conspicuous place
instructing him to return to the ships by the same route he was now inspecting
Further investigations by Vancouver resulted in observing a driftwood fire on the beach
and evidence that Johnstone's boat expedition had been there
it became obvious there was no need to explore this area further
Vancouver's boat expedition turned south to explore five openings on the continental shore
camp was made that night near where they had camped the preceding evening

VANCOUVER EXPLORES THE CONTINENTAL SHORE

Vancouver's men set out early on the fourth day -- June 2, 1793
they entered the fifth opening, which Vancouver named "Dean's Canal," (Dean's Channel)
Vancouver ended his investigation of this region at "Point Raphoe"
Three Indians appeared across a brook from Vancouver's men but refused to meet
using signs they indicated some of Vancouver's men were nearby
they indicated that if Vancouver led the way to his men the Indians would follow
several other encounters with the natives that day had the same result
Vancouver passed what he named "Point Edward" at the north end
of which he named "King's Island" (King Island) and proved it was, in fact, an island
he named King's Island after British Captain James King the Dean of Raphoe, Ireland

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION FOR THE FIFTH DAY

Vancouver's boat expedition set out after breakfast -- June 3, 1793
retracing their route out of Dean's Channel Captain Vancouver named "Roscoe Inlet"
They returned to the brook they had seen the day before where they had enjoyed lunch
they set out to explore the next unexplored inlet where camp was made that evening

(PARSNIP) RIVER BECOMES INCREASINGLY DIFFICULT TO TRAVEL

Morning showed a very heavy fog had rolled in during the night -- June 3-4, 1793
Mackenzie had been keeping a detailed account of events and observations during his expedition
these included descriptions of people, locations, native houses, scenery, topography, geography
and his sightings for latitude and longitude to accurately place his location -
which were usually taken at noon
Mackenzie often recorded these notes while traveling in the canoe
occasionally he also slept as the canoe progressed along its journey
one day Alexander Mackenzie's notebook was missing
he surmised branches had swept it from his hands as he dozed -- June 4, 1793

his detailed writings between [May 28] and June 4 were lost
he was forced to rerecord general information that he could recall between those dates
Navigating the (Parsnip) river became increasingly difficult as the men grew ever more discontent
this river's current was so strong that paddles could not be used
and it was so deep that poles were useless
banks of the river were lined with willows and other trees that made it was hazardous
to tow the canoe with a cordelling line
No camping place could be found as night approached
they landed on a gravel bank situated only slightly above the water line

VANCOUVER NAMES "CASCADE CANAL"

Morning dawned chilly and unpleasant on the sixth day -- June 4, 1793

Vancouver's boat expedition returned to Fisher Channel and continued to the entrance of the next inlet

Vancouver named this arm "Cascade Canal" as it was surrounded by perpendicular cliffs
with several large cascades of fresh water
as he remarked in his journal, **"These cascades were extremely grand, and by much the largest and the most tremendous of any we had ever beheld. The impetuosity with which these waters descended produced a strong current of air that reached nearly to the opposite side of the channel, though it was perfectly calm in every other direction."**¹¹⁵

Near the entrance to Cascade Canal they met friendly Indians who took Vancouver
to their village of seven houses located in a small rocky cove around a point of land
Vancouver landed on the side of the cove opposite the village
and crossed over to visit the village where he visited for about half an hour
about forty male Indians made an appearance, but the women and children remained in the houses
none of the men had weapons and they conducted themselves in a civil and orderly manner
Vancouver left some medals and few trinkets and received indifferent sea otter pelts
and some pieces of halibut

Vancouver's boat expedition proceeded to the next unexplored opening where camp was made

VANCOUVER INVESTIGATES THE INLET SOUTH OF CASCADE CANAL

After breaking camp on the seventh day of his investigation -- June 5, 1793

Vancouver's boat expedition entered yet another inlet and found it terminated about two miles
in a westerly direction -- this was named "Cousins Inlet"

Continuing on Vancouver entered the last arm -- the one they had "Fisher Channel"
along the west side of King's Island

pleasant weather and gentle winds aided in the investigation which ended like the others inlets

¹¹⁵ Captain George Vancouver, *Voyage of Discovery to the North Pacific Ocean and Round the World*. P. 268.

Vancouver turned his attention to the continental shore one again until evening
when a sizable navigable channel was found
camp was made about a mile up this opening

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE FACES A REBELLION BY HIS MEN

From the time they had set out from Fort Chipewyan the rivers had been rising
as the advancing season melted snow in the high mountains and swelled all of the streams
When the men awoke they found their canoe and baggage in water which had risen the during the night
they had landed so late the night before that the canoe had to be prepared for the day's journey
before they could depart -- June 5, 1793
Mackenzie and a few of the men left the canoe and climbed a high hill to investigate the country
he climbed a tree to look ahead -- he saw a ridge of mountains covered with snow
there appeared to be an opening which he decided marked the course of the river
When he returned to the (Parsnip) river he could not see his canoe
as had been prearranged he fired a signal of two guns -- but there was no response
Mackenzie believed the canoe was ahead of him while his Indian hunters believed it was behind
as they proceeded up the river Mackenzie began to doubt his belief as his concern grew
Mackenzie left Alexander Mackay and an Indian where they were to build a large fire
he threw branches into the river as a signal if the canoe was behind them downriver
Mackenzie and an Indian hunter set out to search up the river
they stopped at noon to again fire two guns with no response
the rushing river increased Mackenzie's concerns
while swarms of gnats and mosquitoes added to their torment
Mackenzie and his Indian companion returned to where Mackay and the others were to wait
but found in his absence they had traveled three or four miles downriver
but having discovered nothing they had returned
Mackenzie began to blame himself for leaving the men in such difficult conditions
Alexander Mackay and the Indian Cancre set off downriver -- 6:30 p.m.
to search as far as possible before nightfall and to continue the next day if necessary
Mackenzie proposed to search upriver with his Indian companion the next morning
if success was not achieved they would meet back where they now were
As Mackenzie prepared to sleep two gunshots were heard from the direction Mackay had gone
Mackenzie and his Indian companion traveled downriver until they reached the canoe
he listened to his men's account of why their progress had been so slow
they said the canoe had been damaged and that travel had been even harder than previously
Mackenzie pretended to believe them
Mackenzie thought of leaving the river and striking overland -- this was a desperate idea
if they continued along the river it was always possible to return back

but without the river retreat could become impossible
one wrong turn and the entire party could become lost

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION WAS AGAIN UNDER WAY

Mackenzie and his nine companions set out once again -- 4:30 a.m. June 6, 1793
the current continued so strong and the river so deep that neither paddles nor poles could be used
and the riverbank so crowded by willows and other trees that progress was made
only by passing the canoe and baggage overhead from branch to branch
no stopping place could be found until noon when repairs were made to the canoe
clothes were dried and new paddles and poles were made to replace those broken or lost

VANCOUVER IS FORCED TO MAKE A LATE START ON THE EIGHTH DAY OF EXPLORING

Thick fog and rainy weather forced Vancouver's boat expedition to remain in camp
they did not set out until 10:00 a.m. June 6, 1793
when some of the fog began to clear and an investigation of the navigable channel began
they discovered a large native village but did not approach as the Indians hid themselves
proceeding about ten miles a stop was made for lunch
here two canoes of unarmed Indians from the village arrived and conducted a friendly trade
when the head of the inlet was reached Vancouver's expedition stopped for the night
about two miles away from the water's terminus

MACKENZIE AND HIS NINE MEN CONTINUE ALONG THE (PARSNIP) RIVER

Morning dawned calm and clear -- June 7, 1793
(Parsnip) river had risen two inches during the night and the current was even more swift
They set out along the river in their newly repaired canoe
after an unusually hard day's trek camp was made -- 7:00 p.m.
Alexander Mackay and the two Indian hunters had walked most of the day
Mackay killed a porcupine and several Indian encampments were seen -- but no Indians

VANCOUVER ENTERS HIS NINTH DAY OF HIS BOAT EXPEDITION

Back in the main channel the next morning -- June 7, 1793
Vancouver proceeded west to a small island where his men had breakfast
they were again visited by the friendly Indians
Weather became serene and pleasant with a gentle southwest breeze
Vancouver believed this channel would lead toward the ocean
the boat expedition continued westward keeping the continental shore to their right
as was their usual practice
openings were seen on both sides of the channel but their provisions were running low

so these remained uncharted
Vancouver stopped for lunch and to take a sighting of their longitude and longitude -- noon
Swaine was sent ahead in the cutter to find a channel leading to the ocean
Swain returned to report he had seen the ocean about a mile and a half ahead
Vancouver ended his exploration at this point
Vancouver's yawl and Swain's cutter set out to cross the forty-five miles to the ships
they once again passed by the Indian village they had previously seen
while the natives were once again friendly it became obvious
they did not want the sailors to land near their village
Vancouver and his boat party continued on

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION FACES THE MOUNTAINS AHEAD OF THEM

Rain and thunder had filled the night but the canoe was launched -- 4:00 a.m. June 8, 1793
for the past three days the mountains had loomed ahead
sometimes seemingly very close and other times far away
For the past two days they had been looking for the carrying place
promised to Mackenzie by an old Indian the year before
nothing appeared that resembled what had been described
all that could be done was to push on until the (Parsnip) river was no longer navigable
to add to their difficulties the river was so high no campsites along the bank could be found
they did not stop until 8:00 p.m. June 8, 1793

VANCOUVER'S BOAT EXPEDITION CONTINUES BACK TOWARD THE SHIPS

Once again after breaking camp good progress was made
toward the *Discovery* and *Chatham* -- June 8, 1793
they identified a bay that had the appearance of communicating with the ocean -- noon
about forty men, women and children from the native village they had seen on the first day
indicated the sailors should land at a rock near the Indians
when this was done most of the village's men and boys welcomed the strangers
after receiving presents
Continuing on Vancouver's boat expedition reached the *Discovery* and *Chatham* -- 10:00 p.m.
Vancouver discovered that bad weather had impeded the repairs to the *Discovery*

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER RECEIVES A REPORT FROM LIEUTENANT JOHNSTONE

Lieutenant James Johnstone had taken *Chatham's* large and small cutters
to explore the waters north of Fitzhugh Sound
His boat party had reached Point Menzies [by May 30]
where they discovered an arm of the sea that opened before them

pleasant weather allowed them to make great progress until the evening
when camp was made for the night
Contact was made with an Indian village the next day [May 31]
canoes here proved to be capable only of fishing in the nearby streams
and were not suited for ocean travel
Johnstone entered another arm of the sea leading to the northeast
which terminated after about eleven miles [June 1]
here another Indian house was seen which was of the usual variety
returning to the entrance of the arm Lieutenant Johnstone found Vancouver's note
instructing him to return to the ships
Discovery and *Chatham* were reached ([June 2])
Based on Lieutenant James Johnstone's report elongated North Bentinck and South Bentinck Arms
were misnamed "Bentinck Arms"
in honor of Tory Prime Minister William Henry Cavendish Bentinck
North Bentinck Arm is the longest inland-reaching channel of the whole complex coast
and was left unexplored by Johnstone's boat expedition
(later North Benedict Arm which will later deliver Alexander Mackenzie to the Pacific Ocean)

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER SENT LIEUTENANT JOHNSTONE TO EXPLORE FURTHER

Lieutenant James Johnstone took the *Chatham's* cutter to the place where Vancouver
had stopped his investigation on [June 7] to follow that opening where it might lead
he was to continue to where the ships would be anchored
near two small islands both boat expeditions had located earlier
if Johnstone arrived at the rendezvous first he was to leave a note
and continue to survey the coast to the west
Lieutenant Johnstone accompanied by Midshipman Robert Barrie in *Discovery's* small cutter set out
with a week's supplies -- June 8, 1793

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION ENCOUNTERS LOCAL NATIVES

Alexander Mackenzie and his men noticed a small fire and in a short time heard people in the timber,
they seemed frightened and confused by the discovery of the explorers' party
and the members of the expedition were equally alarmed they might be attacked -- June 9, 1793
as the Indians fled Mackenzie decided not to follow as the explorers' weapons were not ready
and there was no way of telling how many local natives there were
if there were only a few they would probably escape through the dense woods
if there were many it would be foolish to try to catch them
Mackenzie turned his canoe to the opposite side of the river to see if any natives had remained there
but before they were half-way across the hundred yard wide river

two Indians appeared on the far bank brandishing their weapons on the rising ground
Mackenzie's interpreter called to the two Indians and told them the white people were friendly
but the Indians maintained their threatening attitude
however, after some talk the two Indians allowed the explorers to beach their canoe
although the natives were very frightened they laid down their weapons
Mackenzie stepped forward and shook hands with both of them
one of the Indians, trembling with fear, drew his knife from his sleeve
he offered it to Mackenzie as a sign of his submission
These Indians had heard of white men before but had never seen one
they were extremely curious as well as suspicious
they said they had just gotten to this place and had not yet made their camp
but when they saw Mackenzie's party they ran away leaving their property behind
Mackenzie decided to stop until **"the Indians became so familiarized with us as to give all the intelligence which we imagined might be obtained from them"**¹¹⁶
he made a great effort to pacify them and reassure them he was friendly

MACKENZIE BECOMES ACQUAINTED WITH THE SHUSWAP INDIANS HE HAS JUST MET

Throughout the day the whole party of Indians came to visit with Mackenzie's expedition
three "Shuswap" Indian men and women, and seven or eight boys and girls
they were delighted with the beads given to them and seemed to enjoy the pemmican
as they had been surviving entirely of dried fish
These Indians were lean and short, no taller than five feet six or seven inches
their round faces were surrounded by loose-hanging hair and featured a pierced nose
they wore robes of beaver, groundhog, or reindeer skins dressed with the hair left on
their leggings and moccasins were of dressed moose, elk, or reindeer skin
they wore collars of grizzly bear claws around their necks
their cedar bows were six feet long and bore a short iron spike on one end
to be used as a spear or lance
they also carried lances headed with iron or bone and their knives and axes were of iron
they made strong cords of rawhide and their nets and fishing-lines were of willow bark and nettle
their fish hooks were made of bone set in wood
their kettles were baskets, their spoons were made of horn or wood
their canoes were made of spruce bark
These Indians possessed some iron which they said they had obtained from people
who lived about eleven days' walk away, and that those people travelled for a month
to reach the country of other tribes who lived in houses
and journeyed to the "Stinking Lake" (Pacific Ocean)

¹¹⁶ Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations*, P. 228.

where they traded with white people who came in canoes as large as islands
This account discouraged Mackenzie who feared the end of his journey was far away
he continued his efforts to allay the suspicions of his new friends
and treated them and their children with great kindness

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE IS ENCOURAGED BY WHAT HE LEARNS

Mackenzie was sitting around the campfire listening to the talk of the Indians and his interpreters
some of it he could understand himself -- June 10, 1793

he recognized that one of the Shuswap Indians, Sikannis, spoke of a great river
flowing near the source of the river they were ascending
and of portages leading to a small river which discharged into another great river
with a little patient work by Mackenzie the Indian described
what seemed a practical route to the ocean

Mackenzie noted in his journal on June 10: **“I desired him [Sikannis] to describe the road to the other river by delineating it with a price of coal, on a strip of bark, which he accomplished to my satisfaction.”**¹¹⁷

Mackenzie’s canoe was loaded and the camp was broken -- 10:00 a.m. June 10, 1793
before he departed the expedition leader informed the Indians to expect their return in two months
they continued along the (Parsnip) river until camp was made that night -- 7:00 p.m.

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM LEAVE RESTORATION COVE

Captain George Vancouver named the cove where he had anchored beside the *Chatham*
at the mouth of Burke Channel “Restoration Cove” -- June 10, 1793

(Restoration Bay was named in honor of Restoration Day -- the day King Charles II
was restored to the English monarchy after the [1651] death of his father

Discovery and *Chatham* under Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget
sailed to rendezvous east of (Yeo Island) off the north coast of (British Columbia) -- June 10

MACKENZIE CONTINUES UP THE (PARSNIP) RIVER

Morning was clear and cold as camp was broken -- 4:00 a.m. June 11, 1793

Mackenzie’s interpreter encouraged Sikannis to remain loyal to the expedition

their guide replied saying **“How is it possible for me to leave the lodge of the Great Spirit?
When he (Mackenzie) tells me he has no further occasion for me, I will then return to my
children.”**¹¹⁸

Leaving the Indian camp Alexander Mackenzie’s expedition saw a river entering on their left
and noted what their guide called “Beaver Lodge Mountain” also to their left

¹¹⁷ Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest*, P. 95.

¹¹⁸ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 102.

they continued on but after about thirteen miles their canoe took on so much water that it became necessary to stop and repair the leaks
Approximately four more miles up the river they left the main branch of the (Parsnip) river which, according to Sikannis ended a short distance from where they were their new stream was smaller than the one they had just left and the current was very slow this river was so shallow that it became difficult to work the canoe forward after about a mile they entered a small lake that was almost choked off by driftwood as the water deepened it became impossible to maneuver the canoe among the overhanging branches

Camp was made that night at a deserted Indian encampment beside a lake beaver had been seen during the afternoon as were swans and large numbers of geese and ducks tracks where large deer had crossed the river could be seen and wild parsnips grew in abundance they set out a net to catch what fish might be available

VANCOUVER'S EXPEDITION REACHES FISHER'S CANAL

After sailing all night *Discovery* and *Chatham* entered "Fisher's Canal" (today's Fisher Channel) -- June 11, 1793
by noon they had reached the location investigated by the boat expeditions favorable winds diminished and the ships anchored south of the Indian village visited [June 4] soon the expedition was visited by friendly villagers desiring to trade

MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN REACH THE CONTINENTAL DIVIDE

Where Mackenzie had camped the lake was about two miles long and three to five hundred yards wide Mackenzie considered this lake to be the source of the Peace River high in the Rocky Mountains their net, set out the night before, provided a trout, a white fish, a carp and three that were unknown to the explorers
Mackenzie's expedition set out about 3:00 a.m. June 12, 1793
they traveled along the lake until they found a well-worn path leading over a low ridge after 817 paces across a neck of land they reached a small lake sometime before, Indians had left canoes there baskets that contained many articles were hung on the trees
Mackenzie took a net, some hooks, a goat's horn and a wooden groundhog trap in exchange he left a knife, some steel balls, beads, awls and other small articles here two streams tumbled down the rocks from the right and fell into the lake they had just left two other streams from the left flowed into the lake ahead of them
they were at the Continental Divide of the Rocky Mountains dividing the Mississippi River watershed from the waters that flowed to the Pacific Ocean they were more than 1,000 miles from Lake Athabasca

Alexander Mackenzie and his nine men became first whites to cross the Rocky Mountains
(then also known as the Stoney or Shining Mountains)

At the second lake they cleared away some floating driftwood to reach another portage path
only 175 paces long before it reached a place where their canoe could be launched
into a small river that flowed from the second lake

When they entered the stream a great deal of energy was expended clearing the water of fallen trees
this river grew rapidly in size as many small ice-cold streams added their flow
weather on this day was cloudy and cold

and they were frequently required to be in and out of the ice-cold water

yet another portage around a rapids was necessary to reenter the river downstream -- 4:00 p.m.

Camp was made for the night where two large trees blocked their progress at the head of a rapid
those who had walked to lighten the canoe did not arrive at the campsite until almost dark
they had had a difficult time crossing the very rugged countryside

Mackenzie sent two men ahead to survey to the river

they returned with fearful details of rapid currents, fallen trees and large rocks standing in the river
their guide, Sikannis, was frightened by some of the rapids they had descended and wanted to leave

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM MAKE SLOW PROGRESS

Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget sailed only about a mile that night
before they were forced to anchor near the western shore where they remained
until 8:00 a.m. June 12, 1793

they were about three miles from their intended rendezvous point with Lieutenant James Johnstone
this distance was crossed and the ships were tied to trees on (Yeo Island) -- 6:00 p.m.

Vancouver found a note left by Lieutenant Johnstone stating he had decided to investigate
an arm that extended north-northwest of their location

Johnstone requested the ships wait for him at their present location

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM WAIT FOR THE RETURN OF LIEUTENANT JOHNSTONE

Weather turned gloomy and stormy with the result that no Indians visited the ship
efforts to fish with a seine net gave poor results

but mussels were found in plentiful supply -- June 13, 1793

Eventually two chiefs came to visit followed by many of the inhabitants who came to barter
during the time that *Discovery* and *Chatham* remained tied to the shore

they were visited by several hundred natives who were remarkably honest and friendly

NEAR DISASTER HITS THE MACKENZIE EXPEDITION

Early in the morning the men began to hack a trail around the rapids -- June 13, 1793
when the river was once again entered the swift current propelled them rapidly

Alexander Mackenzie thought he and his hunters would walk to lighten the load in the canoe but those remaining in the canoe remembered the incident involving a broken tow line [May 20] it was requested that everyone ride in the canoe so that if they were killed Mackenzie would die with them

Accordingly they all set out in the canoe as Mackenzie recorded in his diary: **“We accordingly pushed off, and had proceeded but a very short way when the canoe struck [the rocks], and notwithstanding all our exertions, the violence of the current was so great as to drive her sideways down the river, and break her by the first bar. I instantly jumped into the water, and the men followed my example; but before we could get her strait, or stop her, we came to deeper water, so that we were obliged to re-embark with the utmost precaution.**

“One of the men, who was not sufficiently active, was left to get on shore in the best manner in his power.

“We had hardly regained our situations when we drove against a rock, which shattered the stern of the canoe.... The violence of this stroke drove us to the opposite side of the river...when the bow met with the same fate as the stern.

“At this moment the foreman seized on some branches of a small tree in the hope of bringing up (stopping) the canoe, but such was their elasticity that, in a manner not easily described, he was jerked on shore in an instant, and with a degree of violence that threatened his destruction.

“But we had no time to turn from our own situation to enquire what had befallen him; for in a few moments we came across a cascade which broke several large holes in the bottom of the canoe, and started all the bars except one behind the scooping seat.... The wreck becoming flat on the water, we all jumped out, while the steersman, who had not yet recovered from his fright, called out to his companions to save themselves.”¹¹⁹

fortunately they came to shallow water where they could stand
and hold the wreckage to keep it from sinking
this terrifying scene had taken only a few minutes
soon the man who had been jerked from the canoe arrived
he assisted in carrying the baggage ashore

Amazingly no one drowned -- miraculously there had been no injuries of consequence but the canoe was wrecked -- valuable equipment, including most of their musket balls, were gone grumbling flared into open rebellion -- Sikannis their guide stated he wanted to return to his people their ammunition was lost, and the voyageurs thought they would have to return home now Mackenzie rested his men by a big fire and fed them a good meal then he gave them a small amount of rum to raise their spirits he listened to his men's assessment of their situation until their panic had subsided When they were warm, dry and their stomachs full, Mackenzie gave them a speech he gave thanks for their narrow escape

¹¹⁹ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 112.

he said they had lost their ammunition, but they still had some lead shot
which could be melted into musket balls
he noted the canoe was almost useless but could be repaired or a new one built
he reminded them that voyageurs were known for courage and resolution
he invited them to stay with him and share in the glory
Mackenzie told them that he would discuss with them the question of returning to Fort Chipewyan
but by that time no one could think of a good reason for going back
Mackenzie's encouragement had generated sufficient courage to make them willing to continue on
Mackenzie sent two men with their guide Sikannis to look for bark to be used to repair the canoe
and also to look for the great river they were seeking -- 9:00 a.m.
Sikannis had told them it was not far distant
Sikannis returned to the campsite alone about 10:00 p.m.
tired and hungry, his clothes were torn to rags -- he had left the other two men at sunset
his report could not have been more discouraging

REPAIRS ARE MADE TO MACKENZIE'S CANOE

Mackenzie's men who had gone with their guide Sikannis
now returned tired, hungry and cold -- 7:30 a.m. June 14, 1793
their clothes were torn and they were bleeding from lacerations acquired in the dense woods
these men also gave an unsatisfactory report -- but they added they thought they had seen a river
however it was so full of obstacles that the expedition would have to portage around
This day was spent in making repairs to the canoe
Sikannis, who had often expressed a desire to depart, suddenly became content
Mackenzie attributed this change of attitude to smoke seen in the distance
their guide expected that if natives were found he would be released from service

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION SETS OUT ONCE AGAIN DOWN THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS

Alexander Mackenzie and some of his men began very early in the morning -- June 15, 1793
to build a road to carry part of their equipment because the canoe was not in good enough condition
to risk carrying all they own in it -- especially with the rocks and rapids being so prevalent
Repairs to the canoe were completed well enough for four of the men to paddle the canoe
which was loaded with only twelve packages while the remaining baggage was carried
progress in the canoe was slowed by driftwood and fallen trees
One of the voyageurs, Jacques Beauchamps, refused to travel any farther in the canoe
this was the first instance of disobedience that Mackenzie had faced
rather than discipline him Mackenzie made him the object of ridicule and contempt
As the day drew to an end the expedition members gathered around a blazing fire
their spirits were lightened by the beverage Mackenzie supplied

they forgot their exhaustion and fears
they began to anticipate the pleasure of leaving their present trials behind
and gliding onward down a strong and steady stream their guide Sikannis described
as the large river they soon expected to enter

HARDSHIPS CONTINUE FOR ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS EXPEDITION

Alexander Mackenzie's nine men and their guide Sikannis were divided into three groups
some continued to work with Mackenzie on trail building -- June 16, 1793
others were occupied with carrying the equipment and supplies along the trail
four of the men took the canoe downriver

After progressing on the trail about half a mile it was discovered their camp had been placed
above several waterfalls that the canoe, even as light as it was, could not navigate

as it had once again been damaged with a hole in the bottom

this demanded a wider road be constructed to accommodate carrying the canoe

Mackay and two Indians who had been working the trail were assigned to find the great river

others worked on repairing the canoe as much as possible with the sparse materials they possessed

that done, four men were assigned to carry the canoe, now much heavier than it was originally

because of all of the patchwork that had been done

every one hundred yards through deep mud and swamp and over roots and fallen trees

the two men carrying the canoe had to be replaced by the other two

Mackenzie and two of the men carried the baggage as fast as they could

to add to their misery fleas and sand-flies tormented them all day long

Mackenzie's expedition reached the end of the trail they had built -- 7:00 p.m.

less than two miles had been made that day

Mackenzie and his men were joined in camp by Alexander Mackay and the two Indians

they reported the river they were following was so full of fallen trees that it was impassable

but after trudging through swamps and almost impenetrable woods they came to the great river

they also brought back with them two geese they had shot

Mackenzie ignored the murmurings of his men as they rested from their labors in camp

he distributed the usual amount of rum and the expedition members soon retired for the night

LIEUTENANT JAMES JOHNSTONE RETURNS TO REPORT TO CAPTAIN VANCOUVER

Clear weather allowed Captain Vancouver to take observations of their latitude and longitude

Lieutenants James Johnstone and Spelman Swaine in *Chatham's* large and small cutters

returned to the ships after completing a nineteen-day boat expedition -- June 17, 1793

Johnstone reported that on the first day of their investigation [June 8]

they had encountered natives who had some halibut

but the price the Indians demanded was so high none could be purchased

bad weather had impeded their exploration of bays, inlets and channels
but several contacts were made with the Indian people during which
who all proved hospitable and ready to trade
increasingly difficult weather forced the members of the boat expedition
to remain in camp for several days

Lieutenant Johnstone and Swaine were able to once again get underway [June 13]
sadly, the next day tainted mussels were eaten for breakfast [June 14]
sailor John Carter and two or three others suffered from the complications
Carter died but the others escaped the same fate
Johnstone named the scene of the tragedy "Carter's Bay" after the victim
where the mussels had been eaten was identified as "Poison Cove"
and the branch of water leading to the cove was named "Muscle Canal" (sic)
because of the loss of a man and the weakened state of the party
Johnstone and Swaine took a southward route back toward the ships
very unfavorable weather had provided not one day
that was fair enough to ascertain their latitude

When the boat expedition returned to the ships the stricken men
were immediately taken to Dr. Archibald Menzies for care -- June 17, 1793
James Johnstone and Spelman Swain had explored today's (Spiller Inlet) and "Mussel Inlet,"
(Bullock Channel), "Mathieson Channel," "Flaysion Channel"
they circumnavigated (Yeo Island) and visited (Pooley), (Roderick), (Susan)
and (Dowager) islands

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION CONTINUES THEIR TRUDGE OVER THE CONTINENTAL DIVIDE

Mackenzie, as was his usual practice, stayed awake watching his guide until midnight
when he was relieved by Alexander Mackay -- but during the early hours Sikannis deserted
Early in the morning everyone went to work cutting the trail through the forest -- June 17, 1793
after their canoe and cargo had been carried three-quarters of a mile it was launched into a stream
but in a short time their progress was stopped by driftwood
they were forced to portage once again

All through the morning their journey alternated between paddling and packing
this stream increasingly branched until it became impossible to navigate -- noon
they were forced to cut a trail across a narrow neck of land

They found themselves on the banks of a large smooth-flowing stream
located on the west side of the Rocky Mountains -- 8:00 p.m.
this was the north fork of the Indians' "Tacoutche Tesse" (today's Fraser River)
which Mackenzie believed was American Captain Robert Gray's Columbia River

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM CONTINUE THEIR INVESTIGATION

No time was lost in following up on the investigation of lieutenants Johnstone and Swaine

Discovery and *Chatham* left their (Yeo Island) anchorage

being a calm day, all of the boats were employed in towing the *Discovery* and *Chatham*
about a mile from their anchorage -- June 18, 1793

Progress was slow and only six miles were made before anchoring for the night

better weather conditions allowed Vancouver's expedition to sail through the islands to the north

TRAVEL ONCE AGAIN BECOME EASIER FOR MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN

Rain began and fell continually throughout the night until 7:00 a.m. June 18, 1793

after all of the exertions over the past three days

Mackenzie gave the members of his expedition an opportunity to sleep in

However, they were on the water by 8:00 a.m.

weather was so hazy they could not see across the river which was about 200 yards wide
as they passed mountains on their left, high, rocky cliffs covered with forest on the right

and islands in the river, the current was swift but perfectly safe

They reached a newly constructed Indian cabin at a branch in the Tacoutche Tesse (Fraser River)

here was the great fork where before he disappeared Sikannis had said to take the southeast fork
this grew very slack and became a lake

but after five miles the river narrowed and the current increased

smoke along the bank of a merging river indicated Indians were in the vicinity

while Mackenzie would have liked to visit with these people several factors stopped him:

- paddling against the current up the tributary would unnecessarily tire the men;
- he had no guide to introduce them to the natives;
- progress was so favorable he felt compelled to continue forward

he decided to wait until his return trip to make their acquaintance

Traveling down the swift-flowing river Mackenzie's expedition made about sixty miles before dark

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE ATTEMPTS TO CONTACT THE LOCAL NATIVES

Although the morning was foggy, Mackenzie's men were on the river by 3:00 a.m. June 19, 1793

thick smoke rose from the forest and there was a strong order of burning resin

As they continued down the Tacoutche Tesse (today's Fraser River) rocks began to constrict the river
in such a way as to suggest a waterfall was rapidly approaching

Mackenzie landed his canoe and found a faded footpath

work was begun to widen the path enough to allow the canoe to pass over rocky, hilly ground
for about half a mile

as it was being carried on the shoulders of two men the canoe cracked and broke

once again repairs were made and the canoe was successfully launched into the river

As Mackenzie continued down the Tacoutche Tesse the expedition members saw smoke on the shore but before they could reach land the natives had deserted their camp -- afternoon
Mackenzie's two hunters were sent to search for the natives and they soon overtook two families as Mackenzie's Indians advanced the families fired five arrows but no damage was done
When the two hunters returned they told Mackenzie what had happened
he took Alexander Mackay and one of the hunters and went in pursuit himself
after discovering the natives had fled too great a distance to pursue
they returned to the expedition
Mackenzie reached his men and saw they were examining the goods the two families had left behind such as fishing tackle, nets, line and bags of red earth used as body paint
some of the items were taken but Mackenzie left other useful things in exchange
Mackenzie's expedition continued on -- 4:00 p.m.
they landed where a small river entered from the right and camp was made -- 7:30 p.m.

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS EXPLORATION ALONG THE CONTINENTAL COAST

Discovery and *Chatham* left their (Yeo Island) anchorage they proceeded up Finlayson Channel and along the east side of Captain Charles Duncan [1788] Princess Royal Island -- June 19, 1793
(where they anchored two days later off the eastern shore of the island)

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION CONTINUES ALONG THE TACOUTCHE TESSE

Fog this morning was so thick that they could not see the length of their canoe
but they continued along their dangerous river regardless -- June 20, 1793

Two red deer were sighted at the edge of the water -- one was killed and the other wounded
Mackenzie's Indian hunters tracked the wounded animal and killed it
another deer might also have been killed but the dog frightened it away

Mackenzie wrote that these were **“not so large as the elk of the Peace River, but are the real red deer, which I never saw in the north, though I have been told that they are to be found in great numbers in the plains.”**¹²⁰

Natives here had stripped the bark from many of the spruce trees to use on the roof of their dwellings
members of the expedition noticed a house thirty feet long and twenty wide with three doors
intended for occupation by more than one family
with three fireplace an equal distance from each other and beds on either side of them
house walls were five feet high and made of spruce timbers
upright posts inside and outside the house support the walls
its roof was supported by a ridge pole resting on two upright forked pole ten feet high
spars were covered with spruce bark to form the roof -- all tied together with cedar strips
There also was a very large fishing machine that could be placed in the river

¹²⁰ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 137.

“It was cylindrical in form, fifteen feet long, and four feet and a half in diameter; one end was square, like the head of a cask, and an (sic) conical machine was fixed inwards to the other end, of similar dimensions; as the extremity of which was an opening of about seven inches in diameter. This machine was certainly contrived to set in the river, to catch large fish; and very well adapted to that purpose; as when they are once in, it must be impossible for them to get out, unless they should have strength sufficient to break through it. It was made of long pieces of split wood rounded to the size of a small finger and placed at the distance of an inch asunder (apart), on six hoops; to this was added a kind of boot of the same materials, into which it may be supposed that the fish are driven, when they are to be taken out.”¹²¹

After a short visit to the fishing machine to satisfy their curiosity Mackenzie and his men continued downriver but their damaged canoe became unmanageable and was so heavy the men preferred attempting to shoot the rapids rather than portaging four voyageurs attempted to shoot the rapids they got about half way before the canoe filled with water but did not overturn they managed to reach an eddy where they emptied the canoe and reached shore they were half-drowned -- but they had reduced the portage distance by half After three hours were spent again repairing the canoe they once again entered the Tacoutche Tesse below the rapids camp was made that night in the midst of a rain storm accompanied by thunder

VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION REACHES THE QUEEN CHARLOTTE ISLANDS

Captain George Vancouver reached British Captain Charles Duncan’s Milbank’s Sound [1788] he named Cape Swaine” the northwest entrance to Milbanke’s Sound -- June 20, 1793 he named “Day Point” (on what Vancouver thought was British Columbia mainland but is, in fact, the southern end of today’s Price Island) snow-capped mountains came into view accompanied by forests of pine trees Vancouver continued to seek a location where two boat parties could be sent out

LOCAL INDIANS BEGIN TO APPEAR ON THE TACOUTCHE TESSE

This morning dawned very cloudy -- Mackenzie took the time to cache ninety pounds of pemmican even so, they were under way by 4:00 a.m. June 21, 1793 They passed a small canoe beached at the edge of the woods soon another appeared with an Indian in it who, seeing them, gave a whoop to alert his friends they immediately appeared on the bank armed with bows and arrows and spears it became obvious they would attack if Mackenzie attempted to land to prove the point a volley of arrows was discharged -- some fell short; others overshot but no harm was done

¹²¹ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 139-140.

Mackenzie had his canoe paddled down the river and landed across from the natives' location
two of the hostile Indians were seen paddling a canoe downriver to acquire assistance
it was obvious the arrival of their friends would embolden them to attack
in an effort to show the natives that the members of the expedition were friendly,
Mackenzie remained on his side of the river
his interpreters tried to pacify the Indians but with no success
two more Indians went off in a canoe down the river apparently to obtain assistance
Mackenzie sent one of his hunters with a gun into the woods to remain out of sight but close by
he was given instructions to shoot anyone who might attack
Mackenzie then walked along the shore and invited the Indians to come over and see him
all the while his interpreter declared to them that these people were his friends
eventually two natives came over in a canoe but they stopped a hundred yards from shore
Mackenzie signaled to them to land and enticed them with attractive articles
such as looking-glasses, beads and other trinkets
very slowly they drew nearer to the shore but at first would not leave their canoe
at last they came near enough to collect some beads
they were persuaded to come ashore and to sit down
It was found the interpreters could talk with these people
Mackenzie tried to persuade them to come to his canoe -- but they would not
both natives asked for permission to go back to their own side of the river -- this was granted
their return to their friends was a matter of great rejoicing
while the articles that they took back with them were examined with the greatest curiosity
After a little time the white men were asked to come over to the Indians' side which they did
although the Indians were still timid, the distribution of a few trinkets among them
and a little sugar to the children strengthened their confidence
these people reported the Tacoutche Tesse ran to the south
white people were said to be building houses at its mouth
they warned Alexander Mackenzie about an impossible canyon downriver
was filled with rapids and waterfalls
also they said very belligerent people who lived in underground houses along the shores
might attack the expedition and do them great harm
Mackenzie managed to hire two of the men to introduce them to their belligerent neighbors
before they could depart a small canoe with three men it was seen coming up the river
Mackenzie believed it a good idea to wait for these people who obviously had been summoned
although at first the new arrivals were very hostile, eventually they calmed enough to begin to talk
one middle-aged Indian told Mackenzie his friends downriver had been warned
they would not hesitate to attack the members of the expedition
he suggested Mackenzie wait until morning when proper arrangements could be made

for them to pass through this country
Mackenzie spent the rest of the day conversing with these seven families composed of eighteen men
who were clad in leather and handsome beaver and rabbit-skin blankets
they were preparing to build fishing machines for the summer salmon run
Mackenzie and his men camped for the night and the canoe was unloaded and the seams gummed
their canoe was so weak, leaky and unmanageable that it was utterly necessary to build a new one
two voyageurs and an Indian were sent out to find more of the necessary materials
to add to their supply

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION ENCOUNTERS MORE LOCAL NATIVES

Mackenzie and his nine men set out on the Tacoutche Tesse -- 6:00 a.m. June 22, 1793
they followed a canoe paddled by one of the local natives as another joined them in their canoe
this provided Mackenzie an opportunity to have their arrival announced to the local Indians
They landed near a house with only the roof above the ground but its inhabitants had fled in alarm
(they had arrived at today's Alexandria, British Columbia later named in honor of Mackenzie)
in the mid-distance several men had taken a menacing stance
these men were approached by Mackenzie's native emissaries
one of the fierce Indians was persuaded to approach
seven others soon followed with their bows and arrows at the ready
once the warriors were relieved of their concerns, ten women approached but without children
it was assumed they had been sent farther away out of danger
Mackenzie distributed presents and relayed the nature of his expedition
Mackenzie showed these natives how firearms could be used to oppose enemies or to assist friends
when the expedition members continued on about a half hour later
these people had a favorable impression
Progressing down the river another group of natives living in temporary huts were met and pacified
Mackenzie and his men were invited to spend the night with them
as the canoe was being prepared to be launched Mackenzie was surprised to hear a woman
who spoke several Knisteneaux Indians words -- she was a Rocky Mountain native
interpreters for the expedition understood her perfectly
as she explained she had been taken prisoner by the Knisteneaux across the mountains
after a summer there she managed to escape return home
but she was taken prisoner by a war party of the people she was now with
while she no complaints regarding her current husband she wanted to return home
Mackenzie arranged with her to meet again and went to take a latitude reading
About thirty-five Indians, including a large number of women, visited with the expedition members
among the natives were men from four various local tribes and a Rocky Mountain Indian man
who served as an interpreter allowing Mackenzie to acquire a great deal of information

Mackenzie selected an old man and asked him to draw a sketch of the country on a piece of bark
he began immediately and stopped frequently to ask the advice of others around him
he explained the river received many rivers and was full of waterfalls and rapids
some of these were dangerous and six were impassable with long portages
he identified the land of three other tribes in succession who spoke different languages
Mackenzie's men were concerned about the report given by the Indians
it seemed insane to try to pass through so many hostile and barbarous tribes
but Mackenzie had only thirty days' worth of supplies remaining
and no more than fifty rifle balls with about thirty pounds of lead shot
that could be made into ammunition -- but at a considerable waste of material
Mackenzie, himself, was concerned about the distance to the ocean
and the need to return to Fort Chipewyan before (winter)
not only was he rapidly running out of supplies but it obviously would take a long time
to get to the Pacific Ocean and return to Fort Chipewyan
Mackenzie requested the woman prisoner be brought forward so he could question her further
regarding the country ahead -- but he received only vague, evasive answers regarding her
as the Indians were concerned she would be taken away
Mackenzie's expedition spent the night in the Indian camp of huts
where they were entertained with singing and dances

VANCOUVER SENDS OUT MORE TWO BOAT EXPEDITIONS

Captain Vancouver discovered a location beside Princess Royal Island -- June 22, 1793
where he could dispatch two boat expeditions to conduct detailed investigations
Master Joseph Whidbey in the *Discovery's* cutter
accompanied by Midshipman Harry Humphrys in the launch were given a week's supplies
and sent through an as yet unexplored opening south of their location
Lieutenant James Johnstone and Midshipman Robert Barrie took the *Discovery's* small cutter
to investigate an opening to their west as far as a week's supplies would take them
Clear weather allowed Captain Vancouver who remained with the *Discovery* and *Chatham*
to take several good observations to determine their exact latitude and longitude
Whidbey and Humphrys returned that night having found that the passage they followed terminated

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE TAKES THE ADVICE OF LOCAL INDIANS

After a restless night spent by Mackenzie while he considered his situation
he called the Indians from their huts to gather more information -- morning June 23, 1793
These Indians informed him that parts of the river were virtually impassable
and that its mouth was still far to the south
in their view the best way to reach the ocean was by a considerably shorter route overland

taking this route would require returning back up the Tacoutche Tesse (Fraser River)
to the vicinity of a small tributary which fell from the west into the great river
they should follow its valley westward over a trail called the “**Great Road**”
this was the route the old Indian at Fort Chipewyan had identified for Mackenzie
they assured the members of the expedition the road was not difficult as it avoided mountains
they said this route required leaving the canoe behind
but another canoe might be acquired from their trading partners who went to the ocean
these people often traveled the route which was visible throughout the journey
it would take no more than six nights to reach the people
who bartered for dressed leather and beaver, bear, lynx fox and marten skins
in exchange for iron, brass, copper, beads and other goods
from there they said the distance would be only one day’s voyage with the current
to a lake whose water was nauseous (the Pacific Ocean)
where they had heard that great canoes came two (winters) ago
and people belonging to them brought great quantities of goods
Mackenzie decided his best route forward was to follow the natives’ advice although this required
returning back up the river for a considerable distance before striking out overland
Mackenzie had given a moose hide to some of the women to make shoes which were brought out
they were well sewn but poorly shaped -- a few beads was considered sufficient reward
Mackenzie hired a guide and was ready to set out
however, their guide announced he first wanted to return to his home to complete his preparations
Mackenzie was concerned about his loyalty but thought it unwise to oppose him
Alexander Mackay and two Indians were sent to accompany the guide to his home
they would rendezvous tomorrow at the sunken house beside the river
Mackenzie’s expedition began back up the Tacoutche Tesse in a rain storm -- 10:00 a.m.
after this day’s hard paddling they had not reached the where they were to meet Mackay
they stopped at a native encampment where the night was passed in complete safety

WHIDBEY AND HUMPHREYS ARE AGAIN SENT ON A BOAT EXPEDITION

Discovery’s cutter and launch entered a northwest running branch -- June 23, 1793
this lead terminated after five miles so they traced the continental examined by James Johnstone
but Whidbey concentrated on openings probably not explored by Johnstone
Dr. Archibald Menzies accompanied Whidbey seeking botanical specimens

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION INTERRUPTS THEIR VOYAGE UP THE TACOUTCHE TESSE

Alexander Mackenzie made his departure from camp -- 4:00 a.m. June 24, 1793
everyone met at the appointed rendezvous except Mackenzie’s newly-hired guide
who had explained to Mackay that the Indians were planning to attack the expedition

this information caused a general panic among Mackenzie's voyageurs and hunters
Mackenzie ignored his men and ordered the canoe unloaded except for six packages
two voyageurs were left to protect the canoe and goods
all of the others returned to their former camp at the Indian encampment
where it was hoped the Indians might be found
on their arrival it was discovered the natives had gone leaving behind their possessions
there was nothing to do but return to the canoe and the two voyageurs left to protect it
In spite of his men's fiercely expressed desires to leave immediately
Mackenzie sought out a position that could be defended
he distributed arms and ammunition to his men in anticipation of an attack
a native in a canoe stopped at the Indian huts where camp had been made
all efforts to have him meet with Mackenzie failed
Mackenzie ordered his canoe reloaded and staked to the river bank to allow for a quick escape
all through the cloudy, rainy night a watch was kept

INVESTIGATIONS OF CAPTAIN VANCOUVER BECOME TEDIOUS

As *Discovery* and *Chatham* remained at anchor the wind died down
but very heavy rains continued in the morning -- June 24, 1793
an unusually high tide carried off several water casks
efforts to catch fish using seine nets and hooks yielded little
unpleasant weather added to their irksome situation as they examined the inhospitable region
surrounding Princess Royal Island

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION REMAINS IN THEIR DEFENSIVE LOCATION

Mackenzie's nine men informed Alexander Mackay they would go no farther -- June 25, 1793
when he heard of it, this demand was ignored by Mackenzie
but while he was taking a latitude reading his men loaded the canoe without being ordered
this, too, was ignored as nothing good would come from a confrontation
Their defensive position was visited by a young woman the expedition had seen before at the huts
she was asked what had prompted the general alarm shown by the Indians
but communication with her was all but impossible
she was treated with great kindness in the hope she would return to her people
and the peaceful intent of expedition could be conveyed
Camp was again made at the defensive location and guards were posted

MACKENZIE DECIDES TO CONTINUE HIS RETURN UP TACOUTCHE TESSE

When a rustling noise was heard in the woods it generated a general alarm about midnight
Mackenzie was awakened and told of the possible intruder but nothing could be heard

Mackenzie took his turn at the watch -- 1:00 a.m. June 26, 1793
their dog constantly ran back and forth along the edge of the woods in restless vigilance
Mackenzie was replaced as the watchman but was soon awakened and informed
that something like a human was creeping along on all fours about fifty yards away
Mackenzie searched and found it was true but attributed the intrusion to a bear
When day broke it was discovered the intruder was a grey haired old blind man
who had been left behind by those who had fled from the huts
hunger drove him from his hiding place in the woods
when Mackenzie placed his hand on the man's shoulder he shuddered with fear
he was guided to the fire and was fed as he had not eaten in two days
Mackenzie asked the old blind man what had alarmed his relatives and friends
he said that shortly after the expedition left natives had arrived
they identified the members of the expedition as enemies
when the expedition unexpectedly returned and their guide was gone they fled in panic
he said he would readily guide the expedition to the start of the overland route but he was blind
but he confirmed the information the explorers had regarding the proper place to begin
When another Indian appeared across the river in a canoe -- sunrise June 26, 1793
Mackenzie requested the old man call out to him but there was no answer
and the native set out paddling down the river as fast as possible
Mackenzie decided there was no purpose to be served by staying where they were
he compelled the old blind man to accompany them to introduce them to any Indians they met
camp was broken and they left what Mackenzie named "Deserter's Creek" -- 7:00 a.m.
Soon their canoe became so leaky that one person was occupied bailing it out to keep it afloat
they asked the old man where materials could be found to build a new canoe
he reported that plenty of bark and cedar could be found further up the river
All day long the men were in ill humor -- they quibbled and quarreled among themselves
but did not vent their feeling on Mackenzie
Traveling up the Tacoutche Tesse Mackenzie's canoe hit a tree stump in the river about sunset
this gave rise to outbursts of bad feeling among the voyageurs
Mackenzie turned his attention to finding a place to build a new canoe
They found a small island with plenty of spruce -- 5:00 p.m.
but before they could unload their canoe and pitch their tent a thunderstorm and rain arrived
and lasted all night
the next day was spent gathering materials for the construction of a new canoe

DISCOVERY'S SMALL CUTTER RETURNS CARRYING JOHNSTONE AND BARRIE

Lieutenant James Johnstone and Midshipman Robert Barrie returned to the *Discovery*
having completed their investigation in just six days -- June 28, 1793

Lieutenants Johnstone and Barrie gave a report to Captain Vancouver
they discovered the branch they had followed extended about twelve miles
before it united with two extensive arms -- one leading north and the other west
this western branch extended nearly six miles before it joined with two other branches
one running east and the other northwesterly
they followed the northern branch until an opening to the west was taken up
heavy rain and misty weather forced the boat expedition into camp [June 23]
three nights of uncomfortable conditions slowed their investigation
more moderate weather [June 26] helped them follow a spacious channel to the west
Johnstone and Barrie reinvestigated the region first explored by British Charles Duncan [1788]
they reached an island that Johnstone concluded was Banks Island
(previously identified by British Captain Charles Duncan [1788])
Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano named Isle de Gil [1792] (Gil Island)
these names were left by Vancouver
Johnstone decided a passage to the Pacific Ocean was certain to be found
so he decided to return to the ships by a more direct route
they had explored the northern reaches of (Princess Royal Channel)
as well as (Whale Channel) and (Squally Channel) and had circumnavigated Isle de Gil

BRITISH CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER DECIDES TO CHANGE LOCATIONS

Lieutenant James Johnstone's thorough report made remaining at Princess Royal Island unnecessary
Vancouver decided to explore the western arm where Johnstone had located
what appeared to be good anchorage that would be seen by Master Whidbey on his return
but in the event Whidbey passed by in the night or in bad weather,
Vancouver left a note in a bottle at the previously agreed-to location
Shore equipment was loaded as *Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed
in heavy squalls and rainy weather -- June 28, 1793

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION BUILDS ANOTHER CANOE

Everyone was up early and employed in preparations to construct a replacement canoe
different parties searched for wood, watap (thread from conifer trees)
and sap that could be used to produce gum to seal the canoe's parts
they returned and work on the new canoe was begun -- 2:00 p.m. June 28, 1793

WORK PROGRESSES SLOWLY ON THE NEW CANOE

Alexander Mackenzie became so frustrated by the slowness of the canoe building effort
that the project's leader incurred his wrath -- June 29, 1793
Mackenzie announced the man's dedication to eating surpassed his dedication to work

Two natives in a canoe were seen as they came alongside the island -- 2:00 p.m.

Mackenzie was surprised to discover his recently hired guide was one of the occupants
this man immediately apologized and said he had been busy looking for his family
because they had scattered in the panic

friendly conversations among the old blind man and his two newly-arrived friends
took up all afternoon -- the old man reported Mackenzie had treated him very well

Work continued on the new canoe over the next several days

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S MEN CONTINUE TO WORK ON THEIR NEW CANOE

Construction on the new canoe progressed -- June 30, 1793

their newly returned guide and his friend maintained good humor throughout the day
they said that their friends should be found above and below the carrying place
where the overland trail began

Mackenzie took the time to establish his latitude and longitude

During the night the old Indian blind man attempted to run off but was easily returned to camp
where Mackenzie's guide and his friend scolded him for his treachery

Mackenzie awakened Alexander Mackay and related what had happened
he requested Mackay remain watchful while Mackenzie slept

VANCOUVER ARRIVES AT A NEW LOCATION

After a slow and difficult passage from their previous anchorage at Princess Royal Island
Discovery and *Chatham* arrived at what proved to be a large cove

as Lieutenant James Johnstone had indicated it would be -- July 1, 1793

after anchoring the crewmen set about restocking their supplies

while fishing was unsuccessful, raspberries, red and black berries were plentiful

MACKENZIE'S GUIDE DISAPPEARS ONCE AGAIN

Alexander Mackenzie did not wake up until 7:00 a.m. July 1, 1793

when he left his tent Mackenzie was surprised to see their guide and his friend were missing

he was told by some his men that the guide had gone up the river and left the old man behind

Mackay also reported that while he was busy with the canoe he watched them leave

Mackenzie's interpreter reported their guide had stated he planned to set out at sunrise

and go to wait for the expedition where he would find his friends

Mackenzie could only hope this was true

Work on the canoe was completed -- 5:00 p.m. July 1, 1793

she proved to be stronger than the old one

the rest of the day was spent by the men in preparation to travel and in cleaning themselves

time also was dedicated to putting their weapons in order

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION IS AGAIN WATER BOUND UP THE TACOUTCHE TESSE

Rain had fallen throughout the night but final preparations for their departure were completed

Mackenzie offered to take the old blind man to where his friends might find him but he declined they left him with a few pounds of pemmican

Mackenzie named "Canoe Island" (which no longer exists) they departed -- 3:30 a.m. July 2, 1793

he noted in his journal: **"During our stay there we had been most cruelly tormented by flies, particularly by sand-flies, which I am disposed to consider as the most tormenting insect of its kind in nature."**¹²²

he also noted the river had fallen three feet in depth since their arrival

Mackenzie reduced their rations to two meals a day much to the dismay of his expedition members their food now consisted chiefly of the dried salmon roe (eggs)

boiled with a little flour and grain to make a substantial and not unpleasant dish

Once again they arrived at a rapid -- 11:00 a.m.

one of the men refused to continue in the canoe although the water had fallen four and half feet from the first time they had passed this spot

Mackenzie decided to cross to the west side of the river where the current appeared less swift

Alexander Mackay and two hunters were put on shore to search for game

while the remainder of the expedition paddled along the rocks

until they could go no further without a tow line

most of the men wanted to re-cross the river and try the other side but Mackenzie sent two men with the line to climb the rocks, scramble down the other side, fasten the line to a roll of bark and send it back down the river to the others

although this plan was difficult and dangerous, it worked

and the canoe was attached to the towline and cordelled up the rapids

doing this several times allowed them overcome the rapids

although at two of the cascades they were forced to portage

they hoped to meet their reluctant guide and his friends but there was no sign of them

As they continued on their way the current was not swift but fallen trees impeded their progress camp was made in the company of a great number of annoying sand-flies -- 8:00 p.m.

JOSEPH WHIDBEY'S BOAT EXPEDITION RETURNS TO THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Master Joseph Whidbey and Midshipman Harry Humphrys in the *Discovery's* cutter and launch were seen approaching the ships -- July 2, 1793

When Whidbey reported on board the *Discovery* he informed Vancouver of his expedition's results after setting out from the vicinity of Princess Royal Island as they followed the coastal shore in a northerly direction

¹²² Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 193.

extremely bad weather had forced the boat expedition to rest for the night
on a rugged rocky shore where there was scarcely a horizontal space to sleep [June 23]
in the morning [June 24] as they prepared to break camp
smoke was seen coming from stones on the shore
an investigation at low tide showed this to be steam from running hot water
as some of the men attempted to wash their hands they found the water to be very hot
Whidbey left a note for Vancouver indicating the route the boat party and taken
pressing on to the northwest along the continental shore
Whidbey examined a small branch that terminated after two miles
retracing their journey they turned north again following the continental shore
lofty mountains rose nearly perpendicularly from the ocean
and were covered to the summits by pines and forest trees
several small bays and coves were filled with more driftwood than they had seen before
that night was very uncomfortable as the rising tide flooded their tents
while a heavy rain pounded on their heads
Whidbey named their location "Point Staniforth" (now Staniforth Point)
morning [June 25] after breakfast the boat expedition entered a channel running to the southeast
they passed mountains rising nearly vertically from the sea
that were heavily forested near the water but barren at the top
lunch was eaten on an island located at nearly mid-channel
continuing on Whidbey's boat expedition arrived at what appeared to be a small bay
here they stopped for the night after passing through desolate and inhospitable country
it was discovered that one of planks on the cutter had been caved-in and the boat was leaking
this was repaired by nailing a piece of lead over the damage making the boat watertight
daylight [June 26] showed Whidbey that he was not in a small bay as he had thought
but rather were within the entrance to a small river that wound itself between two mountains
hazardous rocks across the river barred further investigation so Whidbey turned up the arm
which terminated after about thirty miles
morning [June 27] Whidbey's boat party returned down the arm they had traced the day before
(Vancouver later applied the name "Gardner's Canal" to this body of water
in honor of Sir Alan Gardner -- today known as Gardner Canal)
this region was almost devoid of woods and plants and was nearly completely naked rocks
that rose into rugged mountains more lofty than they had seen before
ice and snow covered the towering summits and fed many waterfalls
Whidbey's boat expedition [on June 28] returned to where they had been [on June 25]
that afternoon an investigation of an inlet on the unexplored southern shore was undertaken
as usual this terminated -- this time at a point about nine miles from Point Staniforth
seven miles up what appeared to be the main channel the expedition was met by eight Indians

these were the first natives they had seen on this expedition
two fine salmon each weighing about seventy pounds were traded for small pieces of iron
morning [June 29] dawned with heavy rain but calm weather both continued all day
Whidbey resumed his investigation along the continental shore in the afternoon
after traveling nine miles north Whidbey named "Point Hopkins" (Hopkins Point)
further along, the main channel divided into two branches running northeast and northwest
as the northeast branch followed the coastline that was the route taken
after traveling eleven miles the same Indians who sold them the huge salmon were met
when the boat expedition stopped for lunch
they were joined by about sixty natives in ten canoes
Whidbey invited the chief to have dinner (lunch) which the chief considered a great honor
he drank some grog and was very fond of bread and sugar
this was shared with his villagers who responded to the taste with pleasure
otter pelts and animal skins were traded for copper, blue cloth and blankets
as usual these Indians were civil and honest
continuing on, camp was made that night in a small cove within a bay
when signs were given that the members of the boat expedition were going to rest
the Indians immediately retired to another cove a little distance away
Whidbey set out at 4:00 a.m. [June 30] up the main channel accompanied by the Indians
after traveling nine miles the channel terminated but unlike the others the land here was flat
with a small river running through it that was navigable by canoe
this valley between two mountains was three or four miles wide and covered with tall trees
here the boat party had a late breakfast where they found the remains of an Indian village
after breakfast the Indians accompanying the expedition turned up the river in their canoes
contrary winds slowed Whidbey's progress so that when they stopped for the night at 9:00 p.m.
only eleven miles had been made from the head of the inlet
Whidbey's expedition set out once again --3:00 a.m. [July 1] and traveled down the western shore
along the continent passing an island or group of islands
Whidbey continued down the arm and reached what he named "Point Ashton"
by this time provisions were nearly exhausted
there was no assurance the ships could be reached following their present route
Whidbey decided to quit the investigation of the continental shore and return to the ships
they had breakfast at Point Ashton after which they made good time journeying to the south
continuing south Joseph Whidbey named "Point Cumming" [July 2] at the tip of (Gribbell Island)
here Whidbey had left a note [June 24] thus proving he had circumnavigated an island
Vancouver named this "Hawksbury Island" in honor of British Lord Hawkesbury
Master Joseph Whidbey and Midshipman Harry Humphrys returned to *Discovery* and *Chatham*
they had surveyed "Ursula Channel," "Devastation Channel" and "Douglas Channel"

and “Kitimat Arm” and “Kildala Arm”

VANCOUVER AGAIN MOVES HIS SHIPS

Master Joseph Whidbey’s thorough investigation convinced Captain George Vancouver that only small channels remained to be examined in this vicinity
Vancouver decided to proceed to where Lieutenant James Johnstone had ended his investigation as Johnstone had identified a convenient anchorage for the ships there
Vancouver sailed the *Discovery* to the west accompanied by Lieutenant Peter Puget with the *Chatham* they entered the passage exited by Johnston and arrived at “Nepean’s Sound” -- July 2, 1793
when the favorable breeze died away it was replaced by a contrary wind
both ships had be towed by their smaller boats across (today’s Nepean Sound located west of Bank’s Island an north of the Estevan Group)
after traveling only about four-and-a-half miles both ships anchored for the night

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE FACES A DILEMMA

It rained hard that night with rain squalls continuing in the morning
Mackenzie’s expedition entered the river to continue their journey -- 4:00 a.m. July 3, 1793
Ten days had passed since Mackenzie began his return up Tacoutche Tesse
they came to the small river which met the description given to them by the Indians
as the beginning of the overland “Great Road” they were to follow to the sea coast
this discovery, however, caused Mackenzie to become perplexed
he wanted to strike overland to reach the ocean sooner than if they traveled by water
but if they did not follow the main river they might miss their guide
and attempting to strike out overland through the woods without an Indian guide
to introduce them to the natives they met would be dangerous
Mackenzie called a council of his men and asked for their advice -- July 3
he said he wanted to reach the ocean by traveling overland because it would probably save time
but he noted he would not attempt to do this unless they would agree
that if the overland journey proved not to be possible they would return with him
and continue the journey up the small river, whatever the distance, to the ocean
some of the men agreed to follow Mackenzie but others suggested it might be better to travel
up the Tacoutche Tesse a little further hoping to find their guide or acquire another
if that failed they could always return to this spot and begin their overland trek
Mackenzie agreed with this plan
several men were sent into the woods in different directions to scout
while Mackenzie went up the small river to scout
he soon found his canoe was too large for this stream
two of his men found a well-worn path leading up a hill which seemed to be the Great Road

MASTER JOSEPH WHIDBEY LEADS ANOTHER BOAT EXPEDITION

After a tedious night of difficulty keeping the ships anchored

Joseph Whidbey set out in the *Discovery's* large cutter with provisions for ten days accompanied by Midshipman Robert Barrie in the small cutter -- July 3, 1793

Vancouver had established a rendezvous point but he also gave Whidbey instructions that if Vancouver was not there when he arrived Whidbey was to continue to follow the coast

MACKENZIE FINDS HIS RELUCTANT GUIDE

Alexander Mackenzie and his men again set out up the Tacoutche Tesse -- 4:00 p.m. July 3, 1793 within the hour two canoes were seen coming down the river these Indians' beached their canoes Mackenzie and his men followed them

they discovered these were his frequently disappearing guide and six relatives

their guide was hardly recognizable to the members of the expedition

as he was dressed in a beautiful painted beaver robe

their guide immediately explained he had not deserted them

he always intended to keep his word

Mackenzie accepted this explanation and gave him a jacket, a pair of pants and a handkerchief as a reward for his honorable conduct

Their guide's relatives examined the explorers and informed them they were the people who lived in the sunken house and had fled in alarm when they first saw the whites

they said they were so terrified that they did not return to their homes for two days

and when they did return they found most of their property destroyed by a fire

these were, according to their account, a different people who were called "Nascud Denee"

their main village was some distance away on a small lake where they took fish

they said the road from their village was the shortest route to the sea

Mackenzie made camp with the Nascud Denee -- they were joined by the guide and his relatives

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE RELIES ON HIS RELUNCANT GUIDE

Mackenzie and his men, at the suggestion of their guide, set out early in the morning -- July 4, 1793

they proceeded up the Tacoutche Tesse to the village of his relatives

As they drew close to their destination Mackenzie wanted to hide some things

that he did not want to take to village but he had a great deal of trouble

putting some distance between his men and his guide's people

Alexander Mackay and one of the expedition's hunters were sent ahead with the guide

soon they were out of sight

Mackenzie and the remainder of his men hid a cache of about ninety pounds of pemmican,

two bags of wild rice and a gallon keg of gunpowder wrapped in oilcloth and dressed leather

in a second hiding place he placed two bags of Indian corn and a bale of trade articles
these also were securely wrapped

Mackenzie and his expedition then continued to where Mackay was waiting for them at a small river
here the explorers built a platform and left their canoe placed bottom-side up
covered with small trees and branches to protect it from the sun
next they built a ten-foot by five-foot hollow square out of fresh-cut logs
they placed everything they could not carry with them to the ocean in it
before they covered the whole thing with large pieces of timber

in the meantime, their guide and his relatives became impatient and set out without the explorers
it was only with some difficulty that another native was persuaded to remain and lead them

Mackenzie and his men entered the woods and followed a well-used path up a steep hill -- noon
they climbed for about a mile in extreme heat
they noted the surrounding country was rugged with ridges and full of woods
each voyageur had a burden of ninety pounds in addition to his gun and ammunition
these packs were composed of four-and-a-half ninety-pound bags of pemmican,
a case of scientific instruments, ninety-pound packs of trade goods for presents
and ninety pounds of ammunition

Mackenzie's hunters each carried forty-five pounds of pemmican
along with their gun and ammunition

Mackenzie and Mackay each carried twenty-two pounds of pemmican,
some rice and sugar weighting about seventy pounds, their guns and ammunition
in addition Mackenzie carried the tube of his telescope awkwardly across his shoulders

rain hit and continued until evening and even when it stopped the trees and bushes
continued to drip on the members of the expedition

Mackenzie and his men arrived at the Indian camp which was lit by three fires -- 6:30 p.m.
they had traveled west about twelve miles since leaving their canoe
their guide announced they would stay for the night
these Indians were poor and only a few small, dried fish could be acquired

At sunset an elderly Indian arrived at the camp from the west
he said many Indians were returning from trading on the coast
according to him they were six days away from the land of those who bartered their pelts
for iron and trade goods and from there it was not quite two more days to the sea

It was proposed by the Indians that two young men be sent ahead of the explorers
to notify the various tribes of their approach so as to not surprise the people
and thus assure a friendly reception

Mackenzie agreed and set about befriending the young men who would represent the expedition

Mackenzie and his men retired for the night exhausted with the day's efforts
as soon as they laid down the natives began to sing soft plaintive notes that were harmonious

without dancing, drums, or rattles -- this sounded somewhat like church music

VANCOUVER SEEKS BETTER ANCHORAGE

Discovery and *Chatham* sailed from Nepean's Sound with a moderate breeze-- 10:30 a.m. July 4, 1793
as they entered Nepean's Sound progress was so slow
that by evening they had only reached Point Cumming
when they turned the point the wind which should have become favorable shifted to unfavorable
both ships were forced stop and tie off to trees for the night
Chatham's First Mate Thomas Manby was sent to locate better anchorage
when Manby returned he reported good anchorage could be found on the east side
of Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano's Gil Island [1792]

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION STRIKES OUT OVERLAND

Indians had requested that Mackenzie not leave early in the morning so he waited until 5:00 a.m.
before he requested the two young men who were to proceed them to depart -- July 5, 1793
When their reluctant guide was called for he announced he would not accompany Mackenzie
as the young men who had been sent ahead could do his job
One of Mackenzie's men had lost his long throwing knife during the night
Mackenzie informed his reluctant guide of this event and asked that it be returned
he knew it was important to maintain his status with the local natives
especially as he would travel this way again on his return trip
Mackenzie and his guide agreed the guide would receive a knife for his service
all of the Indians' knives were gathered and the natives formed a circle with the guide in the center
when all was ready the guide began to sing and was joined by the others
after chanting for some time the guide produced the throwing knife
which was stuck in the ground in front of Mackenzie
Mackenzie's overland journey began just above the mouth of the (West Road [Blackwater] River)
northwest of (today's Quesnel, British Columbia) -- 7:00 a.m. July 5, 1793
members of the expedition carried about four hundred pounds of pemmican, scientific instruments,
some trade goods and their weapons and ammunition
every man was required to carry a pack besides his own gun and personal effects
suddenly their reluctant guide volunteered to lead them once again
but he refused to carry anything which lowed the morale of the entire company
he escorted them to a small lake where an encampment with three families was located
next they entered on a well-worn trail through open country sprinkled with Cyprus trees
During the morning the sky turned black -- rain started to about noon and continued for about an hour
using their oilskins to shield them, the expedition continued beside another lake and over a stream
Mackenzie took the lead to clear the branches of the rain water that hung on them

they crossed level country with only a slight amount of underbrush shielded by large fir trees
Mackenzie's guide informed him the countryside abounded in beaver
and many traps that were set for lynxes and martins could be seen along the road
as they advanced about a quarter of a mile from where the rain had stopped,
the ground was covered with hail -- hailstones increased to the size of musket balls
Threatening rain caused them to stop and build a shed beside a lake -- 5:00 p.m.
rain increased in violence the remainder of the day and camp was made for the night

VANCOUVER EXPERIENCES EQUIPMENT FAILURE

As the *Discovery* made ready to sail the bower (small bow anchor) was found to be broken
one arm had been lost when the anchor hit a rock

Vancouver developed serious doubts about the condition of all of his equipment
Discovery anchored along the east side of Gil Island -- 3:00 p.m. -- July 5, 1793

Chatham had difficulty anchoring in a location some distance from *Discovery*

Lieutenant Peter Puget moved his ship closer to the *Discovery* and anchored -- 5:00 p.m. July 5

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S MEN HIKE ACROSS THE INTERIOR PLATEAU

When Mackenzie's expedition was once again on the move -- 4:00 a.m. July 6, 1793

Mackenzie took the lead to clear the branches of raindrops

They reached a well-marked trail -- 8:30 a.m.

their reluctant guide told them the trail was very good and well used

he proposed to go ahead to inform the next tribe that the explorers were coming
Mackenzie was concerned he would run away again

so he suggest one of the guide's relatives stay with the main party

while two voyageurs would accompany the guides to the next village

this was ignored and the guide and his relatives were soon out of sight

Mackenzie took Cancre, one of his hunters, and his weapon with him

he instructed his men to follow as quickly as possible

if Mackenzie found local natives familiar with the region he would wait for them

Mackenzie followed his guide until he discovered him talking with a native family

that consisted of one man, two women and six children

they displayed no fear and the family man willingly talked

they carried an old blind woman in turns on their backs -- these people respected old age

he pointed to one of his wives who had come from the coast which he said was not far distant

she was decorated with various ornaments such as large blue beads,

pendants hung from her ears and encircled her neck

she wore bracelets of brass, copper and horn

her dress was a kind of tunic which was covered with a robe of matted bark

fringed at the bottom with sea otter pelt
she confirmed they were close to the sea
After Mackenzie's men had rejoined their leader and eaten lunch they were once again under way
two hours later they came upon two men and their families who displayed their weapons
Mackenzie's young emissaries immediately ran forward and spoke with the two men
who laid down their weapons and received the explorers as friends
soon a woman and a boy came from the river with water which was shared by everyone
Mackenzie's reluctant guide once again informed the expedition leader that he would go no further
but he would be replaced by the two men they had just met
there was little apparent concern when the two men left their families to join the expedition
one of these men could be understood by Mackenzie's interpreter
he had lived on the coast until a short time ago
he (incorrectly) reported they were approaching a river which was neither large nor long
this short river emptied into a bay at the ocean where a great wooden canoe
with white people had arrived about the time the leaves began to grow
Continuing their overland trek across an uneven, hilly, swampy region led by two new guides
Mackenzie's progress was slowed by a large number of fallen trees
heavy rain and hail fell -- about 5:00 p.m.
Mackenzie chose to camp because the men were tired
they had come about twenty-four miles that day

LIEUTENANT JAMES JOHNSTONE LEADS ANOTHER BOAT EXPEDITION

Discovery and *Chatham* remained anchored off Gil Island
anchors on both ships were replaced as a precaution
in the event they were needed to save the ships from destruction in a storm
Chatham's launch required some repairs which detained Lieutenant James Johnstone's departure
he did not set out with a week's supplies to examine the coastline toward the ocean
until -- 4:00 a.m. July 6, 1793
Johnstone was to stop at the place previously arranged for a rendezvous with Joseph Whidbey
Thick weather and unfavorable winds kept the *Discovery* and *Chatham* at anchor off Gil Island
Vancouver allowed his men to take advantage of the abundant berries
and interesting woods to investigate
Lieutenant Johnstone returned to the ships -- about 9:00 p.m. July 6
when he arrived at the rendezvous location he had found a note left by Whidbey
stating the supposed opening to the ocean in fact terminated
because Whidbey had pressed on exploring the coastline, Johnstone's efforts were unnecessary
but Johnstone had succeeded in finding a better anchorage for the two ships

MACKENZIE' EXPEDITION MEETS SEVERAL NATIVE FAMILIES

Camp was broken -- 5:00 a.m. July 7, 1793

Mackenzie's expedition proceeded across two mountains
covered with spruce, poplar, white-birch and other trees
they then descended into a level country where a good road, through woods of cypress was found
When Mackenzie's guides observed people coming toward them, they rushed forward to meet them
this party consisted of a man, two women and three children
one of the men stepped forward with a axe in his hand but soon was pacified
an elderly woman, probably the man's mother, was busily clearing a spot about five feet around
where her husband and a son were buried
she stopped to clear the area every time she passed by as a tribute of her affection

After a brief rest Mackenzie's expedition set out once again

seven men, as many women, and several children were seen -- about 3:00 p.m.

they showed great alarm which was overcome by Mackenzie
who hired one of the men to serve as a guide

later in the afternoon the river they had been following was crossed where it was only knee deep
and about a hundred yards wide

Mackenzie reached the home belonging to friend of his two new guides

here the members of the expedition were welcomed by the family

and they stopped for the night -- 7:30 p.m.

they had covered about twelve miles, part of it across a large knee-deep swamp
it had rained several times during the day

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE ENTERS THE SOUTHERN EDGE OF THE (RAINBOW RANGE)

Rain that had continued through the night greeted the explorers that morning

Mackenzie kept his men in camp until 7:00 a.m. -- July 8, 1793

when their guide brought them five small boiled fish served on a bark platter
after drying their clothes by the fire they set out -- 8:00 a.m.

they were cheerfully accompanied by their newest guide

Mackenzie learned from him that this lake, through which the river passed
extended to the foot of the mountain and he expected to meet nine men
from the tribe that lived north of the river

Mackenzie was surprised to discover several basins whose twelve-foot-high banks were steeply sloped
some held water and others were empty

here the ground they crossed was uneven and was covered with poplar trees

there was little underbrush but lots of grass could be seen underneath the trees
rivulets ran through the valleys, but no animals of any kind could be seen

Rain continued as they ascended the (Rainbow Mountains), a very colorful small extinct volcanic range

northeast of the coast range proper
some of the slopes were creamy white striped with red
Indians called these "the mountains that bleed"

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION CONTINUES TO CROSS THE (RAINBOW MOUNTAINS)

Heavy and continual rain fell most of the night -- thus time was required to dry their clothes
Mackenzie sent most of the members of his expedition
and his Indian guide forward -- 7:30 a.m. July 9, 1793
two of his men remained with him as he cached half a bag of pemmican buried under the fire pit
in anticipation of their return trip
soon after setting out Mackenzie and his companions overtook the expedition
Mackenzie and his men continued on their journey for sixteen miles
when they came across the largest river they had seen since leaving their canoe -- 2:00 p.m.
since it was full of fish Mackenzie guessed (today's Dean River)
must empty into a great river further downstream
(in fact, it empties into Dean Channel -- an arm of the Pacific Ocean)
Mackenzie eventually reached a place where a raft had been left by Indians to serve as a ferry
they killed a bald eagle and a grey eagle and three partridges
and saw two otters in the river along with several beaver lodges
when the rain stopped they caught several small fish and repaired the raft for use the next day

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER SHIFTS HIS POSITION ONCE AGAIN

When Lieutenant James Johnstone had returned to the ships he pointed out a location
that provided better anchorage which Vancouver now sought
both ships anchored off the northern point of Gil Island -- July 9, 1793
This new location offered the advantage of good fishing and an abundance of berries

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE IS ONCE AGAIN FORCED TO HIRE NEW GUIDES

Preparations on the newly found raft were completed early morning -- July 10, 1793
at this point the ferry crossing was about thirty yards wide
it required five trips to get their supplies and men across
Walking on for only a short distance a stream running from the west entered the river
beyond which three hundred yards of rapids had to be passed before the river expanded
into a lake along which the trail continued beneath beautiful hills covered with green
they reached the end of the lake -- 8:30 p.m.
there two houses occupied a most delightful scene
nearby were several graves well maintained by the natives
thirteen men occupied the houses but their language was difficult to understand

it seemed some of these people were of the opinion the ocean was four days away
while others seemed to say six or eight
however, all were in agreement they had visited the coast
Mackenzie, one of his men and his guide visited some huts about a mile away
when they arrived the natives served them boiled trout which would have been excellent
had it not tasted of the cooking utensil which was made of white spruce bark and dried grasses
these people appeared to live quite comfortably
Mackenzie's guides refused to travel any further so two of the local Indians were hired
but they could not leave their families until the following day
Mackenzie distributed a few trade goods to the wives and children of his new guides
Mackenzie and his men left the huts and passed by two buildings about fifteen feet in the air
that had been constructed among four trees and were intended to store provisions for the winter
They struck out along a less worn trail and stopped for the night -- 7:30 p.m.
Alexander Mackenzie and his men had covered about nineteen miles that day
but the night proved to be very uncomfortable due to flies and, later, a deluge of rain

MACKENZIE PASSES THROUGH COUNTRY LAID WASTE BY FIRE

Weather cleared, clothes were dried, their two guides arrived and the expedition set out -- July 11, 1793
fire had ravaged this region's plateau and fallen trees added to their frustration and pain
Mackenzie's new guides took cover under nearby trees when the rain returned -- noon
their journey was continued when the rain stopped two hours later
They came within sight of a lake where the land rose gradually toward mountains covered with snow
fresh tracks of people who had probably come to the river to fish surprised the guides
continual rain and cold forced them to stop for the night -- 5:00 p.m.
they had traveled more than fifteen miles that day
Mackenzie's two new guides complained about the long hours and hard work
they announced they intended to leave and were joined in their discontent by the two Indian hunters
Since the distance to the ocean seemed greater than anticipated rations were cut by one-third
this was as unwelcomed as it was necessary

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S TWO GUIDES CONTINUE IN THEIR RELUCTANCE

Travel for the expedition began under cloudy weather -- 5:30 a.m. July 12, 1793
when Mackenzie and his men reached the end of the lake they had been following
several footprints were seen that led to the water's edge
Mackenzie concluded that local natives had been fishing along the lake shore
As they continued on their way four smaller lakes were passed (in the vicinity of today's Tanya Lakes)
they crossed a small stream using a beaver dam and another larger lake stretched ahead
When they reached still another river their guide informed them

this was same river they had ferried across two day before (the Dean River)
and that it was navigable by canoe except for two rapids -- once of which had already been seen
here the river was twenty yards across and deep
one of the guides swam across to bring back a raft from the opposite side
it took two trips to ferry the men and supplies over except for two men who preferred to swim
Once again their guides threatened to leave
Mackenzie had to give them several articles, and promise them more, to induce them to stay
until other natives could be found to replace them
Yet another river had to be crossed -- 4:00 p.m.
Mackenzie and his guides were well ahead of the expedition so he sat down to wait for his men
when the expedition arrived the guides fled with so much speed
that Mackenzie could not catch them
one of Mackenzie's Indians, who was not carrying a pack, overtook them
when the guides were brought back they explained the only reason they left
was to prevent people they expected to find from shooting arrows at the whites
Mackenzie and his men were so tired that camp was made -- 7:00 p.m.
thirty-six miles had been covered although the land was barren and stony
and lay in ridges with cypress trees scattered over the terrain
several swamps had been passed but few deer tracks were seen
snow-covered mountains (of the Coastal Range) appeared directly in front of them
As the men gathered firewood a crossroad was found which confused Mackenzie
he suggested the ocean must be near and probably only a few Indians would pass by
before they met natives who traded at the ocean and would treat the explorers well
although Mackenzie himself had grave doubts, his men accepted this proposition

MACKENZIE MAKES CONTACT WITH THE LOCAL NATIVES

Dawn broke clear but cold and the expedition's coverings were inadequate to the need
after they warmed themselves by the campfire
they proceeded on their doubtful way -- 5:00 a.m. July 13, 1793
An hour's walk brought them to the edge of the forest where they saw a house
located beside a small river -- smoke indicated the house was inhabited
Mackenzie immediately set out for the home reluctantly followed by his men
he rushed so quickly that he was near the house before the women and children inside
became aware of his presence and issued the most horrible shrieks
as the only man who appeared to be with them escaped out of the back door
Mackenzie arrived at the house quickly enough
to prevent the women and children from following the man
these people were extremely distressed and believed their massacre was at hand

their fears raised similar reactions among Mackenzie's guides and interpreters who believed the man would return with his friends and seek vengeance
Three women and seven children occupied the house which apparently held three families calmly and quietly Mackenzie managed to reassure the natives
one of the women stated that from these mountains the sea could be seen to the west she then offered the explorers a couple of dried fish
after a little time the man who had fled was discovered in the woods and returned to the house assured by the women and the interpreters he would not be harmed, he agreed to serve as guide
Mackenzie told the woman he wanted to visit the fishing machines these people were using she readily consented to show him
when they reached the machines twenty small fish were seen
Mackenzie gave her a large knife for her consideration to him which she immediately treasured
An old Indian man talking loudly came down a hill toward the fishing machine at the same time the first man brought a young lad along with him to the fishing machine both of whom were the sons of the old man
the old man threw himself on the mercy of the members of the expedition and was rewarded with small gifts
when everyone arrived at the house the old man presented Mackenzie several half-dried fish these were considered as a peace-offering
Mackenzie's prospects for success had improved a great deal since this morning

MACKENZIE ATTEMPTS TO LEARN OF THE NATIVES' BURIAL CUSTOMS

On this morning bright sky and an east wind greeted the explorers -- July 14, 1793
when the local natives visited their fishing machines a great number of small fish had been caught members of Mackenzie's expedition were offered as many as they could eat
Camp was not broken until 7:00 a.m.
they set out accompanied by the old Indian man and two of his sons
Mackenzie's men trudged along a lake five for miles then crossed a river and passed through a swamp before beginning a gradual ascent to the top of a hill where a large river could be seen to the southeast about three miles away
hills and valleys were crossed until a range of mountains covered with snow could be seen according to their guide these (Coastal) mountains dropped directly into the ocean
As they continued their overland trek they came to another house about the same size and construction as the one inhabited by their new guide except this one was better constructed and beautifully finished
timbers were squared on two sides and the bark removed from the other two its ridge pole was shaped the same way and extended about eight or ten feet beyond the gable end of the house and supported a shed over the door

ends of the ridge pole were carved in the form of a snake's head
hieroglyphics and figures painted with red earth decorated the interior of the building
its inhabitants had left only a short time before and several bags and bundles remained
these were not disturbed by the explorers
near the house were two tombs surrounded neatly with boards and covered with bark
beside them several painted poles had been erected -- one of which was squared
from each pole were suspended several rolls or parcels of bark
their guide tried to explain what they were seeing but he was difficult to understand
apparently it was the practice of these people to burn the bodies of their dead
except for the larger bones which were rolled up in bark and suspended from the poles
or, perhaps, they actually buried their dead and when another family member died
the remains of the last person to be interred was taken from the grave and burned
so that members of the family were successively buried and burned
to make room for each corpse
this one tomb proved sufficient for the family through succeeding generations
no house in this region was without a tomb

Alexander Mackenzie and his men had traveled ten miles that morning
they continued along the lake and crossed a river flowing out of it
they found a weir (barrier) in the river where Indians could place a fishing machine
many of these of various sized were laying along the river bank
They came to a well-marked trail which led to a small lake with a river running out
their guides expected to see other natives at any time
they rafted across the river -- 9:00 p.m.

Mackenzie's exhausted men made camp -- they had traveled more than thirty-two miles that day

MASTER JOSEPH WHIDBEY REACHES THE SHIPS NOW OFF GIL ISLAND

Discovery's large cutter returned to the ships carrying Master Joseph Whidbey
accompanied by Midshipman Robert Barrie in the small cutter -- 7:00 a.m. July 14, 1793
they had investigated the continental shore as far as (Chatham's Sound)
(named by Vancouver [1793] for John Pitt, 2nd Earl of Chatham)
lofty mountains covered with snow stood on the mainland
while groups of small islands were divided by two channels that led to the Pacific Ocean
from Whidbey's report Vancouver named "Point Lambert" after a navy commissioner,
"Port Essington" to honor British Captain Essington,
"Cape Ibbetson," named after Admiral John Ibbetson,
"Pitt's Archipeligo" and "Pitts Island" after the British Prime Minister,
"Stephens Island" in honor of Admiral Sir Philip Stephens,
"Grenville's Canal" (today's Grenville Channel) after the Right Honorable William Grenville

(this is Caamano's Canal del Principe),
"Gilttoeyes (local Indian for 'long') Inlet"
in addition Whidbey and Barrie visited today's (Hunt Point), (Raspberry Islands),
(Point Pearce) and (Porcher Island)

VANCOUVER CHANGES LOCATIONS ONCE AGAIN

Master Joseph Whidbey's very complete report convinced Captain Vancouver to move once again
Vancouver ordered the equipment on Gil Island to be gathered and stowed on board the ships
he intended to proceed following the route investigated by Lieutenant James Johnstone
this channel had already been explored by Caamano and named Canal del Principe
(this is today's Principe Channel)

As preparations to sail were underway, three canoes came into sight

these were the first natives to be seen while the vicinity of Nepean Sound was being investigated
these Indians differed slightly in appearance than others who had visited before

Light winds held the *Discovery* and *Chatham* in place until noon -- July 14, 1793

as they set sail Captain Vancouver named their anchorage off the northern tip of Gil Island

"Fisherman's Cove" in celebration of the success enjoyed with their seine and hooks

Fisherman's Cove had proven to be a safe and convenient anchorage

two rivers had provided drinking water and the forest provided firewood for cooking

Discovery and *Chatham* sailed up Grenville's Channel

inclement weather followed them as they passed through Pitt's Archipelago

sailing became increasingly treacherous as they came within sight of the Queen Charlotte Islands
(today's Haida Guai)

gloomy weather and impeding winds hampered their progress

because the continental shore had been investigated

Vancouver turned toward the intricate and inhospitable maze of channels

in search of secure anchorage

MACKENZIE MEETS A GROUP OF INDIANS GOING TO THE PACIFIC OCEAN TO TRADE

Mackenzie and his men set out following a river -- 5:00 a.m. July 15, 1793

they crossed where it was only knee deep and about thirty yards wide with a rocky bottom

the old man who guided them expected to meet other Indians

so he went ahead by himself to give them warning

Mackenzie came upon his guide -- 11:00 a.m.

as he talked with five men who called themselves "Neguia Dinais" and part of their families

Mackenzie and his men were greeted with great kindness

as the Indians examined the explorers in minute detail

Neguia Dinais said they were on their way to the sea and appreciated the explorers joining them

because women and children could not travel fast it would take three days to their destination
members of Mackenzie expedition were given some fish recently taken from a nearby lake
Mackenzie's new traveling companions were quite pleasant looking
these women tied their braided hair parted with great neatness from the division of the head
ending in large loose knots of hair tied over their ears
some of the women wore beads in their hair to a very pretty effect
these men were clothed in leather, their hair nicely combed
one man was at least six feet four inches tall and his manner was sociable
he was about twenty-eight years old and was treated with particular respect by other Indians
Neguia Dinais peoples' complexions were fairer than other natives
their eyes were not the usual deep brown but rather were grey and tinged with red
every man, woman and child carried a proportionate burden
consisting of beaver coat and parchment as well as the skins of otter, marten, bear and lynx
and dressed moose skins acquired from the Rocky Mountain Indians
After half an hour's rest the leader of the Indian party called out and his people moved on
as they traveled a winding trail over hills and through swampy valleys they moved south and west
Mackenzie's usual demanding pace was slowed by the Indians
who stopped to rest several times during the day
After crossing a deep, narrow river they stopped for the night -- 5:00 p.m.
even so about twenty miles had been made that day
Everyone sat down on a very pleasant green spot
no sooner were they seated than their guide and one of the Neguia Dinais began a game
each had a bundle of about fifty small sticks
these were neatly polished, the size of a quill and five inches long
some of these sticks had red lines around them
as many of these as one of the players might find convenient
were curiously rolled up in dry grass
his opponent guessed at the number of sticks and won or lost
the loser parted with his bow and arrows, and several articles
which Mackenzie had given him

MACKENZIE'S INDIAN TRAVELING COMPANIONS DECIDE TO TRAVEL ALONE

Alexander Mackenzie's Neguia Dinais traveling companions were in no hurry to begin the day's trek
Mackenzie explained his expedition was running low on supplies
and speed was important -- July 16, 1793
however, the natives assured him that after a night's sleep
they would arrive at a river where fish would be plentiful
although supplies were running low Mackenzie cached about twenty pounds of pemmican

for their return trip
When the Neguia Dinais stopped to rest Mackenzie was informed they had changed their minds they now intended to follow a slower, longer route beside a small river to the north that flowed from the nearby lake and would take them to the mouth of the (Dean River) some people from another tribe had been sent for as they wished to see the whites two of whom would accompany the explorers over the (Coastal Mountains)
Alexander Mackenzie again noted the shortage of supplies he and his expedition faced one of the Indians said he was preparing a kettle of fish roe (eggs) if the explorers would stay with them for the night he would give it to them
Four new people from tribes unknown to Mackenzie arrived as expected after a little discussion they promised to guide the expedition through a mountain pass
Mackenzie and his men set out south after a very friendly parting with the Neguia Dinais-- 4:00 p.m. guided by the four newly-arrived natives Mackenzie's expedition entered a forest soon they arrived at the banks of another river flowing from the (Coastal Mountains) this country became swampy and a number of trees had fallen in a recent fire which added to their difficulties as they began to climb into the mountains
Camp was made -- they had traveled fourteen miles that day -- 9:00 p.m. although they were in mountains covered with snow, the mosquitoes became a serious problem

MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN CROSS THE COAST MOUNTAINS

Before sunrise Mackenzie's four new guides were summoned -- July 17, 1793
they were to go in advance of the expedition to warn the local natives of the whites' presence
Mackenzie and his men descended into a beautiful valley watered by a small river -- 8:00 a.m. when they reached the end of the river they were following they saw a great number of groundhogs their whistles could be heard in every direction
Mackenzie's guides went in pursuit of these animals and soon returned to the expedition carrying a female and her little family almost grown to their full size they stripped off their skins and gave the carcasses to the explorers
Indians also pulled up a root which appeared like a bunch of white berries the size of a pea it was shaped like a fig while it was colored and tasted like a potato (this was camas root)
Mackenzie's expedition continued on and they began to ascend as they followed a creek when the explorers reached the summit they found themselves surrounded by snow this circumstance was caused by drifted snow in the pass rather than by the height of the spot as the surrounding mountains rose to much higher elevations
snow had become so compact that their feet hardly made an impression as they walked they observed the tracks of a herd of small deer which must have passed by a short time before and the guides and hunters went immediately in pursuit
Mackenzie's expedition reached nearly level ground

there was no snow but not a tree was to be seen either
grass was very short and the soil, a reddish clay, was intermixed with small stones
these hills, where they were not covered with green, appeared as if fire had passed over them
it began to hail, snow and rain, but no shelter could be found except the leeward side of a huge rock
wind rose to a gale and the weather was as distressing as any they had experienced
Mackenzie noted one stupendous mountain directly ahead that rose so high
its snow-clad summit was lost in the clouds (today's 8,390-foot Kalone Peak)
Hunters and Indians returned after being gone an hour carrying the carcass of a small reindeer doe
this was all they had killed although they had fired twelve shots at a large herd
their poor result was attributed to the weather
Mackenzie proposed to leave half of the carcass in the snow
but although they were exhausted the men preferred to carry it
they had been shivering with cold for so long that they were glad to renew the march
Scattered crowberry bushes which had not yet blossomed and willow shrubs were seen
ahead of them in the distance flowed a stream which their guides said was the one had been seeking
(this was today's Burnt Bridge Creek)
Indians informed them that it was not a great distance away
As they traveled downhill the members of the expedition gathered wood for a fire
when enough had been acquired to dress some of the venison they stopped for dinner
they enjoyed a heartier meal than they had done for many long days
Mackenzie took the time to shave his beard and change his linen
his example was followed by his men
Mackenzie and his men continued on and came to a large pond
on the bank they found a recently made tomb with a pole beside it
on which two figures of birds were painted
one of the guides recognized the tribe to which the deceased belonged
he very unceremoniously opened the bark and showed the bones which it contained
while another guide threw down the pole and took the feathers tied to it
he placed them in his own hair
Mackenzie assumed these funeral memorials belonged to a tribe hated by his four guides
Departing once again Mackenzie's expedition continued their route with some speed
they continued to descend out of the mountains until they came to the brink of a cliff
where the guides showed a river to the expedition with a village on its banks
This cliff was rather a series of cliffs covered with large hemlock, birch and other trees
their guides informed them the area abounded with animals
which sounded like mountain goats to Mackenzie
In about two hours they arrived at the bottom of the cliffs where there was a confluence of two rivers
they were both very rapid and Mackenzie's men crossed the (Talchako River)

(Burnt Bridge Creek) united with the (Talchako River) and formed a river about twelve yards wide
this was (today's Bella Coola River of British Columbia)
here the timber was very large and the hemlock trees were stripped of their bark to the top
Mackenzie concluded the natives tanned their leather with liquid made from hemlock bark
here also were the largest and loftiest cedar trees that Mackenzie had ever seen
now the climate had changed and the berries were quite ripe

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION ARRIVES AT "FRIENDLY VILLAGE"

As the sun was about to set on the western slopes of the mountains -- evening July 17, 1793
their four guides left the expedition to warn the next village of their arrival
they were to be followed as well as Mackenzie and his men could
because they were hemmed in on both sides by mountains Mackenzie could not go far wrong
his guides had marked the route for them by breaking branches as they passed
there were large quantities of driftwood lying twelve feet above the level of the river
showing the uncommon height and strength of current probably acquired with melting snow
it was not dark but it was impossible to see beyond twenty yards because of the thick forest
Members of the expedition demanded to stop for the night
but anxiety compelled Mackenzie to continue to follow the route marked by his guides
until they reached the edge of the woods
Mackenzie continued on more by feeling rather than seeing until he arrived at a house
soon small fires in small huts with people busily cooking their fish were discovered
this village was located where (today's Burnt Bridge Creek enters the Bella Coola River)
Mackenzie walked into one of the houses without the least ceremony and threw down his burden
he shook hands with some of the people near him and sat down
these Indians received him without the least appearance of surprise but soon made signs
that he should go to a large house which was built on upright posts
several feet above the ground
there a broad log with steps cut in it led to a scaffolding even with the floor
using this curious ladder Mackenzie entered the house at one end
Inside the house were three fires at equal distances apart in the middle of the building
Mackenzie was received by several people sitting on a very wide board
he shook hands with them and sat beside an old man who appeared to be the village chief
this was in fact the case as Mackenzie had seated himself beside "Soocomlick"
Mackenzie discovered one of his guides was seated at the place of honor next to the chief
in a short time Mackenzie's men arrived and placed themselves near Mackenzie
at this Soocomlick quickly rose and obtained roasted salmon from behind a four foot wide plank
this plank also served as a screen for the beds where the women and children slept
Soocomlick then directed a mat be placed in front of Mackenzie and Alexander Mackay

who was now seated beside the expedition leader
when this ceremony was performed Soocomlick ordered a salmon be brought for both of them
and one-and-a-half salmon was placed before each of the other members of the expedition
After eating Mackenzie had his men move outside to make a camp
Soocomlick delivered boards to them so they would not have to sleep on the ground
Not long after the men were seated around their campfire they received a large dish of salmon roe
that had been pounded fine and mixed with water so it looked like cream
some kind of seasoning gave this a bitter taste
another dish soon followed made up principally of salmon roe with a large portion of gooseberries
and an herb that appeared to be sorrel
after eating the men laid down to rest under the stars
Alexander Mackenzie had been so taken by these “Nuxalk” natives
that he named their community “Friendly Village” (today’s village of Bella Coola)

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION REMAINS IN “FRIENDLY VILLAGE”

Mackenzie awoke at 5:00 a.m. and discovered the natives had lit a fire and were sitting beside it
they brought Mackenzie gooseberries, huckleberries and raspberries, the best he had ever tasted,
to eat with dried salmon roe and roasted salmon -- July 18, 1793
Salmon was so abundant in the river that these Indians had a constant and plentiful supply
this was the only flesh they ate
with great labor they had built a weir (barrier) that blocked two-thirds of the river
it rose four feet above the present water level and nearly level with the top of the bank
it was constructed with great labor and considerable ingenuity
small tree branches were placed in the bed of the river in a slanting position
with the thick parts placed downward
over these was laid a bed of gravel on which were placed a stack of smaller trees
and so on alternately until the work was brought to its full height
fishing machines were placed above and below the weir
on either side of the weir there was a large frame built of timber
in which passages were left for the salmon leading directly to the fishing machines
salmon fell into the machine when they attempted to leap over the weir
also dip nets were successfully employed below the weir where the salmon gathered
These people were extremely superstitious regarding their salmon
when Mackenzie asked to visit their weir the Indians refused to allow him to go near
out of fear the fish would become upset and leave
failure to completely burn the bones of the fish in a campfire was offensive to salmon
it was possible they would not return to the river if they were ill-treated
an Indian’s dog swallowed part of a fish bone left at the campfire

the dog was beaten by his master until he disgorged it
when one of Mackenzie's men threw a bone into the river a young Indian dived after it
retrieved the bone, put it in the fire and then ceremonially washed his polluted hands
Mackenzie asked the chief for a canoe to carry them to the Pacific Ocean still some distance away
various excuses regarding why this was not possible were provided by the chief
at last Mackenzie understood the chief's concern was that they would carry venison in the canoe
fish would instantly smell the meat and abandon them so the people would starve
Mackenzie soon eased his apprehensions and asked what he must do with the remaining venison
he was told to give it to one of the strangers in the village whom he pointed out
he was from a different tribe that ate meat
Mackenzie now requested to be provided with uncooked salmon to take with him -- this was refused
but two large roasted salmon were provided out of fear the explorers would not roast the salmon
but rather would prepare them in a manner offensive to the fish
Soocomlick assured the explorers the river's current was very strong and would carry them
to the next village where they would be abundantly supplied
he asked Mackenzie to depart quickly before they mistakenly offended the salmon
Fifteen armed men who were friends and relations of the Nuxalk people arrived by land -- 8:00 a.m.
(during the night before they had been sent notice of the arrival of white people)
their language was completely unknown to the members of the expedition
they appeared to be peaceful people who never attacked their neighbors
men's clothing consisted of a single robe tied over the shoulders falling down behind to the heels
and a little below the knees in front with a deep fringe around the bottom
this was generally made of the inner bark of the cedar tree which they prepare as fine as thread
men unceremoniously took off the robe when they found it inconvenient
some of their garments were interwoven with strips of sea otter skin
which give them the appearance of a fur on one side
other clothing had strips of red and yellow threads fancifully introduced toward the edges
which, in Mackenzie's eyes, had a very agreeable effect
men wore their hair in braids smeared with oil and red earth
instead of a comb they carried a small stick that hung by a string from a lock of hair
this was used to scratch their head
women also wore a robe but they added a fringe in front about a foot wide and two feet long
when they sat down they tucked this fringe between their thighs
they wore their hair so short that it required little care or combing
both men and women had grey eyes with a tinge of red
they had high cheekbones which were more apparent in the women than the men
Mackenzie presented Soocomlick with several articles
he also distributed gifts among other natives who had been attentive to his men

one of the guides had been very helpful in acquiring a canoe for the expedition
he appeared also to have given the Nuxalk people a favorable impression of the explorers
Mackenzie was concerned he would leave without giving notice of his departure
and would not receive the presents that were prepared for him
this was, in fact, what happened

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN DEPART FROM FRIENDLY VILLAGE

Seven Nuxalk paddlers with two forty-five-foot native canoes
left Friendly Village -- 1:00 p.m. July 18, 1793
they travelled fast carrying the explorers and their baggage down the (Bella Coola) river
They reached a fishing weir in the river where the paddlers stopped
and the members of the expedition stepped ashore before the paddlers returned to the river
and shot over the weir without taking a drop of water
they then beached the canoe and reloaded the expedition to continue their voyage

Mackenzie was so impressed by the skill of the Indians he wrote: **“I had imagined that the Canadians who accompanied me were the most expert canoe-men in the world, but they are very inferior to these people, as they themselves acknowledge, in conducting those vessels.”**¹²³

Many canoes were passed along the river -- some carried people and others were beached
they continued at a very great rate of speed for about two-and-a-half hours
before Mackenzie was told they would have to land as a village was only a short distance away

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION REACHES THE “GREAT VILLAGE”

Mackenzie and his men took up their bundles and walked along a well-worn path away from the river
as the Friendly Village Indians ran ahead to announce their approach -- July 18, 1793
when the expedition reached a thicket of trees they heard loud and confused talking
from the inhabitants of the village
as they arrived almost within sight of the first house, the Friendly Village natives
accompanying Mackenzie indicated that he should take the lead and they would follow
noise and confusion of the local natives seemed to increase
they arrived within sight of the village and saw Indians running from house to house
some were armed with bows and arrows, others with spears and many with axes
this very unpleasant and unexpected reception was attributed to the explorers sudden arrival
and the very short notice that the villagers had been given
Mackenzie had no choice but to walk resolutely up to them showing no signs of apprehension
as he approached the houses this produced the desired effect
most of the people laid down their weapons and came forward to meet the explorer
however, Mackenzie was soon forced to stop as he was surrounded by natives

¹²³ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 251.

he shook hands with those nearest to him when an elderly man broke through the crowd
and took Mackenzie in his arms -- then another man, the village chief, came forward
and turned the elderly man away without the least ceremony
the chief himself hugged Mackenzie
next Mackenzie was hugged by a young man who, the chief explained, was his son
Mackenzie at first was rather surprised by these actions
but he soon discovered they were signs of regard and friendship
Indians formed a large crowd to get a look at the explorers
they pressed in so tightly that Mackenzie and his men could not move in any direction
an opening was finally made to allow another man to approach Mackenzie
he was the chief's eldest son
Mackenzie instantly stepped forward to meet this man and offered his hand
immediately the Indian untied the string of a very handsome robe of sea otter skin he was wearing
and placed it over Mackenzie's shoulders
this was the most flattering reception that could possibly be had
Mackenzie concluded the crowd had formed to give the man time to collect the robe
Next the chief made signs for Mackenzie to follow him as they traveled through a thicket of trees
several hundred yards distant they came to a house built on the ground which was larger in size
and constructed of better materials than any they had seen before -- it was the chief's residence
when they arrived at the house the chief directed mats be placed on the ground
where the explorers were designated to sit
some men of the village came to indulge their curiosity and were told to stay behind the whites
other mats were placed for the chief and his advisors who took their seats in front of the explorers
between the two groups very clean mats of beautiful workmanship were spread
these mats explained why the hemlock trees were stripped of their bark
in front of each member of the expedition a small roasted salmon was placed
Mackenzie and his men remained at dinner for upwards of three hours
this feast illustrated that here was a land of abundance and stability
Mackenzie realized he was among a people who had attained a high degree civilization
communication, however, was difficult and awkward as only sign language could be used
not one of the curious natives left during all that time except for a party of ten or twelve of men
whom the chief ordered to go and catch fish
which they did in great abundance with dip nets at the foot of their weir
after a time the chief ordered a lodge set up to protect the explorers from the staring crowd
this was to be used as a resting place for the night
Mackenzie presented "Young Chief" with a blanket in return for the beautiful sea otter robe
along with several other articles that appeared to be very gratifying to him
gifts were also presented to the old chief, among them was a pair of scissors

Mackenzie explained they were to trim his beard which was very long
this was immediately tried by the old chief
other gifts were distributed to those who had been considerate to the whites
Mackenzie asked for fresh salmon that he could prepare himself but this was not provided
even though in the river there were thousands of swimming fish strung on cords fastened to stakes
Mackenzie and his men were not even allowed to approach the spot
where fish were cleaned and prepared by the Indians
Mackenzie's iron kettle was taken from him as, it was explained, fish disliked the smell of iron
water tight wooden boxes were provided for their use

MACKENZIE TOURS THE GREAT VILLAGE

Mackenzie took a tour of the village, the largest he had seen -- July 18, 1793
this consisted of four elevated houses and seven others built on the ground
all were built of the same materials and on the same plan
they were constructed of cedar planks divided into apartments seven feet square
there were boards about three feet wide in the front which were stepped over to enter
seven- or eight-foot high walls rested on beams that stretched across the building
chests containing provisions, utensils and possessions were mounted on the walls
there were a considerable number of other buildings or sheds
which were used only as kitchens and as places for curing fish
roasted fish hung on 100-120-foot long poles that ran along the beams
these racks were on posts about twelve feet above the ground
drying sheds were about forty feet wide
in the center were three, four or five hearths to give warmth and dry the fish
boards and bark covered the whole building except for a few inches above of the ridge pole
where open spaces were left on each side to let in light and to emit smoke
Those natives from Friendly Village who had accompanied Mackenzie and his men
had given to these people a detailed account of everything they knew about the explorers
it was requested that Mackenzie show them his astronomical instruments which he did
these added to the explorer's status among the natives
Mackenzie saw several twenty foot by eight-foot rectangles made of thick cedar boards
they were joined together so neatly that they appeared at first to be one piece
they were painted with hieroglyphics and figures of different animals
with a degree of accuracy that was unexpected by the explorers
although Mackenzie could not discover their use he concluded they were for religious purposes
to conduct ceremonies that all of the Northwest tribes performed in the (spring) and (fall)
This thought was confirmed by a large building in the middle of the village
that sat on a plot of ground fifty feet by forty-five feet

at first glance the building looked like the half-finished frame of a house
this building was formed by four stout posts set perpendicularly in the ground
its corner posts were plain and supported a beam running the whole length of the building
three posts were placed along each side -- but of a larger size and eight or nine feet in height
two center posts placed at one end of the house were two-and-a-half feet in diameter
these were carved into human figures supporting a ridge pole twelve feet above the ground
on each of their heads
these figures represented two people with their hands on their knees
standing as if they supported the weight with pain and difficulty
two other center posts placed at opposite end also were two-and-a-half feet in diameter
these two carved human figures also supported a ridge pole twelve feet above the ground
one on each of their heads but they stood at ease with hands resting on their hips
posts, poles and figures were painted red and black
but the sculpture of these carvings was superior to the painting
within the perimeter of the building were the remains of several fires
Mackenzie named this settlement "Great Village"

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE VISITS WITH THE NATIVES OF THE GREAT VILLAGE

Early in the morning Mackenzie was visited by the village chief accompanied by a son -- July 19, 1793
the younger man complained of a pain in his chest

Mackenzie gave him a few drops of Turlington's Balsam (a patented cure-all medicine)
on a piece of sugar to relieve his pain

that he took it without the least hesitation surprised Mackenzie
after he had taken the medicine, the young man requested Mackenzie follow him to a shed
where several people were gathered round a sick man -- another of the chief's sons
he had a terrible ulcer in the small of his back in the foulest state that can be imagined
one of his knees was also ulcerated

he was reduced to a skeleton and appeared to be near the end of his life

Indians requested that Mackenzie touch him and the old chief urged that medicine be administered
it would have been reckless of Mackenzie to do more

than give a few drops of Turlington's Balsam

Mackenzie left but was soon called back by the loud weeping of the women

Mackenzie feared this outburst might be related to the treatment he had just provided

concerned, he reported: **"On my return I found the native physicians busy in practicing their skill and art on the patient. They blew on him, and then whistled; at times they pressed their extended fingers, with all their strength, on his stomach; they also put their forefingers doubled into his mouth, and spouted water from their own with great violence into his face. To support these operations, the wretched sufferer was held up in a sitting posture; and when they were concluded, he**

was laid down and covered with a new robe made of the skins of the lynx. I had observed that his belly and breast were covered with scars, and I understood that they were caused by a custom prevalent among them, of applying pieces of lighted touch-wood to their flesh, in order to relieve pain or demonstrate their courage. He was now placed on a broad plank, and carried by six men into the woods, where I was invited to accompany them. I could not conjecture what would be the end of this ceremony, particularly as I saw one man carry fire, another an axe, and a third dry wood. I was indeed, disposed to suspect that, as it was their custom to burn the dead, they intended to relieve the poor man from his pain, and perform the last sad duty of surviving affection. When they advance a short distance into the woods, they laid him upon a clear spot, and kindled a fire against his back, when the physician began to scarify the ulcer with a very blunt instrument, the cruel pain of which operation the patient bore with incredible resolution. The scene afflicted me, and I left it.”¹²⁴

When Mackenzie returned to his lodge he noticed that in front of the door to the chief's house were four heaps of salmon each of which consisted of between three hundred and four hundred fish sixteen women were employed in cleaning and preparing them
they first separated the head from the body and boiled the heads
they then cut the fish down the back on each side of the spine
leaving one third of the fish adhering to it -- then they removed the entrails
next the bone was roasted for immediate use
other parts were also roasted but with more attention to provide future provisions
while the fish were before the fire, troughs were placed under them to receive the oil
salmon roe was also carefully preserved and provided a favorite native food
Mackenzie took out his astrological instruments to discover their latitude
but the old chief requested that he not to do so
although Mackenzie did not know why this request was made he complied
Mackenzie had asked the chief several times for canoes to take his expedition to the ocean
little attention was paid to this request until noon
when he was told a canoe was equipped and ready for his voyage
in addition, the Young Chief would accompany them to the sea
Mackenzie learned the natives were apprehensive that the use of the scientific instruments
might frighten the salmon from that part of the river
either his cooperation had been appreciated, or his immediate departure was demanded
Mackenzie instructed the members of his expedition to place their bundles along the river bank
in the meantime he went to measure the large canoe offered for his use
using signs the chief indicated that about ten winters ago he had gone a considerable distance
toward the west with forty of his people
there he saw two large vessels full of white men who had received him kindly
(these were probably *Resolution* and *Discovery*)

¹²⁴ Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 261-262.

commanded by British Captain James Cook [1778])
Mackenzie noted the canoe offered to him was built of cedar
forty-five feet long, four feet wide and three-and-a-half feet deep
it was painted black and decorated with white figures of fish of different kinds on the gunwale
for and aft were inlaid with sea otter teeth
(which Captain Cook had confused with human teeth as they look somewhat similar)
Mackenzie's men and Young Chief, who would accompany them, got into the canoe
when it was discovered an axe was missing
Mackenzie informed the village chief they would not leave without it
after some turmoil and confusion among the Indians,
and no small amount of fear among the explorers, the axe was discovered and returned
Mackenzie's men were unhappy with the show made by their leader,
but he believed this was necessary to maintain his status (and safety) among the natives
during their return trip

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION IS WATERBORNE AGAIN

Mackenzie and his men renewed their journey to the Pacific Ocean in their forty-five-foot canoe
accompanied by Young Chief and four other Great Village natives -- 1:00 p.m. July 19, 1793
(Bella Coola) river was almost a continual rapids
in about an hour they arrived at two houses where they were obliged to go on shore
Mackenzie was informed by their companions that the owner of the houses was a person of importance
Mackenzie and his men were received in a very friendly manner
this homeowner of importance produced many European articles
among them were at least forty pounds of copper
anxious to again get underway, Mackenzie stayed for as short a time as possible
when they set out once again their host accompanied them
Soon a very large house partitioned into different apartments with doors on the side was reached
these natives received the explorers with great kindness
but instead of fish they were given a long, clean and well made trough full of berries
in addition to the usual variety there were some blackberries
that were larger than the huckleberry and with a richer flavor
there were also white berries that resembled the blackberry in everything but color
here the explorers saw a woman with two pieces of copper in her upper lip
as had been described by British Captain James Cook in his journal
Mackenzie offered presents, as usual, in return for their friendly reception and entertainment
When they continued on their travels, the (Bella Coola) river became more difficult
as it divided into numerous channels
Soon they reached another house of a common size where they were well received

but although these natives were hospitable they did not offer any refreshment
Mackenzie could not determine if this was from inclination or necessity
(in fact these Indians had been visited by Lieutenant James Johnstone [June 1])
these people were in a state of busy preparation
some of the women were beating and preparing the inner rind of cedar bark
which took on the appearance of flax
others were spinning with a rod and spindle
another was weaving a robe of the thread intermixed with stripes of sea otter pelt
on a frame that was placed against the side of the house
men were fishing on the river with dragnets between two canoes
these nets were staked to the river bottom by poles
salmon coming up the river were captured in the nets
there were no weirs in this part of the river because of the numerous channels
fishing machines were placed along the banks
but these people were not well supplied with fish

Inhabitants of the house accompanied Mackenzie's expedition down the (Bella Coola) river
in a large canoe of their own
they recommended Mackenzie leave his canoe because the water became increasingly difficult
and the expedition was approaching a very difficult rapids
they also informed Mackenzie the next village was only a short distance away
rather than leave their canoe, Mackenzie and his men disembarked
he instructed Young Chief and his companions to shoot the rapids
Mackenzie and his men walked downstream and re-entered the canoe
Traveling with great speed they reached a waterfall where Mackenzie's expedition left the canoe
they carried their baggage along a road through the woods for about a hundred yards
when they came to a village consisting of six very large houses
constructed on posts that rose twenty-five feet in the air
these houses were built much like other houses along the (Bella Coola) river
they contained only four men and their families as the other villagers
were in the small houses that had been passed higher up the river
in the houses were several chests or boxes that contained different articles
(Lieutenant James Johnstone of the Captain George Vancouver's expedition
had visited these people [June 1, 1793])

At this location Mackenzie noted, **"I could perceive, personally, the termination of the river and its discharge into an arm of the sea."**¹²⁵

in this singularly undramatic notation he chronicled the conclusion
of the first journey across North America

¹²⁵ Germaine Warkentin, editor *Canadian Exploration Literature*.

tide marks on the rocks proved this body of water was connected to the Pacific Ocean
they had reached North Benedict Arm after crossing 279 miles of wilderness in twelve days
(three weeks are usually allowed to make the crossing by hikers today)
Alexander Mackenzie decided to remain in this village for the night -- 6:30 p.m.
he and his men occupied an empty house
they used the last of their provisions as not one fish could be obtained from the natives
here the expedition lost their dog, "Our Dog" -- an incident that Mackenzie very much regretted

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE SETS OUT FOR THE PACIFIC OCEAN

Mackenzie and his men arose in the village at a very early hour -- July 20, 1793
he again requested Indians accompany him or that he be given a canoe to complete their journey
both requests were ignored by the local natives who believed seeing the ocean was enough
all of the local Indians refused to proceed with the exception of Young Chief
and one other native who consented to continue
Mackenzie obtained a larger canoe -- even though it was leaky they were glad to have it
they continued down the (Bella Coola) river -- 8:00 a.m.
guided by Young Chief from the Great Village
as they advance a large number of sea otters were seen
several shots were fired but without success as the animals quickly dived under water
small porpoises were also seen as were eagles, small gulls, cormorants and a few ducks
They entered North Bentinck Arm which led to Labouchere Channel
(on the northeast side of King Island) and entered Dean Channel
(which had previously been investigated by lieutenants James Johnstone
and Spelman Swaine of Captain George Vancouver's expedition [June 1])
(Mackenzie had unknowingly missed meeting George Vancouver by forty-nine days)
They landed in a small cove on the right side of the bay ten miles from North Bentinck Arm
no further progress could be made in their leaky canoe
because of the swell of the tide and the high wind facing them -- 2:00 p.m.
directly across the bay was another small bay in the mouth of which was an island
their guides displayed a desire to leave and in the evening Young Chief's companion did disappear
Alexander Mackay and a native pursued him and brought him back
but Mackenzie decided it was not necessary to retain either of their guides
especially as supplies were low
Mackenzie gave them a small portion of food, a silk handkerchief
and a pair of shoes which were necessary for the journey back to their village
Mackenzie told them to go and inform their friends
that the explorers would return to Great Village in three nights
When Mackenzie landed the tide was going out -- 4:15 p.m.

now the water was slack after falling eleven and a half feet in a short time with the return of the tide, high water was reached -- 10.00 p.m.

but the rising water had made it necessary to shift the baggage several times even so, some of their gear got wet
fresh water was in plentiful supply as streams ran down from the (Coastal Mountains)
Mackenzie wanted to get a sighting of the moon and stars, but the cloudy weather prevented this he was concerned that he would fail in this important task as their provisions were very low they had only twenty pounds of pemmican, fifteen pounds of rice and six pounds of flour to share among ten half-starved men, in a leaky canoe on a hostile coast
During the night Young Chief returned to the expedition carrying a large porcupine on his back he cut it open, disemboweled it, threw the entrails into the salt water and singed the skin because the cooking pot was not large enough for the animal, it was cut into pieces and boiled with the help of two of Mackenzie's men who were awake it was completely devoured

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER ENCOUNTERS ANOTHER BRITISH SHIP

Captain Vancouver's expedition experienced a violent storm which put the *Discovery* and *Chatham* at great risk -- July 20, 1793
they were saved only by the timely arrival of a whaleboat sent from the British ship *Butterworth* sailed by William Brown out of London
Captain Brown informed Vancouver his fleet of three ships was safely anchored off the north coast of Stephens Island
Captain Vancouver immediately set out to follow the whaleboat to the *Butterworth's* anchorage accompanied by Peter Puget on the *Chatham*
when Vancouver's ships reached the *Butterworth* he discovered the *Prince Lee Boo* and *Jackall* at anchor there -- all belonged to the same business concern as the *Butterworth*
William Brown, who commanded the three-ship expedition, saluted his fellow British sailors with seven guns and Vancouver returned the honor
Vancouver learned from Captain Brown that *Butterworth* had run on a rock and damaged her rudder while repairs were being made an investigation of the region was undertaken
Vancouver also learned from Captain Brown that a "large opening" to the north (Clarence Strait) had been explored

MACKENZIE ENCOUNTERS HOSTILE LOCAL NATIVES

It was low water when the men awoke -- 4:40 a.m. July 21, 1793
the tide had fallen fifteen feet from the high-water mark of the night before
Alexander Mackay collected a quantity of small mussels which were boiled
Mackenzie's voyageurs did not partake as they were completely unacquainted with shell life
Young Chief was again missing and it was assumed he had once again fled

but as preparations were being undertaken to depart he fortunately made his appearance
he walked out of woods where he had gone to sleep after his feast of the night before
Mackenzie and his men were again on the water -- 6:00 a.m.
they cleared the small bay which Mackenzie named "Porcupine Cove"
they traveled west-southwest for seven miles, entered a channel for about two-and-a-half miles
and could see further ahead for another ten or twelve miles
they saw great numbers of animals they thought were sea otters
but as they drew closer they could be seen to be seals
Mackenzie looked for a place to take a sighting
as they traveled along Captain George Vancouver's North Bentinck Arm
when they reached Vancouver's Point Menzies
Mackenzie took a reading and noted his location as 52° 24' 48" north latitude
he was east of Vancouver's King Island
Three canoes were met carrying fifteen "Heiltsuk" Indian men
they carried their possessions as if proceeding to a new home or returning to a former one
these people showed no mistrust of fear and began talking with Young Chief
Heiltsuk people spoke the language of Young Chief but with a different accent
Heiltsuks examined everything in the expedition's canoe with an air of apathy and contempt
one of them in particular made Mackenzie understand by his insolence that a large canoe
had lately been in this bay with white people and that one them, "Macubah" (Vancouver),
had shot at him and his friends, and that "Bensins" had struck him on the back
with the flat part of his sword (Bensins was an attempt at Archibald Menzies' name)
he also produced several European articles which he could not have owned for very long
because of his conduct and appearance Alexander Mackenzie wanted to be rid of him
when the explorers prepared to leave, these Indians turned their canoe around to follow
and persuaded Young Chief to join them
Mackenzie continued for six miles traveling beside what Vancouver had named King Island
they met a canoe with two boys in it
they were sent away to bring their people to visit the expedition
now the troublesome man forced himself into Mackenzie's canoe
he pointed out a narrow channel that led to his village and requested Mackenzie steer toward it
since it was probable that Europeans had been there Mackenzie complied
this man became very irritating and demanded to see everything the explorers had
particularly the scientific instruments which he had learned about from Young Chief
he asked for Mackenzie's hat, a handkerchief and everything else he saw
at the same time he frequently repeated that he had been shot at by white men
after some distance, the channel opened and the aggressive native used signs
to make them understand that Macubah came there with his large canoe

many sheds or the remains of old buildings were seen on the shore
When they landed the ruins of the Heiltsuk village were apparent as it was overgrown with weeds
in the center of the houses there was a temple like those seen in other coastal villages
soon ten canoes followed Mackenzie -- each carrying three to six men
they told Mackenzie they were expected at their village where they would see many Indians
it appeared some hostile activity had been prepared -- Mackenzie warned his men
that if any violence occurred they were to defend themselves to the last man
As soon as they landed Mackenzie took possession of a large rock
at the mouth of (Elcho Harbor) across Dean Channel from King Island
there was not enough room for more than a dozen more people -- it was easily defended
they were surrounded by ten canoes loaded with natives who appeared to be restless
those who had been in the first three Heiltsuk canoes did all they could to generate trouble
after their efforts failed they went away taking Young Chief with them about sunset
however, a hat, handkerchief and several other things also went with them
remaining members of the village requested the expedition accompany them to their homes
but, seeing that Mackenzie had no intention of doing this they left about sunset
Another canoe soon arrived with seven handsome men who wanted to trade
they brought a box that contained a beautiful white goat skin and a very fine sea otter pelt
their goat skin was so bulky that Mackenzie made no offer to purchase it
for the sea otter they demanded Mackenzie's short sword which could not be spared
they refused to take a yard and a half of broad cloth with some other articles for the skin
when they turned down the offer for the sea otter they shook their heads and said, "No, no."
this proved to Mackenzie they had been exposed to European traders
these local natives also told Mackenzie that Macubah had been there
he had left his ship behind a point of land in the channel southwest of where they were
he had come to their village in boats which these people demonstrated
by imitating the motions of rowing
Another canoe arrived and carried a seal that Mackenzie wanted to buy but they would not part with it
they also carried fish about eighteen inches long and shaped like a trout with strong sharp teeth
When the local natives left, Mackenzie made a fire to warm the members of the expedition
however, there was little to be had for supper
what had been their allowance for the day was barely be enough for a single meal
That night was clear and moonlit -- Mackenzie established two-man watches and fell asleep

VANCOUVER SAILS AWAY FROM THE SAFE HARBOR AT STEPHENS ISLAND

Although the weather improved a thick haze kept the *Discovery* and *Chatham* at anchor
until it was possible to get a clear view of their surroundings -- early afternoon July 21, 1793
both ships left the *Butterworth* and *Jackall* and entered a passage

that Vancouver named "Brown's Passage" in honor of *Butterworth's* Captain William Brown
Discovery and *Chatham* were guided through the difficult waters by the *Prince Lee Boo*
Vancouver continued on until he reached an island (off today's Prince Rupert, British Columbia)
that he named "Dundas's Island (Dundas Island) in honor of the Right Honorable Henry Dundas
to the west of this island the ocean could be seen through a spacious channel
Vancouver entered the channel at a point he named "Point Maskelyne" (Maskelyne Point)
to honor the Great Britain's astronomer royal Reverend Doctor Nevil Maskelyne
here Vancouver anchored for the night

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION IS THREATENED BY LOCAL NATIVES

Mackenzie's expedition had not been bothered during the night
morning dawned clear and pleasant -- July 22, 1793
One single Indian came with about half a pound of boiled seal's flesh and the head of a small salmon
for which he asked a handkerchief -- he accepted a few beads
because this man came alone Mackenzie concluded there was no general plan of attack
but his opinion was not universally accepted by the members of his expedition
Mackenzie took five latitude readings -- 8:00 a.m.
two canoes arrived from the vicinity of the Heiltsuk village with several men and Young Chief
they brought a few very small sea otter skins with some pieces of raw seal's flesh
although the skins were of no value, hunger forced some of Mackenzie's men
to pay an extravagant price for the seal meat
Alexander Mackay lit a bit of touch-wood with a burning glass in the cover of his tobacco box,
this so surprised the natives that they exchanged the best of their otter skins for it
Young Chief was very anxious to persuade Mackenzie to depart
he said these natives were as numerous as mosquitoes and of a very mean character
Mackenzie's men were in a great rush to get away, but the leader was determined not to leave
until he was absolutely compelled to do so
While he was taking another latitude sighting two canoes of a larger size and well-manned appeared
they seemed to be the first of others who were coming to cooperate with the Heiltsuk people
as a result of the message that had been delivered the day before by the two boys
Young Chief, who understood them, demanded Mackenzie leave immediately as these natives
would soon come to shoot their arrows and hurl their spears at the expedition members
in explaining their danger his protest was so violent that he foamed at the mouth
Mackenzie's men were panic-stricken and asked if it was his intention to remain and be sacrificed
he replied he would not leave until he had taken more readings to determine his exact location
(they were at Vancouver's Cascade Canal)
however, Mackenzie did consent to putting everything in the canoe for a quick departure
Two canoes approached the shore and in a short time five men with their families landed very quietly

Mackenzie's scientific instruments were exposed
they examined them with admiration and astonishment
these Indians were from a different tribe -- Young Chief did not understand their language
Mackenzie wrote in his Journal: **"I now mixed up some vermilion (salmon roe) in melted (bear) grease, and inscribed, in large characters, on the South-East face of the rock on which we had slept last night: ALEXANDER MACKENZIE, FROM CANADA, BY LAND, THE TWENTY-SECOND OF JULY, ONE THOUSAND SEVEN HUNDRED AND NINETY-THREE"**.¹²⁶

(at the time the name Canada was an informal term for the former French territory
in what is now southern Quebec)

he was within three hours of paddling to open water but he never actually saw it
Because they were so close to the hostile Heiltsuk village Mackenzie consented to leave
they landed on a point of land in a small cove where they could not be readily seen by the natives
and could not be attacked except from the front

Five native men with their families followed Mackenzie's men in their two canoes
as these Indians prepared to leave Young Chief tried to leave with them

Mackenzie used force to bring him ashore because it was better to incur his anger
than for him to have an "accident" at the hands of hostile Indians
and suffer his father's anger against the expedition
or even for him to return to his father before the explorers did
and relate what stories he might

Indians in the canoes made signs for Young Chief to go over the hill
they would take him on board on the other side

Mackenzie's men refused to assist in holding Young Chief against his will
this forced Mackenzie to watch him by himself

In order to relieve tension, Mackenzie allowed a move eastward up the channel

they landed near the mouth of Cascade Inlet where he managed to get a reading from the stars
with great pleasure he recorded his location as longitude 128.2° west -- 10:00 p.m.

Mackenzie's and his men returned the way they had come and although the tide was running strong
they maintained speed by keeping close to the rocks

VANCOUVER LOOKS FOR A PLACE TO ANCHOR AND LAUNCH TWO BOAT EXPEDITIONS

Vancouver weighed anchor and set out from Maskelyne Point -- 7:00 a.m. July 22, 1793

he was now beyond the region investigated by Captain William Brown

Prince Lee Boo returned to join Captain Brown and his trading expedition

Captain Vancouver expressed regret that he did not have one or two smaller vessels
of the size of the *Price Lee Boo* which was capable of sailing or being rowed
as this would have made his investigation easier and safer

¹²⁶ Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyage to the Pacific Ocean in 1793*, P. 298-299.

MACKENZIE ONCE AGAIN GETS AN EARLY START BACK UP THE RIVER

Setting out from camp the expedition saw several fires to the south -- early July 23, 1793
when the sun rose smoke was clearly visible

They arrived at Porcupine Cove where they had camped two nights before -- 4:30 a.m.
the tide was out but the high-water mark caused by wind in the narrow channels

had elevated the water considerably above where they had previously built their campfire
because the tide was out it was necessary to land more than a mile below the Heiltsuk village
natives had driven stakes into the ground along the bay to trap seals and sea otters

some of the stakes had fishing machines attached

Mackenzie named this bay "Mackenzie's Outlet"

Young Chief instructed the expedition to beach their canoe above the reach of the tide
but while this was being done the native guide walked into the woods

Mackenzie followed the Indian along a difficult trail filled with brush

as he left the woods houses came into view -- Young Chief was about fifteen steps ahead
two Heiltsuk men came rushing out of the houses armed with daggers intent on killing the Indian

Mackenzie dropped his cloak and aimed his rifle -- they immediately dropped their daggers
which were tied to their wrists by a string

Mackenzie lowered his rifle and drew his short sword as several other men joined the attackers
among them Mackenzie recognized the man who had been so much trouble

who repeated the names Macubah and Bensins

this man had obviously motivated the others

as the attackers approached, one attempted to get behind Mackenzie and grab the explorer

there was something of a scuffle but Mackenzie, uninjured, manage to escape from his grasp
while he had certainly been vulnerable to being killed for

some reason his attacker did not take advantage -- nor did the others attack

One of Mackenzie's men came out of the woods and the attackers fled back to their houses

others of the expedition arrived one at a time but still the Heiltsuk warriors did not approach

had they attacked, all of the members of the expedition surely would have been killed

Mackenzie explained to his men what he had just encountered

and that he was determined to make the natives aware of the impropriety of their actions

he insisted that his hat and cloak which had been taken during the scuffle must be returned

along with all of the other articles that had been taken by the three men in the canoe

who were now in the village

Mackenzie told his men to ready their weapons and prepare to use them if it became necessary

Mackenzie approached the nearest house and made signs that someone must come outside

Young Chief appeared and told Mackenzie the men in the canoes had informed their friends

that Young Chief had been mistreated

and the explorers had killed four of their companions near (King Island)
Mackenzie explained to the Heiltsuk as best he could that this was a lie
he again insisted his belongings be returned and that a supply of fish must be provided
if these things were done, Mackenzie promised to depart
as hoped, the possessions were returned and a few dried fish were given to the explorers
but Young Chief was so terrified he refused to stay any longer
he left in his father's canoe telling the explorers to follow him when they could
Mackenzie was determined to take another observation which was done at noon
he named the location "Rascal's Village"
he told the natives he and his men wanted something more to eat and demanded dried fish
they were given two salmon
he next told the Heiltsuk he had no canoe or poles to use to push up the (Bella Coola) river
these were quickly provided because the natives were anxious for the explorers to leave
Mackenzie paid for everything he received
Mackenzie's men wanted to travel by land back to Friendly Village
Mackenzie chose to take the canoe borrowed from the Heiltsuk people
because one of his Indian hunters was so weak an overland journey was impossible for him
he had been ill for some time; and indeed, most of the men caught colds along the coast
Mackenzie and his men began their journey up the (Bella Coola) river with the canoe
they soon discovered the current was so strong that walking would have been easier
it took an hour to journey half a mile up the river
In the meantime, four Heiltsuk Indians, including the troublemaker, had gone up the river
using a canoe they had left above the rapids with four additional Heiltsuk Indians
Mackenzie feared they would cause the same problems in the upper village as they had below
also Young Chief had not left the expedition under favorable terms
and he would not give a positive report to his father and friends in the Great Village
Fearing what might await the expedition at the villages along the (Bella Coola) river
Mackenzie's men became determined to leave the river
and travel overland directly across the mountains
to make their point, they threw everything they had into the river except their blankets
Mackenzie sat patiently waiting for them to calm down and then explained their situation
they had two days' worth of food, snow would cover the mountains and they would die
he said it was foolish to be threatened by a danger that might not exist and if it did exist
they could deal with it
he also pointed to the inhumanity and injustice of leaving the sick Indian to suffer and die
finally, he noted he had accomplished his goal and was now focused only on their safety
One of the men who had been with Mackenzie for five years announced he would follow Mackenzie
but he would not reenter the canoe -- all but two of the men agreed they would not use the canoe

Mackenzie, Alexander Mackay with the two volunteers and the sick Indian hunter took to the canoe but the current was so strong it had to be slowly and tediously pulled up the river
Mackay's gun, which was in the canoe, was lost in the river at a time when it was badly needed
just as two canoes with sixteen or eighteen men was seen coming downstream
anxiety intensified until the natives rapidly passed the expedition
As they approached the first house on the river, Young Chief and six others natives were seen coming to meet them
this was a very good sign the troublemakers had not been believed
when the expedition landed, the explorers received a friendly reception, acquired some fish and continued their upriver journey
They reached the next house near dark and were met by the troublemaker and four of his companions nevertheless, they were well received by the inhabitants who gave them fish and berries
Mackenzie learned the troublemakers lived on the islands to the west and were traders selling cedar bark prepared to be woven into mats, copper, iron, fish roe and beads for these they received roasted salmon, hemlock bark cakes
and other cakes made of salmon roe, sorrel and bitter berries
after acquiring enough salmon for supper and the next day's meals the men went to sleep
Mackenzie and one of his men took the first watch until midnight

VANCOUVER FINDS A COVE IN WHICH TO ANCHOR

Discovery and *Chatham* anchored in a cove where three Indians were found fishing -- July 23, 1793
tents, the observatory, chronometers and instruments were carried ashore in the afternoon
Lieutenant James Johnstone took the *Discovery's* small cutter with Midshipman Robert Barrie and ten days' worth of supplies to survey the continental coast north of Point Maskelyne
Captain George Vancouver decided to lead the primary boat expedition himself
as he was intrigued by the reports of the region given to him by Captain William Brown and would have Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano's ([1792] charts to guide him
Discovery's yawl and launch were loaded with supplies for two weeks -- all they could carry
Vancouver, Lieutenant Peter Puget and Dr. Archibald Menzies took the yawl
Lieutenant Spelman Swaine sailed the launch as the expedition set out to explore the coastline
Master Joseph Whidbey was left in charge of the observatory beside the anchorage

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE CONTINUES UP THE (BELLA COOLA) RIVER

Alexander Mackenzie was the first awake in the morning -- July 24, 1793
he sent Alexander Mackay to see if their canoe remained where it had been left
Mackay returned to tell Mackenzie the troublemakers had loaded it with their articles and they were ready to depart
Mackenzie hurried to the canoe and grabbed it by the stern

he was ready to overturn it along with the three men inside and all of their merchandise
when one of the residents of the house told him this was their canoe
Mackenzie's guide, Young Chief, had taken his canoe
two other native traders nimbly leaped into the canoe and hurriedly pushed off
now Mackenzie had no guide and no canoe
but two local natives were easily convinced to guide the expedition with their own canoe
Because the house where they spent the night was located on an island
those five members of the expedition who had chosen to walk were ferried to the river bank
Mackenzie, Alexander Mackay, two of his voyageurs and the sick Indian also set out in the canoe
soon they met the chief of the village with six very large houses
he was fishing with considerable success using a seine between two canoes
Mackenzie was told that Young Chief had passed by on foot very early in the morning
the chief took Mackenzie and his four companions upriver in a canoe with great speed
Mackenzie was surprised by the natives' skill paddling against the strong current
Mackenzie was landed at the chief's house in the village
he immediately placed a prepared fish before each of the five men
Mackenzie's men who were walking appeared on the opposite bank and were ferried across
as soon as they had eaten, they set out once again on their route up the river
Mackenzie, Mackay, their two companions and the sick Indian followed in the canoe
accompanied by the chief and one of the natives as they served as guides
Mackenzie came to two houses not seen when they had passed traveling downriver -- 5:00 p.m.
because of the lateness of the hour Mackenzie's guides refused to go on
it became necessary to gather the walking party and lead them to camp
one of the men in the walking party had been attacked by a female bear with two cubs
another man came to his rescue and shot the bear but the meat was indifferent
they received enough fish and berries from the people living in the two houses
to completely satisfy their appetites
three kinds of gooseberries surpassed any they had tasted
in addition to salmon another fish was taken that weighed from fifteen to forty pounds
this fish was wider than the salmon with a grayish color and with a hunched back
its jaw and teeth were like those of a dog
larger and stronger than any fish Mackenzie had seen before
these teeth bent inward like the claws of a bird of prey
this fish, which the locals gave the name "Dilly" lived in shallow water
(today these are known as humpback or pink salmon)

VANCOUVER'S BOAT EXPEDITION BEGINS ITS INVESTIGATION

Captain Vancouver's yawl and Lieutenant Spelman Swaine's launch

set out -- 5:00 a.m. July 24, 1793

to investigate the region north and west of (today's Prince Rupert, British Columbia)
in thick, rainy, unfavorable weather which continued all morning
they advanced rapidly with a favorable southerly wind and a flood tide assisting their progress
the channel they investigated terminated in a low shoreline
breakfast was eaten about a mile short of the terminus

there they were visited by seven Indians who cautiously approached in a canoe
some of the natives landed a little distance away from the boat expedition
as the other continued their wary advance

distribution of some trinkets dispelled the natives obvious concerns

all of the Indians, now without hesitation, joined the British sailors
these people were well supplied with long spears, bows and arrows and iron daggers
the natives' chief indicated he wanted to join in the meal

he was given some bread and dried fish and a glass of brandy -- these were relished
the Indians expressed a desire for the sailors to visit their village

but this was away from the route selected by Vancouver so the offer was rejected
when it became apparent the British were not interested in trade, the Indians departed

Camp was made that night at the head of the arm they were tracing -- 8:00 p.m.

they had traced a relatively low shoreline whose interior rose suddenly into high mountains

VANCOVUER TAKES UP HIS INVESTIGATION

Members of Vancouver's boat expedition set out through thick, cloudy weather
with some rain showers -- 4:00 a.m. July 25, 1792

they traveled up what appeared to be the main arm of the inlet through a narrow passage
several channels were investigated but all ended -- usually in low swampy ground
small bays and coves sometimes filled with sunken rocks were seen

they halted at the deepest of these coves and made camp for the night among pine trees

at a site twenty feet above the waterline -- even so, their tents were flooded -- 2:00 a.m. July 26

Vancouver's boat party was forced to move into their boats for the remainder of the night

Vancouver explored to the end of "Portland Canal" (today's British Columbia-Alaska border)

he named this body of water in honor of William Cavendish-Bentinck, 3rd Duke of Portland

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION CONTINUES UP THE (BELLA COOLA) RIVER

Mackenzie awoke to fine weather before sunrise -- July 25, 1793

natives brought plenty of fish from their machines -- these were strung on a rope in the river
Mackenzie's expedition was taken to the south bank where the walking party departed

thick underbrush slowed their progress

Mackenzie and the remainder of his men were taken upriver

as the boating skilled of the Nuxalk people once again impressed the explorers
They reached two deserted houses located at the foot of a rapid in the (Bella Coola) river
here the native paddlers refused to attempt to travel further by water
a road was found but before setting out along that route Mackenzie satisfied his curiosity
by visiting the two houses that were built on posts
their doors were covered with fleas and immediately so were the men
the grass around the buildings also was full of fleas
Mackenzie and his men leaped into the water
Mackenzie's guides proposed the expedition follow them along the well-beaten path
but they traveled so fast the explorers could not keep up -- especially the sick Indian
soon the guides were out of sight which was a concern to Mackenzie who wanted them
to accompany his expedition to the next village to remove any misgivings
the villagers held as a result of Young Chief's report to his father
following the road Mackenzie viewed the finest cedar trees he had ever seen
several had trunks twenty-four feet around and were of proportionate height
alder trees also were of enormous size -- several were seven-and-a-half feet around
and rose forty feet in the air before any branches grew
hemlock, white birch, two species of spruce trees, willows and other trees were plentiful
remains of bones in certain spots indicated the natives occasionally burned their dead in this woods
Mackenzie was unsure what reception awaited them at the Great Village
every man's weapon was made ready and Mackay was given one of Mackenzie's pistols
one of their guides had said that if the sick man who had received Turlington's Balsam had died
there was a strong possibility Mackenzie would be held responsible

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE ARRIVES AT THE GREAT VILLAGE

Mackenzie and his men reached the river bank opposite the Great Village -- 1:00 p.m. July 25, 1793
everything appeared peaceful as several natives were fishing above and below the weir
they readily took the explorers across the river in their canoes to the village
people hurried to the river bank to greet the whites but none of chief's family could be seen
It was indicated that Mackenzie was to go to the chief's house
determined to go alone, Mackenzie gave his rifle to Mackay and left him and his men behind
he instructed them to remain alert
if they heard the sound of pistols it would be useless to attempt to save him
they were to get away as quickly as possible
Mackenzie struck out with his loaded pistols in his belt and his throwing knife in his hand
he passed through a woods that was intersected by various paths
he took the one leading to the back rather than the front of the chief's house -- and became lost
he saw the chief's wife who told him the chief was in the next house

since none of the village men could be seen Mackenzie sat near some of the women
who were eating salmon roe and berries
Mackenzie was about to join them when Alexander Mackay appeared
After some time the chief appeared and his son, Young Chief, followed him
it was obvious the old man was displeased -- he held Mackay's beaded tobacco box
at a distance of about three or four yards the chief threw it at Mackenzie
and walked away with great indignation
Mackenzie followed him walking past Young Chief taking him by the hand
Young Chief did not respond in a friendly manner
Mackenzie and Young Chief joined the village chief who explained
he was in a state of deep distress over the death of his son
he had cut off his hair and blackened his face in commemoration
he also indicated he had feared his son, Young Chief, had been killed by the whites
or they had all perished together in a native attack
When the chief had finished, Mackenzie led him and his son to where the explorers were waiting
when they arrived there was a great deal of rejoicing as Mackenzie had been gone so long
Mackenzie paid Young Chief for his company and his service in their journey to the sea
gifts of cloth and knives and a portion of all that was left was given the son and his father
these restored Mackenzie back into good stance with the Indians
he also traded for three robes and two sea otter pelts
Mackenzie explained the distance he must travel to return to Fort Chipewyan
and requested some fish for their journey
at this, the chief led the expedition members to his house where mats were arranged
fish was placed in front of each man
Mackenzie learned his lost dog had been howling outside the village ever since they left him
Alexander Mackay and a man were sent to find "Our Dog" but they returned without him
Mackenzie announced his intention to proceed on his journey
to this the chief responded with ten roasted salmon
Alexander Mackenzie was quite taken with these people
he went into great detail in his journal describing their housing and furnishings
their food and how it was acquired and their great skill with canoes
he discussed their form of government and attempted to understand their religion

MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN DEPART FROM THE GREAT VILLAGE

Mackenzie was accompanied by the chief, Young Chief and a number of people
as far as the last house in the village -- 3:30 p.m. July 25, 1793
Mackay was instructed to take the lead and Alexander Mackenzie brought up the rear
back in the village there was great deal of confusion and noise which caused Mackenzie alarm

on looking back he saw a large number of Indians running after them
some made signs for them to stop -- others rushed forward
Mackenzie soon saw they were attempting to tell the explorers they were on the wrong trail
he learned the confusion and noise were debates whether or not to stop them
As the expedition continued along a well-worn path made difficult by large rocks along the way
they saw "Our Dog" who appeared to have lost his level-headed disposition
he ran wildly back and forth and would not approach the expedition members
he had been reduced to a skeleton
Mackenzie occasionally dropped food as the expedition progressed
slowly, the dog regained his confidence
When night came the men were not completely sure of their safety
no fire was built and each man laid down off the path by a tree with clothes on and his gun ready
no watch was posted as each man was responsible for his own safety

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN REACH FRIENDLY VILLAGE

After a restless night, the expedition set out at first light -- July 26, 1793
they walked as quickly as possible until 8:00 a.m.
when they reached Friendly Village on Burnt Bridge Creek
in their absence five additional sheds had been built and filled with salmon
and more people were present
Mackenzie sent a messenger to inform the chief, Soocomlick, of their arrival
Soocomlick immediately returned to the village from the weir where he was fishing
he took the explorers to his house and entertained them
Mackenzie responded with gifts of an axe, two yards of blue cloth, knives
and various other articles
Nuxalk women of Friendly Village were occupied with preparing food for the winter
they boiled sorrel and different berries with salmon roe in a large kettle
this was ladled into frames about twelve inches square and one inch deep
its bottom consisted of a large leaf
this was set out in the sun until it became dried cakes
dried and roasted salmon were being packed into cedar chests

VANCOUVER RETURNS TO HIS SHIPS AND SETS OUT AGAIN

After spending a wet night Vancouver's boat expedition set out at daylight -- June 26, 1793
traveling back to where the *Discovery* and *Chatham* were located they arrived about noon
Resupplying, Captain George Vancouver took the yawl and launch once again
this time to investigate the western shore of the inlet to the south
an unpleasant rainy night was spent in a small cove about twelve miles from the ships

LIEUTENANT JAMES JOHNSTONE SETS OUT TO EXPLORE ALASKA'S INSIDE PASSAGE

(Johnstone's expedition set out once again with *Chatham's* launch [July 25, 1793])

he and his men took all day to reach Point Maskelyne)

At Point Maskelyne they began their survey of the continental shore in earnest -- morning July 26
their investigation of the vicinity showed this to be only a spacious bay

they rowed across the shallow bay until they arrived at the northeast end where the water
suddenly deepened from five feet to fifteen feet and then became shallow again
they turned along the northeast shore and entered a narrow opening about dark

this was found to be irregular in shape with a steep, rocky westerly shore
that becomes an island at high tide

here was a large Indian village that had fallen into decay

they were forced to spend the night in the boats as they could not reach shore

(During the next four days they entered a series of small arms of the inlet

Johnstone's progress was greatly slowed by strong winds

natives who had visited the ships now visited the boat late into the night
causing some alarm to the sailors)

MACKENZIE AND HIS NINE MEN SET OUT TO RETURN TO FORT FORK

Alexander Mackenzie's expedition left Friendly Village -- 11:00 a.m. July 26, 1793

each man was provided about twenty pounds of salmon for his journey

they also had a little flour and some pemmican

they were accompanied by every member of the village for about a mile

who then parted from the members of Mackenzie's expedition with signs of regret

Mackenzie's men exited the woods and saw a high mountain ahead that was necessary to climb

when they reached a river the sick Indian was still too weak to make the attempt

Mackenzie carried him on his back

They had to ascend the first mountain before night came on so they could look for water

Mackenzie left the sick Indian with his hunting companion and one of the voyageurs

they were to follow as the sick man's strength allowed

climbing the mountain was a great challenge and a place where water could be found
was not reached until 5:00 p.m.

Camp was made that night at the edge of the snow fields

Mackenzie's men were so tired they could hardly crawl about to get firewood

their anxiety regarding the sick Indian and his companions increased

until they came into camp about 7:00 p.m.

After a hearty supper of roasted salmon they sat about the fire and talked of their adventures,
delighting in the feeling of being almost out of danger and on their way home

Mackenzie was struck by the wonder of their situation high in the mountains
viewing the magnificent scenery all around them

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ENCOUNTERS UNFRIENDLY INDIANS

Morning's dawn provided fair weather -- July 27, 1793

Captain Vancouver's boat expedition was assisted by a rapid tidal flow

they soon reached a point that Vancouver named "Point Ramsden" (today's Ramsden Point)
where Portland Canal had been entered [on July 25]

this location held dangerous rocks that could only be seen at low tide

continuing up northwest the arm they were connected with another arm entering from the east
after breakfast they followed the new branch north-northeast toward the continental shore

"Fillmore Inlet," surveying "Fillmore Island" and "Nakat [fox in English] Inlet"

(in today's Alaskan panhandle) were each identified

Fifteen well-armed Tlingit natives in two canoes joined Vancouver's boat expedition

these people seemed quite confident and expressed a ferocity not seen in this region before

their faces were painted in a frightful manner

offers of the usual trinkets were rejected by the natives or were received only with disdain

Vancouver's yawl was well ahead of the launch

time was rapidly approaching to take a sighting to determine their exact latitude

when the launch arrived both boats made for the shore where they were joined by the natives

by the time the boat expedition was again under way the Indians' behavior was much more civil

As Vancouver's party continued on their survey the Indians again approached rapidly

they waved their pelts which was extraordinary

as all of the British goods had previously been rejected or accepted only with scorn

as they approached the natives began to sing -- Vancouver noticed they had set aside their weapons

but they began to conduct themselves in such a way that he became suspicious

signs were made that the Indians should depart and they reluctantly complied

Cloudy weather prevented any sighting of latitude and longitude being taken

Vancouver's boat expedition continued in a north-northeast course until they camped -- 8:00 p.m.

ALEXANDER MACKENZE MAKES GOOD PROGRESS ON HIS HOMEWARD JOURNEY

Mackenzie and his men continued their journey up the Tacoutche Tesse -- July 28, 1793

they arrived at the place where they had cached about twenty pounds of pemmican

and had camped with the Neguia Dinais Indians [on July 16]

it was here the Neguia Dinais decided to travel an alternative route to the Pacific Ocean

Mackenzie continued his eastward trek in pleasant weather -- no Indians were met for several days

VANCOUVER BECOMES DISCOURAGED WITH HIS INVESTIGATION

The next two days provided fair and pleasant weather -- July 28-29, 1793
they had reached 55° 25' north latitude -- noon July 29
An abundance of salmon, seals and sea otters were seen in all directions
a great deal of time and energy had in effect achieved little geographic result
Vancouver turned south back toward his ships

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY RETURNS TO BOSTON

Captain Robert Gray completed his final return trip to Boston -- July 29, 1793
Captain Gray's arrival in Boston was greeted with artillery and great cheering
Gray came off the boat arm in arm with the Hawaiian crewman Attoo
Attoo was a handsome young man, tall and straight
he wore the dress of his station: a helmet of gay feathers
and an exquisite cloak of yellow and scarlet
Captain Gray gave America its first claim to the Pacific Northwest
the claim of discovery of the Columbia River
soon America became second only to Great Britain in trade
sea otters help put the new republic on its feet financially
Columbia Rediviva's log book showed she had sailed 50,000 miles
though the trip enabled the owners to recoup their earlier losses,
they did not send their diligent captain back to the Pacific Northwest
Captain Robert Gray retired and sank into obscurity
he died in poverty in Charleston, South Carolina [1806]
his widow appealed to Congress to rescue her from poverty

LIEUTENANT JAMES JOHNSTONE RETURNS TO THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Lieutenant Johnstone and his men entered the only opening remaining unexamined
which ended after about six miles
Having completed their assigned task of investigating (today's Alexander Archipelago)
Lieutenant James Johnstone and his men returned to the ships -- 9:00 p.m. July 30, 1893
they had investigated (later named Work Channel, Khutzeymateen Inlet and Quottoon Inlet)
and investigated Alaska's Alexander Archipelago naming "Duke of York's Island"
(named after his Royal Highness and known today as the Duke of York Archipelago
this is in reality Wrangell, Zarembo, and Etolin islands near today's Wrangell, Alaska)
Johnstone and Barrie also sighted (Mitkof Island, the location of St. Petersburg, Alaska,
charted the (Kupreanof Islands) and explored to the head of Duncan Canal)
they surveyed (Work Channel) located northeast of (Tsimpsean Peninsula),
(Khutzeymateen Inlet) which lies between the mouths of the (Skeena) and (Nass) rivers
and (Quottoon Inlet) northeast of (Work Channel)

VANCOUVER IS AGAIN VISITED BY THE LESS THAT FRIENDLY INDIANS

Vancouver's boat expedition stopped for lunch -- July 31, 1793

three Tlingit natives in a canoe approached with little hesitation

they seemed pleased to receive a few trinkets that were offered to them

by using signs the Indians indicated the sailors should follow them up a little arm

to where their chief lived as he had an abundance of furs to barter

however, this was out of Vancouver's way and the offer was declined

Continuing their investigation the boat expedition entered a narrow channel that ended ahead

here camp was made for the night

soon they were visited by the Indians they had met while having lunch

this time a large canoe carried their chief

an exchange of gifts was made and the Indians retired to a small cove about half a mile away

with the promise of further trade in the morning

about an hour later a canoe was seen approaching the boat expedition's camp

this was turned around when a pistol was fired in the air showing the sailors were on guard

TRADE WITH THE TLINGIT NATIVES PROVES TO BE UNSUCCESSFUL

Daylight saw the arrival of the sixteen or eighteen Indians as had been arranged -- August 1, 1792

one of the natives was a woman with a large lip ornament who possessed great authority

her demands to her companions were given in a surly manner

but were immediately responded to

these Indians offered sea otter pelts and a freshly killed black bear fur

but the goods offered by the British were rejected as they had been previously [July 27]

only firearms and ammunition were of interest to the natives and these were not offered

After camp was broken the Indians followed the boat expedition about two miles

before they departed expressing their disappointment

Vancouver continued his investigation of the coastal shoreline following a narrow channel

to the north-northwest keeping the coastline to his starboard (right)

they reached a larger channel which terminated by a low but steep rocky shore

many little bays and coves abounded with rocks and islets

here sea otters and seals were found in far greater numbers than seen before

Vancouver took readings to determine their latitude and longitude

Lieutenant Spelman Swaine's launch continued their survey work

but was drawn into the current of a waterfall

only by great effort was disaster avoided

Vancouver's investigation continues in a south-westerly direction

following this channel they returned to that morning's campsite where they stopped for the night

they had circumnavigated an island about ten miles in circumference

VANCOUVER'S BOAT EXPEDITION CONTINUES FOLLOWING THE COASTLINE

Captain George Vancouver, Lieutenant Peter Puget, Dr. Archibald Menzies,
Lieutenant Spelman Swaine and their crews began again early in the morning -- August 2, 1793
following the continental shore they passed through a maze of inlets and rocks
and discovered the land to their north was one or more islands
Vancouver continued north as his boat expedition passed a deserted Indian village
they observed the land was of moderate height but their hope of reaching the Pacific Ocean
vanished as the arm they were following terminated in a small fresh water brook
Vancouver was mortified that he had been absent from his ships for a whole week,
had enjoyed the finest weather of the season, and had only surveyed forty miles
that night's camp suffered from a deluge of rain

BAD WEATHER IMPEDES THE PROGRESS OF THE BOAT EXPEDITION

Weather in the morning was gloomy and hazy -- August 3, 1793
wishing to achieve better results, Vancouver got an early start along the continental shore
which was dented with numerous small bays and innumerable rocks and islands
bad weather which became increasingly hazy and rainy forced the boat expedition to stop
Vancouver named their location "Cape Fox" after the Right Honorable Charles James Fox
Vancouver's men retired to an unsheltered cove where they stayed for several hours
starting again the sailors made only a mile and a half
before they were again forced to stop for the night in a large well-sheltered cove
that protected them from an excessively heavy rain and strong winds

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION OF THE COASTLINE

When the weather moderated the boat expedition once again set out -- 8:00 a.m. August 4, 1793
they were aided by a favorable wind although it continued to rain and was unpleasant
after seven miles they reached what Vancouver named "Foggy Point"
Vancouver's boat expedition continued northward
landings were not only difficult but was made dangerous by hidden rocks
as fog shortened their sight distance to fifty yards
ocean swells had disappeared making reaching the Pacific a less optimistic goal
time was lost exploring a narrow opening for about two miles
before a maze of rocks and shoals was entered and a large island was reached
there camp was made on a large island across from Foggy Point
strong winds and heavy rains remained through the night

EXPLORING THE NORTHERN COASTLINE BECAME TIRESOME AND TEDIOUS

Once again the weather abated as the boat expedition set out -- August 5, 1793

islets and rocks made reaching the shore very hazardous

however, the coastline could be established by only careful examination
of every channel, arm, inlet, creek or corner

this extraordinarily inhospitable region made this investigation extremely exasperating
in addition the weather continued unpleasant and rainy

From the shape of the shoreline Vancouver believed he was in Canal de Revillagigedo
as represented on Caamano's charts with Revillagigedo Island the port (left) side

the inlet they had visited for two days was Bocas de Quadra

"Port Stewart" (Alaska) across the channel from Revillagigedo Island was named
Vancouver named "Point Alava" in honor of the Spanish governor at Nootka Sound

on landing and conducting an investigation on foot, Vancouver gave the name "Slate Islets"

Vancouver left Canal de Revillagigedo to the east and again focused on the continental shore
after four miles "Point Sykes" was named and then "Point Nelson" was identified

honoring British Vice Admiral Horatio Lord Nelson

Vancouver's boat expedition continued their detailed investigation of the region
but difficult weather caused delays and progress remained slow

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE MEETS A NEW GROUP OF NENETS AND DENE INDIANS

Mackenzie's expedition reached a small stream that entered the Tacoutche Tesse -- August 4, 1793
they had camped in this same place a month before [July 4]

Across the water from them was a large number of Nascud Dene Indians

rainy weather had made Mackenzie guns and ammunition useless causing the expedition concern
but the rain also kept the Indians confined to their lodges for the most part

Mackenzie remained on his side of the creek but called to the natives

who turned out with weapons in hand and threatened destruction if their lodges were approached
these were strangers to Mackenzie but they said their relatives had told them of the whites

a messenger was sent to the relatives who were camped on an island some distance away
to inform the other Nascud Denees of the arrival of Mackenzie's expedition

MACKENZIE VISITS A CACHE HE HAD LEFT BEHIND ON HIS WESTWARD JOURNEY

When Mackenzie arrived at the cache of about twenty pounds of pemmican he had hidden [July 4]

he found everything to be in good order -- not even footprints could be seen -- August 5, 1793
after they pitched their tents Mackenzie rewarded himself and his men with a taste of rum

but found they had been without liquor for so long they had lost their taste of it

Nascud Denees Indians from across the creek visited

they were rewarded for not disturbing the caches while there remained in the area

MACKENZIE DELIVERS A FEARFUL THREAT TO THE NASCUD DENEE INDIANS

Mackenzie sent five men with the canoe to collect the goods buried in the caches
only one bale of goods which had gotten wet was damaged
none of the provisions, which were now desperately needed, had been damaged
Nascud Denee Indians wearing beaver robes arrived in large numbers from all directions
Mackenzie purchased fifteen of these
oddly, these people, who could have without fear taken everything that had been left behind,
now pilfered several items from the expedition
Mackenzie became aware of the pilfering and told the Indians the salmon they relied on for food
came from the ocean which belonged to white men who possessed the power
to starve the Indians and their children
if they did not return everything that had been stolen all of the salmon
would be stopped from coming upstream
greatly concerned by such a drastic and vile threat everything that could be found
was returned by the Indians

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION IS AGAIN UNDER WAY

Camp was broken and Mackenzie set out in good weather -- 9:00 a.m. August 7, 1793
but frequent showers persisted throughout the day raising the level of the water a foot and a half
Camp was made that night in the dark as falling rains swelled the Tacoutche Tesse
their clothes and baggage had to be moved twice before dawn

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION

Vancouver's boat expedition navigated a channel that split in three directions
he chose the eastern course and spent a rainy unpleasant day in its investigation
it was found to terminate in the usual manner
the surrounding area was composed of huge masses of steep, barren, rocky mountains
with steep cliffs that ran almost perpendicularly to the water's edge
there was no soil and only a few scattered dwarf trees could be seen at the lower levels
while the summits were covered in snow
Returning to the main inlet Vancouver named "Point Trollop"

VANCOUVER AGAIN MAKES CONTACT WITH THE INDIANS

After breaking camp at Point Trollop Vancouver's boat expedition
proceeded along the continental shore north about a mile -- August 9, 1793
Vancouver entered a very narrow channel
landing they climbed a remarkable rock that resembled a ship under sail

this provided an excellent view of the inlets
they stopped for breakfast at what Vancouver named "New Eddystone" Rock
here they were approached by a dozen natives in three small canoes
unarmed, they accepted the trinkets that were presented to them in good humor
as the Indians had nothing to trade they invited the British sailors to their village
but as this was not in the direction Vancouver required the offer was rejected
Vancouver investigated yet another insignificant branch that terminated in the usual manner
before returning to the main inlet where camp was made -- 10:00 p.m.

VANCOUVER SHIFTS HIS ATTENTION TO FINDING A LARGE CHANNEL

Vancouver's investigation of the continental shore was again taken up -- August 10, 1793
their supplies were low and they were 120 miles from their ships by the best route they knew
Vancouver was mortified that nowhere had been found a place
where the *Discovery* and *Chatman* could be anchored
to allow boat expeditions to be sent out and the region still needed to be explored
Vancouver decided to stop his exploration of the coastline to the east
rather he would search the main channel for a passage large enough for his ships
calm and pleasant weather made their investigation more pleasurable
they reached 55° 56' north latitude and 228° 54½' longitude
although it was too late at night to see clearly around them Vancouver detected a sea breeze
coming from a branch of water leading to the southwest
Vancouver regretted he had left unexamined the small branch seen in the morning
and the bay they had passed in the afternoon
if these had been investigated the continental shore would have been surveyed to this location
Vancouver named his location "Point Fitzgibbon"
(located at the north end of Revillagigedo Island)
Vancouver decided to examine a northeast running branch
if this terminated it was reasonable to assume the others would also

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE REACHES THE LONG RAPIDS

Mackenzie and his nine men were under way in clear weather once again -- 5:00 a.m. August 11, 1793
They came to the foot of the long rapids of the Tacoutche Tesse
here Mackenzie had been forced to construct Rocky Mountain Portage -- 10:00 a.m.
they entered the long rapids using poles to maneuver their canoe with little difficulty
they could hardly believe this was the same violent torrent
they had faced while traveling west [June 19]

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SETS OUT FROM POINT FITZGIBBON

Vancouver took his two boats up a northeast running branch -- morning August 11, 1793
to investigate Alexander Archipelago (first visited by Alexei Chirikov [1741])
After passing small bays they arrived at the terminus
small streams were strewn with dead or dying spawned-out salmon
this was a familiar scene repeated at nearly every run of fresh water
sailors harvested those in the best condition although they knew these were of poor quality
Vancouver named "Burrough's Bay" before turning north along the coastline
next Point Lees" and "Point Whaley" were named on Revillagigedo Island
Pressing on they reached a place on the southern shore where the water became ocean colored
and the channel they were following turned sharply south and widened -- 8:00 p.m.
camp was made for the night about an hour later

JUAN MARTINEZ Y ZAYAS REACHES SPAIN'S NUNEZ GAONA (NEAH BAY)

Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza sailing the *Activa*, was delayed from carrying out his newest assignment
by bad weather
he ran out of food in the vicinity of southern Oregon
and was forced to turn back to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)
Having heard nothing from his commander Lieutenant Francisco Eliza,
Lieutenant Juan Martines y Zayas continued to sail north
Zayas waited in the vicinity of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) aboard the *Mexicana* until August
Lieutenant Zayas arrived at the Spanish colony of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)
to find nothing there as the colony had been deserted
he waited for the arrival of Lieutenant Francisco Eliza but heard nothing
Zayas sailed south and entered the Rio San Rogue (Columbia River) -- August 11, 1793
he encountered shallow water and was surrounded by Indians
fearing treachery on the part of the natives, he sailed upriver only fourteen miles
before deciding it was unwise to continue
having inspected both sides of the river for that short distance
he concluded this was not a safe place for a Spanish colony
Zayas sailed the *Mexicana* for San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)
he investigated Grays Harbor managed to travel fifteen miles up the Columbia River
before running aground

VANCOUVER ENCOUNTERS HOSTILE TLINGIT INDIANS ON REVILLAGIGEDO ISLAND

Calm hazy weather greeted the members of Vancouver's boat expedition
as they set out from Port Whaley -- August 12, 1793
Two openings could be seen to the west but only with great difficulty through the haze
Vancouver selected the southernmost lead

several inlets and small bays were disregarded due to lack of time and supplies
Several canoes appeared and four large canoes turned toward the launch behind the yawl
singing by the Indians indicated they were peacefully inclined
another canoe carrying two men approached the yawl without hesitation
they accepted a few trifling presents in good humor
additional Indians were standing on shore and at the insistence of their friends set out in two canoes
they reached the boat expedition just as Vancouver went ashore to establish their location
these people were well satisfied with the presents they received and offered skins in return
Vancouver landed and left Lieutenant Peter Puget in charge of the yawl
quickly the natives became loud and rowdy shouting to their friends near the launch
when Vancouver returned Puget reported the Indians had become thievish
he suspected they might be troublesome
Vancouver took the yawl away from shore in an effort to gain some space from the Indians
but the Indians in four or five canoes grabbed on to the boats
an old woman they recognized from other encounters by her extended lower lip that held a piercing
grabbed the lead line of the yawl and tied it to her canoe
quickly a young man who appeared to be the chief seated himself in the bow of the yawl,
put on a mask that resembled a wolf's face
another Indian seized an opportunity to grab a musket out of the boat
Vancouver's situation in the yawl was critical and the launch was too distant to be of help
their only chance was to talk with the Indians until the launch could arrive
Vancouver picked up a musket and walked to the chief
surrounding Indians, about fifty, seized their daggers and spears
the chief left the boat and returned to his canoe
he made signs that if Vancouver laid down his musket
the Indians would lay down their weapons also -- this was done
at this point the woman with the unique features berated her companions to attack
Indians in a canoe near the stern of the yawl became very agitated by the encouragement
an old man seized hold a sailor's oar -- again the spears were brandished
Vancouver returned to the stern of the yawl -- he and Puget once again laid down their guns
this time the result was less friendly as several spears were thrust and passed close by
Indians grabbed at everything that was movable in the yawl
by this time the launch had arrived within pistol shot -- Vancouver order both boats to fire
Indians in the small canoes jumped into the water while those in the large canoes
moved to the far side of their canoe and thus raised the near side to provide protection
from the gunfire of the yawl although they were exposed to gunfire from the launch
all of the canoes scrambled toward the shore taking with them
three muskets and a fowling piece (a light gun that fires small shot) and other items

Vancouver planned to destroy their canoes in retaliation but he learned two men were badly wounded

Robert Betton was badly wounded by a spear to the chest a

George Bridgeman was less injured by a spear to the lower thigh

When the Indians reached the shore they climbed a cliff and harassed the launch by throwing stones

they also fired the muskets they had taken and other weapons of their own

Vancouver made a retreat for about a quarter of a mile where they stopped so Dr. Menzies

could attend the wounded

Vancouver named the scene of battle "Escape Point"

and a small opening about three miles away where the Indians first appeared "Traitor's Cove"

Vancouver at first suspected his men had provoked the attack in his absence

but his inquiry showed this to be not so

possession of muskets and other goods by these Indians showed they were familiar with trade

Vancouver suspected they had been ill-treated by other white explorers

Vancouver set a course across an extensive bay with several small openings

they reached "Betton's Island" named after one of their wounded shipmates

that night camp was made near a conspicuous point of land named "Point Higgins"

in honor of his Excellency Senior Higgins de Vallenar, the president of Chile

across Cape Caamano from Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano's Point Caamano

VANCOUVER USED CAAMANO'S CHARTS GIVEN TO HIM BY COMMANDANT QUADRA

Leaving Point Higgins they passed an opening that proved to be Caamano's Nostra Sen del Carmin

Vancouver paused to reflect on the valuable and kind service done him for by his friend

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega Quadra who gave him Caamano's charts

Vancouver was very confident a passage to his ships would be found in this direction

he had investigated the land north of what he named "Canal de Revillagigedo"

to honor the Viceroy of New Spain and the island to the north "Island of Revillagigedo"

which is separated from the mainland by "Behm's Canal"

Vancouver followed the main channel back although an alternative route

that appeared to be a more direct way to his ships

they stopped for the night at what was named "Point Davison" to compliment Alexander Davison

the owner of Vancouver supply ship *Daedalus*

here a disagreeable night was spent with strong gale winds accompanied by heavy rain

(at the entrance to today's Ketchikan, Alaska)

they had circumnavigated Revillagigedo Island

MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN REACH THE CONTINENTAL DIVIDE

Although the weather was cold, raw and rainy Mackenzie's expedition pressed on -- August 14, 1793

they reached the swampy portage between the Tacoutche Tesse and a small river -- 5:30 a.m.

as the temperature dropped the men could not keep warm even with all of their physical exertions
Mackenzie provided the last of their supply of rum
their canoe was so heavy and the portage across the Continental Divide so difficult
that the lives of the men were placed in danger

SPANISH COMMANDER CAAMANO'S CANAL DE REVILLAGIGEDO IS EXPLORED

Vancouver's boat expedition continued back toward the *Discovery* and *Chatham* --August 14, 1793
as attention was focused on Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano's Canal de Revillagigedo
"Point Percy" was named at the end of a long narrow cluster of low islands
"Cape Northumberland" was named in honor of an illustrious British family
Vancouver's expedition passed south through a cluster of dangerous rocks at this location
"Portland's Canal" (today's Portland Canal) was named
their supplies were so exhausted that each member of the expedition dined on half a pint of peas
even so the men continued to row or sail the boats all through the night -- August 15

MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION COMES TO THE PLACE WHERE THEIR CANOE HAD WRECKED

Members of Mackenzie's expedition continued their portage across the Continental Divide
cold weather chilled the men when they were forced to wade in the icy waters of a small stream
as they dragged their loaded canoe many obstacles in the stream slowed their progress
Camp was made about sunset where they had camped on their westward journey [June 13]
they were at the scene of the accident that had nearly taken their lives
although the feet and legs of the men were numb with cold they searched the stream
for the musket balls that had been lost-- without success

VANCOUVER'S BOAT EXPEDITION REACHES THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

After rowing and sailing all night Vancouver reached his ships -- 7:00 a.m. August 16, 1793
they had investigated the northern coastline for twenty-three days and covered 700 nautical miles
although they had not gone more sixty miles from where the ships were anchored
this was a result of the perplexing, tedious and laborious route they had traced
Vancouver ordered everything brought from the shore to the ships in preparation for sailing

MACKENZIE REACHES THE (PARSNIP RIVER)

Setting out from the stream that had nearly taken their lives, Mackenzie and his nine men
arrived at the 175-pace long carrying place that led to the second small lake [visited on June 12]
the lake was so full of driftwood that a great deal of time and energy was required
they reached the (Parsnip) river -- what Mackenzie considered the headwaters of the Peace River
Mackenzie took a reading and noted their location as 69.30° north latitude, 135° west longitude
Mackenzie considered transferring some live spawning salmon from westward flowing waters

across the Continental Divide and placing them in the Peace River
to discover if salmon could migrate to the Arctic Ocean -- August 16, 1793
however, he and his men were badly worn down from their many adversities, labor and cold
Mackenzie himself was suffering with swollen feet and ankles and walked with great pain
he decided to forego the experiment

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S EXPEDITION REACHES THE PEACE RIVER

Mackenzie and his men broke their lakeside camp -- 5:00 a.m. August 17, 1793
they began their 817-pace portage across a neck of land from the lake to the (Parsnip) river
Mackenzie's foot and ankle hurt so badly that he submitted to being carried
Mackenzie's expedition traveled down the (Parsnip) river and entered the Peace River -- 7:30 a.m.
they passed the place where they had met the Shuswap Indians [June 9]
here Sikannis had drawn a map of the route to the ocean

VANCOUVER AGAIN SHIFTS THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Captain Vancouver completed his nautical and astronomical observations
he named his location "Observatory Inlet" and the anchorage "Salmon Cove"
Vancouver's expedition sailed from Salmon Cove -- 6:00 a.m. August 17, 1793
they followed a route toward Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano's Cape Caamano
rather than the intricate channels Vancouver had followed on his most recent excursion
even so, bad weather and hazardous sailing impeded their progress

MACKENZIE MAKES RAPID PROGRESS

Once again under way at daylight -- August 18, 1793
Mackenzie's expedition rode the current of the Peace River which had diminished considerably
they landed where camp had been made [June 7] and sealed their canoe to make it watertight
they reached the place where Mackenzie had lost his journal in the river [June 4]
for the next several days Mackenzie kept detailed notes to replace those that had been lost
their progress was now very rapid -- they traveled in one day what had taken seven days before

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE TRAVELS QUICKLY DOWN THE PEACE RIVER

Mackenzie was required to start at a later time than usual as they had camped at the foot of a rapid
that required daylight to pass through safely -- August 20, 1793
Mackenzie continued his detailed note taking
Food became scarce for the members of the expedition
Mackenzie reduced the men's rations to make the available supplies last as long as possible
Alexander McKay and the two Indians were sent ahead to hunt
while the remainder of the expedition began working to repair the canoe

and to carry the baggage around Rocky Mountain Portage [first passed May 24]
McKay returned with buffalo meat about sunset greatly raising the morale of the men
Mackenzie's journey down the Peace River continued swiftly
they were careful to land at the head of each rapids and inspect it
however, the canoe being light, they passed over most places without difficulty

VANCOUVER'S EXPEDITION VISITS HAIDA GWAII (QUEEN CHARLOTTE ISLANDS)

After sailing less than forty miles from Observatory Inlet in two days,
Discovery and Chatham reached "Point Wales" which was named by Captain Vancouver
thus honoring a good friend -- August 20, 1793
Once again reaching Chatham's Sound during the night they sailed past Cape Fox and Dundas Island
reaching "Moira's Sound" and nearby "Wedge Island" -- August 20

MACKENZIE AND HIS EXPEDITION MEMBERS NEAR THE END OF THEIR STRENGTH

Alexander Mackenzie Alexander Mackay and his six voyageurs and two Indian hunters
once again set out -- dawn August 21, 1793
but fire had passed through the portage they had taken and finding their way was difficult
using all of their strength to continue on, they did not return to the river until 4:00 p.m.
Mackenzie's swollen feet and ankles were better but still hampered his efforts
traveling down the Peace River with their canoe seemed almost as trying as traveling up
Mackenzie called a halt for the day
their canoe required maintenance and new poles, both long and short, needed to be cut
these tasks kept them occupied until late into the night
Alexander Mackay was sent with the two Indian hunters to find game
arrangements were made for a rendezvous down the river

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM REACH CHOLOMONDELEY'S SOUND

Sailing on with light winds Vancouver entered "Cholmondeley's Sound"
on Alexei Chirikov's Prince of Wales Island -- August 21, 1793
Vancouver named "Cape Caamano" (Caamano Point) to commemorate the Spanish officer
whose charts he had been following
Calm weather gave a good opportunity for a party of local Indians to visit the ships
one of these men requested permission to board the *Discovery* and this was granted
he said his chief, whose name was Ononnifloy, was a very leader powerful
he lived up a nearby northwest running branch
he also said the northeast running branch was the home of very bad men
(this information had already been tragically confirmed by Vancouver)
not being more than a dozen miles from Escape Point kept the expedition alert

when Vancouver sailed up the northeast branch the Indians declined to remain with him

ALEXANDER MACKAY HAS GREAT SUCCESS WITH HIS HUNTING PARTY

Because of the weakened physical condition of his men and the nature of the task facing them Mackenzie got a start that was later than usual on this cold, clear morning -- August 22, 1793 His expedition spent their time traveling either by rapidly with the strong downriver current or by shooting the many rapids that filled this stretch of the Peace River featured frequently they would land their canoe and investigate to rapids before running them however, the lightly burdened canoe made the task, even at the portages, easier Mackenzie arrived at the rendezvous place and found Alexander Mackay had plenty of meat they had killed two elk only a few hundred yards away and had already roasted the venison after a hearty meal each man was given as much meat as he could carry When they once again took up their journey they arrived at the location where their canoe had been damaged by a tree stump [May 18] Arriving on the Great Plains they found animals grazing in every direction good hunting provided an opportunity for the men satisfy their appetites Mackenzie made note of the quantity that could be consumed by his men he reported that an elk was killed which weighed two hundred and fifty pounds this provided a very hearty dinner -- 1:00 p.m. supper later consisted of a kettle full of the elk flesh that was boiled and eaten and the kettle was replenished -- all that remained, the bones and various parts, were placed in the fire and roasted what remained was consumed the next morning by all ten people and their dog

VANCOUVER FINDS SAFE ANCHORAGE FOR THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Captain George Vancouver found small convenient bay to his liking -- August 22, 1793 which was located about four miles and across the channel from Traitor's Cove several small islands protected the *Discovery* and *Chatham* from the wind and excellent supply of fresh water was readily available moderately high banks covered with pine trees, berry bushes and shrubs added to the positive prospects offered by this location Two long boat excursions were prepared Master Joseph Whidbey would take the *Discovery's* large cutter accompanied by Lieutenant Baker in the launch with supplies for two weeks they would finish what was left unexplored by Vancouver Lieutenant James Johnstone with two cutters took ten days' worth of supplies to investigate the waters of Cape Caamano near Point Caamano to the northwest

VANCOUVER IS ONCE AGAIN VISIT BY THE FRIENDLY INDIANS

Both boat expeditions set out to begin their survey of remaining uncharted waters -- August 23, 1793
Captain Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget remained with the *Discovery* and *Chatham*
because no smoke or others signs of habitation were seen

Vancouver concluded the inhospitable Indians had departed for the season
friendly natives who previously had visited returned in the morning
their spokesman said his powerful chief, Ononnifloy, planned to visit in a day or two
but a gift of molasses and bread would assure the sailors' friendship
this was presented to the spokesman along with several other small gifts

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS NINE MEN ARRIVE AT FORT FORK

Mackenzie and his expedition rounded a point of land and saw Fort Fork -- August 24, 1793

Mackenzie reported, **"We threw out our flag and accompanied it with a general discharge of firearms, while the men were in such spirits, and made such an active use of their paddles, that we arrived before the two men whom we left here in the spring could recover their senses to answer us. Thus we landed at four in the afternoon at the place which we left on the 9th of May. Here my voyages of discovery terminate. Their toils and their dangers, their solitudes and sufferings have not been exaggerated in my descriptions. ... I received, however, the reward of my labors, for they were crowned with success."**¹²⁷

Their remarkable return journey from the Pacific Ocean took only thirty-three days

RESULT OF ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S SECOND EXPEDITION

Alexander Mackenzie was a man of extraordinary physical strength, determination and perseverance
his route to the Pacific Ocean and back proved too difficult for others to follow

but that did not diminish the value of his great 117-day expedition across the American wilds
Mackenzie was twenty-nine years old when he and his nine companions

his cousin Alexander McKay, Canadian voyageurs Joseph Landry, Charles Ducette,
Francois Beaulieux, Baptiste Bisson, Francois Courtois and Jacques Beauchamps
made their extraordinary overland journey to Bella Coola and Dean Channel

Landry and Ducette had accompanied Mackenzie on his [1789] adventure to the Arctic
but as he noted in his later book *First Man West*, Mackenzie considered his achievement
to be "at least in part a failure" (page 281)

because he had failed to find a useable commercial route

Twelve years later the discoveries he made on his "failed" journey played a key role
in President Thomas Jefferson's decision to send Lewis and Clark
on their two-year journey to the Pacific Ocean

¹²⁷ Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal*, P. 340.

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER REMAINS WITH THE ANCHORED SHIPS

Fair weather provided an opportunity to take several good readings of their location -- August 25, 1793
these agreed with the calculations Vancouver had taken during his boat expedition to this area
About midnight the crewmen were disturbed by party of singing native as they entered the harbor
it seemed a large number of people but when they arrived
they proved to be only seventeen natives in a single canoe
after paddling around the ships they landed not far away
there they sang until daybreak -- August 26
these visitors were highly decorated with their faces fancifully painted
their hair was powdered with the white down of sea birds
With great ceremony the Indians came alongside the ships
their chief, named Kanaut, requested permission to come on board which was immediately granted
he presented Vancouver a sea otter pelt and indicated they wished to trade
they proved to be good, honest, cheerful, friendly traders
pleasant and successful trade was conducted with the natives until they disposed of everything
they were inclined to part with and took a most friendly departure [August 28, 1793]

MASTER JOSEPH WHIDBEY'S BOAT EXPEDITION RETURNS TO THE SHIPS

Master Joseph Whidbey returned from tracing the continental shore -- August 28
they had circumnavigated an island named "Bell's Island" (today's Bell Island) by Vancouver
rainy unpleasant weather with adverse winds made progress slow [August 24]
Whidbey reached the first unexamined opening and entered [August 25]
what Vancouver named "Walker's (Walker) Cove" was named in honor of *Chatham's* surgeon
this inlet terminated in the usual manner
they returned to the main channel and continued on passing three small bays and coves
each of these was examined
breakfast was eaten at Point Fitzgibbon [August 26]
here some very cautious natives were seen -- one Indian man invited the sailors to come ashore
soon four canoes containing about ten natives appeared from a small cove
they sang and made speeches but not approach
when the boat expedition prepared to depart the Indians retired back to their cove
as the sailors continued their survey the canoes were seen to follow
now carrying fifteen to twenty natives
looking glasses and other trifles were attached to wood pieces and dropped in the water
these were carefully picked up by the Indians but they would not approach
Master Whidbey decided to continue with his survey work
he was convinced these were some of the hostile natives who had attacked the yawl
Whidbey entered the third opening left unexplored by Captain Vancouver [August 27]

here they met another small party of seven Indian men near a small miserable hut
they put on their war clothes and approached the boat
one carried a musket and another a pistol which they cocked
natives were armed with bows and carried many arrows
an old man appeared without any weapon and held the skin of a bird in one hand
he began a long speech and plucked feathers from the skin
stopping occasionally to blow the feathers into the air
Whidbey considered these to be friendly gestures
some spoons were thrown in the direction of the orator
Whidbey indicated they were hungry which had the desired effect
as the old man told the armed Indians to leave and some salmon was brought
Whidbey decided nothing more could be accomplished and once again began his survey
two additional openings were examined that day
rain and unpleasant weather had accompanied the boat expedition during this examination
which continued as they approached the last unexamined opening [August 28]
after they entered they found an extensive bay with numerous bays and an island were seen
when their investigation was completed they began their return to the ships

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM REMAIN AT ANCHOR

Vancouver took an interval of fair weather as an opportunity to make further celestial observations
About twenty-five Indians in three canoes visited the ships that afternoon -- August 30, 1793
these were strangers to the British and they appeared to be people of some consequence
Captain Vancouver presented them with gifts appropriate to their apparent rank
these were accepted with some indifference
as the natives paddled to the shore where they camped for the night

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ENCOUNTERS THE GREAT CHIEF

Both ships were again visited by Indians in three canoes -- morning August 31, 1793
they now appeared more social and each chief presented Vancouver with a sea otter pelt
they requested an opportunity to trade as they had brought many items to barter
fresh salmon was immediately purchased
Several of these friendly natives were on board the *Chatham* when they were surprised
by the appearance of a large canoe full of singing natives keeping time with their paddles
who approached the *Discovery* -- much to the distress of the Indians on the *Chatham*
whose companions in the nearby canoes immediately equipped themselves in war clothes
and took up their spears from the bottom of their canoes
and crouched in a hostile posture looking toward the newcomers
all this time the newcomers continued their approach toward the *Discovery*

both groups of Indians expressed their hostility in songs and menacing speeches when natives in the large canoe stood pistols and blunderbusses could be seen these were all bright and in good working order a conversation took place between both groups of Indians and all appeared to be reconciled at this point the chief in the large canoe requested permission to board the *Discovery* he came on board accompanied by a man who appeared to be of some importance after a few words between the two groups of Indians an assurance of peace seemed to be agreed on the minister, as this appeared to be his role, who accompanied the chief on board the *Discovery* informed Vancouver this was Ononnifloy, the great chief this identification was confirmed by the messenger who had earlier visited the ships as he arrived at the *Discovery* in a smaller canoe Ononnifloy received the presents offered to him with great cheerfulness and satisfaction the chiefs in the smaller canoes came on board and also received presents a great deal of good will was demonstrated among all of the natives and the sailors toward the end of the day the great chief noted he had nowhere to sleep on the beach he requested permission to spend the night on the ship which was granted when it was dark the crew of the *Discovery* displayed some fireworks to amuse the Indians but they paid little attention bread and molasses with rum and wine were better received by the chief who retired for the night completely composed

TRADE IS CONDUCTED WITH THE INDIANS VISITING THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Ononnifloy joined his people on the beach early in the morning -- September 1, 1793 who were busily occupied adorning themselves After breakfast the great chief attended by all of the other chiefs took a canoe out to the *Discovery* where they sang as they paddled around both ships they came along side the *Discovery* and performed more songs while displaying wild gestures during the principal parts each chief each in succession performed the role of hero of the song at various pauses Vancouver was presented a sea otter pelt this was all done to the great amusement of the Indian spectators Ononnifloy let it be known that since peace and goodwill now prevailed he desired to trade several otter pelts were presented for barter for firearms and ammunition when Ononnifloy found these would not be offered pewter spoons, looking glasses, beads and other trinkets were accepted About sixty or so natives were visiting the ships one of these men was especially intriguing to Vancouver and the crewmen he was dressed in a blue jacket and pants and appeared to be Spanish oddly he was familiar with pockets which usually confounded the natives

he also was familiar with the Spanish custom of smoking cigars by exhaling through the nose and appeared at to be familiar with snuff

he may have taken a snuff box from a cabin -- the only theft attempted by these Indians he was accustomed to European food and gleefully ate and drank everything he was given while he did not look at all European he could have been from New Spain (Mexico) and may have deserted from a Spanish ship

he was familiar with the various channels of water that interlaced the region

he knew the opening northwest of Cape Caamano led to branches that terminated inland and that Cape Caamano itself led to the ocean at a far distance

Vancouver's men questioned him in Spanish but he did not appear familiar with the language whether or not this was a ploy could not be determined

Vancouver offered to take him on the *Discovery* when it sailed but he declined this individual's background remained a mystery

PREPARATIONS ARE MADE BY VANCOUVER TO CHANGE LOCATIONS

Lieutenant Johnstone was due to return from his boat expedition at any time -- September 2, 1793 brewing utensils, scientific equipment and other gear on land were gathered together

to provide for a speedy start to follow up on Johnstone's investigations

Vancouver named his location across from Revillagigedo Island "Port Stewart"

honoring the sailor who surveyed its waters

Indians watching the activities asked if Vancouver would visit their village

when it was discovered this would happen the natives appeared quite pleased

they left and paddled south to prepare their trade goods for the visit

LIEUTENANT JAMES JOHNSTONE FAILS TO RETURN

Concern for the boat expedition grew rapidly

Ononfloy and his people reported the area assigned to Lieutenant Johnstone for exploration was inhabited with Indians who possessed firearms

However, James Johnstone and his party arrived at the ships -- about noon September 4, 1793

although he had investigated the northern portion of the Duke of York Archipelago

he had not found a passage to the ocean, but there was little doubt the last channel he followed would eventually would make that communication

Johnstone reported on the day he had set out [August 23] he had reached Cape Caamano about dark their progress had been slowed by a strong southerly wind and a deluge of rain

their boat's mast was carried away and most of the possessions became very wet

time was lost in making repairs and drying their equipment and supplies

once again they were underway examining the channel [August 25]

as was their custom they kept the continental shore to their starboard (right)

reading Johnstone's charts Vancouver named "Point Mesurier,"
the point opposite was identified as "Point Grindall" after British captain Grindall
one of the inlet was named "Prince Ernest's Sound" after his Royal Highness
and the point opposite was called "Point Onslow"
Johnstone continued to follow the continental shore passing several bay and scattered rocks
what Vancouver named "Point Warde" was identified
here the continent took a sharp turn to the north and the arm divided into two branches
they investigated the eastern branch which terminated after about five miles
Vancouver named "Bradfield Canal" which had been reached [September 26]
setting out to explore Bradfield Canal a canoe with three Indians was seen
they accompanied the boat expedition for some distance
when the sailors turned up Bradfield Canal the Indians indicated the passage terminated
and signed they would wait for the return of the British sailors
on their return in the evening the members of the boat expedition found the Indians
rainy and unpleasant weather was faced by the boat expedition in the morning [September 27]
they began an investigation of the branch that ran north-northwest
this branch divided once again to the north and west
this westerly branch was taken as far as what became known as "Point Madan"
where once again the channel branched south-southwest and north
even harsher weather impeded the boat expedition's progress [September 28]
after traveling about sixteen miles [September 27] "Point Highfield" was reached
bad weather made viewing their surrounding difficult
but three extensive branches were seen
the third branch followed the continental shore and its entrance became "Point Rothsay"
they set out toward this point but were soon stopped by shallow water
they left the continental shore and turned west along the shallow water
travel was difficult but "Point Blaquiere" was reached opposite Point Rothsay
this investigation took most of the day
nine Indians in three canoes accompanied the British but they departed that evening
exploring the shallows was given up as attention was focused on the continent [September 29]
"Point Howe" (later named by Vancouver) was reached as was "Point Craig"
and "Point Alexander" from Johnstone's charts
passing through a narrow channel "Point Hood" honoring Admiral (later Lord) Bridgeport
"Duncan's Canal" stretched to the west and ultimately ended in a shallow bay
to the west a great branch appeared running to the southwest
"Point Mitchell" was named after British Navy Captain William Mitchell
there was no doubt they had reached an arm of the sea which divided into three branches
the easternmost branch had been investigated

main branch extended to the west and southwest but the third branch also seemed significant as it appeared to connect with channel running past Cape Caamano because supplies were running low and the southwest channel seemed intricate and hazardous Johnstone decided to investigate the main branch that ran to the west Johnstone's boat expedition proceeded up the main channel [September 1] Vancouver later named the northeast point of entrance "Point MacNamara" and the west point became "Point Colpoys" at the northern end of Prince of Wales Island following the eastern shore of the island "Bushy Island" was reached continuing down the channel they rested for the night entering the channel once again [September 2] Johnstone's boat party reached "Point Nesbitt" pressing on, a wide opening was reached and "Point Harrington" was charted after ten miles "Point Stanhope" came into view at noon where a reading was taken afternoon and evening were taken passing by broken shores in waters filled with islets "Point Onflow" was reached at midnight since this location was familiar to Johnstone he knew he had circumnavigated an island Johnstone set out once again [September 3] in tolerable weather southerly winds slowed their progress so Cape Caamano was not reached until sunset they were surprised by the arrival of twenty canoes that approached from around a small point there seemed to be no less than 250 Indians -- all probably well-armed as these people approached the boats Lieutenant Johnstone ordered a musket fired -- to no effect a swivel gun loaded with buckshot was fired ahead of the canoes this caused a temporary halt but soon the Indians advanced once again another musket shot over the heads of the Indians caused them to paddle to the shore because of the very large number of Indians and the impossibility of deterring their intentions Johnstone turned away from the natives and traveled all night in an effort to distance themselves *Discovery* and *Chatham* were reached about noon [September 4]

VANCOUVER AGAIN CHANGES THE LOCATION OF THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Calm weather kept *Discovery* and *Chatham* at anchor at Port Stewart until September 5, 1793 when a course was set toward Cape Caamano using the boats to tow the ships Vancouver intended to investigate the channel Lieutenant Johnstone believed reached the ocean but no safe anchorage could be found for the night which resulted in an uncomfortable night of sailing through a narrow channel impeded by dark, gloomy, misty and rainy weather filled with many dangerous rocks

VANCOUVER'S EXPEDITION AVOIDS A NEAR DISASTER

After a hazardous night of sailing a wide, navigable opening was found where two branches joined here the hawser rope used to tow the *Discovery's* launch broke -- 4:00 a.m. September 6, 1793

had this occurred during the night the boat would certainly have been destroyed on the rocks when safer water was reached the boat was recovered
Vancouver was grateful that Lieutenant Johnstone had investigated these waters and found a safe passage to the northwest
When the weather cleared and necessary repairs were complete both ships again sailed -- 10:00 a.m. with favorable winds great progress was made until dark when they anchored off the Duke of York's Islands

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SEND OUT TWO BOAT EXPEDITIONS

After spending the night off Duke of York's Islands in squally weather, Vancouver set a course toward Point Nesbitt at the southern tip of Zarembo Island -- 4:00 a.m. September 7, 1793
They passed beside a group of low rocks in the middle of the narrow channel these were very dangerous as most could be seen only at low tide as Vancouver sailed along the passage between the Duke of York's Islands and "Bushy Island" an ebb tide helped them reach a spacious branch leading south and south-west about 3:00 p.m. they were encouraged by the strong ebb tide that a passage to the ocean would be found although they would have to pass through dangerous and intricate waters both ships anchored that night about four miles beyond "Point Colpoys" off (Kosclusko Island)
During the day a few Indians had visited the ships by evening their numbers had increased to six or seven canoes of very orderly natives when informed it was time to rest they immediately retired to the shore where they remained

VANCOUVER SHIPS ARE VISITED BY A GROUP OF MOSTLY FEMALE INDIANS

Indians, this time mostly women, visited the ships early in the morning -- September 8, 1793 they managed two or three midsized canoes expertly singing as they approached most of the grown women wore large lip ornaments but as they were all ages it was possible to see the progress of several stages of this deformity infants had a small slit in the center of the lower lip and brass or copper wire was inserted as this corroded the flesh was consumed increasing the opening until a piece of wood was inserted in the lip of young girls judging from their appearance this was excruciatingly painful for a long time adult women displayed an extended lower lip as an obvious deformity
Lack of wind forced the ships to remain at anchor providing an opportunity to purchase a large supply of very good salmon and a few otter pelts in exchange for spoons, blue cloth, tin kettles and trinkets most of the trade was conducted very capably by the women
With the arrival of a fresh breeze Vancouver set a course to the west away from the continental shore however, the rocky channel and threatening weather forced them to search for safe anchorage this was found and "Point Baker" on the northern shore of Prince of Wales Island

was named after the *Discovery's* Lieutenant Joseph Baker
that night a violent storm hit and lasted all night
but both ships remained sheltered from the fury and its potential destructive power
Vancouver named his anchorage "Port Protection"
on the northwest coast of Prince of Wales Island in Russian-American (Alaska) waters
Vancouver decided to remain at anchor here and send out the boat expeditions

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER VISITS POINT BAKER

After breakfast Captain Vancouver, Master Whidbey and Lieutenant Johnstone rowed
out to Point Baker on Prince of Wales Island to investigate the land
they had been prevented by bad weather from previously visualizing -- September 9, 1793
here the inlet seemed to be divided into three branches
they had arrived through the first passage
the second took a northerly direction through very broken country
the third evidently communicated with the ocean in a south-southwest direction
Vancouver decided to remain in Port Protection and send out two boat expeditions

VANCOUVER SENDS OUT TWO BOAT EXPEDITIONS

Master Joseph Whidbey in the cutter with Lieutenant Spelman Swaine in the launch
took two week's provisions to complete the survey of the continental shore -- September 10, 1793
they were to investigate the western shore from where Lieutenant Johnstone had stopped
until he reached the Pacific Ocean
Lieutenant James Johnstone and Midshipman Robert Barrie took *Discovery's* small cutter
with instruction to begin their investigation of the northern channel

JOHNSTONE AND BARRIE RETURN TO THE SHIPS

After one night away Lieutenant James Johnstone and Midshipman Robert Barrie
returned to the ships -- September 11, 1793
they had surveyed the supposed continental shore
and found it took an irregular course to the southeast
to a place Vancouver named "Point Barrie"
Johnstone decided it was prudent to move away from the rocks and conclude his survey
"Conclusion Island" was the name given to his final location before he returned to the *Discovery*
Gale force winds with squalls and a great deal of rain lasted through the night
and continued until [September 15, 1793]

JOSEPH WHIDBEY AND SPELMAN SWAIN RETURN TO THE SHIPS

Captain Vancouver, Lieutenant Peter Puget and the crews of the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

had become increasingly concerned regarding the safety of their last boat expedition
Discovery's cutter and launch came into view -- afternoon September 20, 1793
Whidbey reported that after leaving the ships they had made for Conclusion Island [September 7]
and began their examination to the south when the launch struck a rock and lost her rudder
they were forced to steer with an oar which drastically slowed their progress
passing by scattered rocks and inlets [September 11]
they found an entrance leading northwest into Kuiu Island
this formed an extremely good harbor which Vancouver named "Port Beauclerc"
nine miles further on they reached "Point Amelius" in the northeast point of the bay
here a clear passage to the ocean was seen -- this was divided by an island at the entrance
which Vancouver named "Warren's Island" (today's Warren Island)
named after British Captain Sir John Borlase Warren
violent weather forced the boat expedition to remain in the bay [September 12-15]
although the wind was so strong a man could not stand without hold a rock or tree
during this time some repairs were made to the launch's rudder
with a break in the weather the boat expedition members turned south [September 15]
after nearly three miles they reached "Point St. Alban's" (Point St. Alban)
they were prevented from landing by violent surf and rocks that constantly threatened them
Whidbey decided to move outside of the rocks and proceed around Point St. Alban
rocks made landing impossible until after about six miles where the rocks terminated
camp could be made on the shore of a canal named "Affleck's Canal" (Affleck Canal)
Whidbey sailed south along Affleck Canal [September 16]
its western shore had three large bays which were all examined
during the foggy and unpleasant day
although the rain stopped the weather remained very hazy and unfavorable [September 17]
as they proceeded among the islands of the Alexander Archipelago in a southerly direction
fog obscured their vision when suddenly they were hit by a very heavy rolling swell
coming from the west which indicated the ocean was very near
they stopped from 8:00 a.m. to 2:00 p.m. waiting for the fog to lift
giving up they retired to a sheltered cove about a mile to the north
fog kept the members of Whidbey's boat expedition in the cove until [7:00 a.m. September 18]
when the weather cleared up somewhat they returned to the point of land
and found it to be a conspicuous promontory
having concluded their survey of this portion of the Alexander Archipelago
Master Joseph Whidbey made his way back to the ships
they stopped for the night in a cove where heavy swells during the night forced them
to make the utmost exertion to prevent the boats from being dashed against the rocks
rough water forced the boat expedition to remain in the cove until [10:00 a.m. September 19]

with great difficulty they managed to escape from the surrounding rocks and breakers continuing through the difficult weather Master Joseph Whidbey in the cutter with Lieutenant Spelman Swaine and their expedition returned to the *Discovery* and *Chatham* in Port Protection [afternoon September 20]

VANCOUVER'S EXTENSIVE SUMMER SURVEY COMES TO AN END

Members of Vancouver's expedition had accomplished the principal object of their assignment harsh weather, hazardous sailing conditions and the advance of the season forced Vancouver to leave the waters of Russian-America (Alaska) although he was unsatisfied with vast expanse of space left to the examined even so, Chatham's Sound and Fitzhugh's Sound to the east of the Queen Charlotte Islands (Haida Gwaii) had been surveyed continental shore from "Point Staniforth" and the entrance to "Gardner's Canal" to "Desolation Sound" the northern extend of "New Georgia" was investigated and named "New Hanover" "The Duke of Clarence's Strait" bounded on the east by "Duke of York's Islands" and part of the continent around Cape Caamano and the "Isle de Gravina" was visited the western shore, although not visited, was believed to be broken islands this was named "The Prince of Wales's Archipelago" and the adjacent continent was identified as "New Cornwall"

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER AND LIEUTENANT PETER PUGET SAIL FOR NOOTKA SOUND

At a place named "Cape Decision" by Captain Vancouver at the southern tip of Kuiu Island the expedition concluded for the season -- September 21, 1793 British Captain George Vancouver had stopped his exploration of North Pacific waters *Discovery* and *Chatham* reached Sitka, Russian-America (Alaska) as winter storms were brewing these storms convinced Vancouver to sail to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) by way of Nootka Sound where he would receive further instructions from the British government

SPAIN'S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION CONCLUDES THEIR INVESTIGATIONS

After their stay in Tonga Captain Alejandro Malaspina's corvette *Descubierta* and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra's corvette *Atrevida* sailed to Peru then around Cape Horn and on to Spain Spain's scientific expedition arrived in Cadiz after a voyage of over four years -- September 21, 1793 Malaspina's report was very large -- seven volumes with seventy maps and seventy other illustrations but this report was never published because after his return to Spain

Malaspina became involved in a conspiracy to overthrow
Spanish Prime Minister Manuel de Godoy
Captain Alejandro Malaspina was thrown in jail by the Prime Minister
and the captain's report and supporters were scattered

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER'S EXPEDITION ARRIVES AT NOOTKA SOUND

Captain Vancouver's supply ship *Daedalus* under the command of Lieutenant James Hanson
had returned and waited at Nootka Sound
for the arrival of *Discovery* and *Chatham* -- September 1793
Vancouver called on Nootka Sound for the last time -- October 1793
there he learned that the Spanish garrison had received no instructions
regarding the abandonment of the colony
he also learned there had been no answer from the British government regarding his dispatches
relating to the resolution of the Nootka dispute
Vancouver waited vainly for six weeks
as no new orders were received, *Discovery*, *Chatham* and *Daedalus* sailed for California

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE RETURNS TO FORT CHIPEWYAN

Mackenzie spent the winter of 1793-1794 at Fort Chipewyan
he had traveled more than 2,300 miles across the North America wilderness
averaging more than thirty-six miles a day without losing anyone in his group -- or his dog
more than a decade before the Americans Lewis and Clark undertook a similar effort
Mackenzie spent the (winter) at Fort Chipewyan
where he turned his attention and energies to trapping

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ARRIVES AT MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

Captain George Vancouver sailed the *Discovery* from Nootka Sound
and into the Spanish harbor at Monterey, California
accompanied by Lieutenant Peter Puget with the *Chatham* and Lieutenant James Hanson
in command of the supply ship *Daedalus* -- December 1793
Captain Vancouver took this opportunity to visit with his good friend
Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra and to survey the southern California coast
Vancouver learned from Spanish officials that the European powers were at war with France
although France was actively involved in the French Revolution,
war had been declared against Great Britain and the Dutch Republic [1793-1802]
Spain allied herself with Great Britain putting the Nootka Sound conflict in an odd position
Vancouver set out on his third (and last) visit to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) -- winter 1793-1794

NOOTKA SOUND CLAIMS CONVENTION IN SIGNED IN MADRID, SPAIN

“Third Nootka Convention” was signed -- January 11, 1794

this third treaty signed by Kingdom of Spain and the Kingdom of Great Britain
to resolve the Nootka dispute triggered by the seizure of British ships
by Spanish Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza at Nootka Sound on Vancouver Island
was also known as the “Convention for the Mutual Abandonment of Nootka”

there had been two previous attempts to resolve the Nootka Sound Crisis:

- Nootka Sound Convention, known as the Nootka Agreement,
had been signed [October 28, 1790];
- Second Nootka Sound Convention, known as the Nootka Claims Convention,
had been signed [February 12, 1793]

Terms of the third convention called for mutual abandonment of Nootka Sound:

- all buildings and districts of land once owned by British subjects shall be returned to Britain;
- a British official would unfurl the British flag over the returned land;
- after these formalities were completed the officials of the two Crowns
would withdraw their people from the port of Nootka Sound;
- subjects of both nations would be free to visit the port whenever they wished
and construct temporary buildings for use during their stay;
- neither Spain nor Great Britain could form any permanent establishment at Nootka Sound
nor could they claim any right of sovereignty to the exclusion of the other;
- both nations pledged to mutually aid each other to deny access to any other nation
that might attempt to establish sovereignty over Nootka Sound

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEAVES THE SANDWICH ISLANDS FOR ONE LAST TIME

After completing his survey of Southern California waters Captain Vancouver
sailed to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) to meet his supply ship *Daedalus*
bringing supplies from New South Wales, Australia -- January 1794

Vancouver spent three months on Kealakekua Bay on the Kona Coast of the big island of Hawaii
making repairs to the *Discovery* and *Chatham* and their boats

Vancouver used his time to reestablish his alliance with Hawaiian leader King Kamehameha
who had been equipping his army with modern muskets and cannons
and training his men in their use under the direction of British sailor John Young

Vancouver’s assistance to the king was particularly helpful

skilled British craftsmen and their tools were loaned to Kamehameha
who used them to build an armed thirty-six-foot vessel, the *Britannia*

(this ship and its armaments aided Kamehameha in winning the decisive battle
to conquer Oahu -- the last Hawaiian island to come under his control [spring 1794])

HAWAIIAN VOLCANO MAUNA LOA IS SUCCESSFULLY CLIMBED

Lieutenant Joseph Baker accompanied Dr. Archibald Menzies and Midshipman George McKenzie along with one other man whose name was not recorded made the first recorded ascent of Mauna Loa the highest of the five volcanoes on the Big Island of Hawaii they summited the 13,679-foot mountain -- February 16, 1794 using a barometer they measured its height (within fifty feet of today's accepted height)

KING KAMEHAMEHA PROCLAIMS HIS LOYALTY TO GREAT BRITAIN

Hawaiian King Kamehameha made a formal proclamation declaring to Captain George Vancouver that his people were "*Tanata no Britanee*" ("People of Britain") -- February 25, 1794 exactly what Kamehameha meant was not be entirely clear since Great Britain exerted no sovereignty over the islands during his reign as king

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM SAIL FROM THE SANDWICH ISLANDS FOR THE FINAL TIME

After a very relaxing winter, Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget guided their ships out to sea -- March 15, 1794 and made directly to (Cook Inlet) in Russian-American (Alaska) waters this was the northern limit of his survey

SPANISH COMMANDANT JUAN DE LA BODEGA Y QUADRA DIES SUDDENLY

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra for years had suffered from chronic headaches he had requested a leave of absence from his duties in Monterey, California to restore his health Quadra moved to Guadalajara, New Spain (Mexico) where he suffered a brain hemorrhage he traveled to Mexico City where he had a seizure and died (probably of a brain tumor) at age forty-nine -- March 26, 1794 Quadra's successor as commissioner to implement 1794 Third Nootka Convention was Commandant of Acapulco Brigadier General Jose Manuel de Alava (today Cape Alava commemorates his name)

HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY RECOGNIZED DAVID THOMPSON'S SKILL AS A SURVEYOR

In recognition of his map making skills exhibited in mapping a route from Cumberland House on the Saskatchewan River to Lake Athabasca Hudson's Bay Company promoted David Thompson to the position of surveyor -- 1794

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE DECIDES TO LEAVE FORT CHIPEWYAN

Mackenzie's long winter at Fort Chipewyan took its toll -- he decided to return to civilization he was as an appointed agent at Montreal by the North West Company -- spring 1794

NORTH WEST COMPANY BUILDS FORT AUGUSTA (ALBERTA) CANADA

North West Company leader Simon McTavish pushed field operations further toward the Pacific
he assigned his nephew Duncan McGillivray to open a trading post about a mile upstream
from where the Sturgeon River enters the Saskatchewan River (in today's Alberta, Canada)
John McDonald of Garth worked for the North West Company as a clerk
his early fur trade years were spent principally on the Saskatchewan River
he was sent by Duncan McGillivray to build Fort Augusta which became an important stop
on the main North West Company overland brigade route -- 1794 [until 1795]

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM REACH THE WATERS OF THE NORTH PACIFIC

Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget reached the North Pacific coast
of Russian-America where they surveyed the unexamined coastline southwards
beginning from what was referred to as Cook River in honor of British Captain James Cook
to where Vancouver had stopped during the previous year's effort
Vancouver established his base of operation at Cook River
which was renamed "Cook Inlet" (today's Anchorage, Alaska)
he began his survey -- late April 1794
Vancouver's men visited the very heart of Russian-America
and traded with Russian settlements and natives alike
Captain Vancouver himself reached the head of "Knik Arm"
Master Joseph Whidbey reached the head of "Turnagain Arm"

ALEXANDER BARANOV SEEKS A CONFERENCE WITH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER

Alexander Baranov, the head of the Russian trading operations in Russian-America
repeatedly asked Captain George Vancouver for a conference -- 1794
but the British captain refused out of concern such a meeting would further complicate
relations between Great Britain and Spain -- especially regarding Nootka Sound
Vancouver arranged his sailing schedule to avoid the Russian trade leader
(Baranov, aware of the British slight, would later retaliate by expanding the Russian area of trade)

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SURVEYS PRINCE WILLIAM SOUND

Vancouver turned his attention from surveying the Cook Inlet region
he sailed around the Kenai Peninsula to chart Prince William Sound -- end of May
Lieutenant James Johnstone explored from "Bligh Island" to the east and south
Master Joseph Whidbey surveyed the western half to Bligh Island as far as Valdez Arm
first explored by Spanish Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo [1790]
Vancouver's men once again conducted trade with both the natives and the Russians
Captain Vancouver pressed his expedition on toward the east

freezing weather killed their store of live turtles that had been kept for meat
and Dr. Archibald Menzies' quarterdeck greenhouse froze killing all of his plant specimens
While Captain Vancouver named many features in (today's Alaska) waters,
Lieutenant Peter Puget named many notable places in Prince William Sound
after members of his family

LIEUTENANT WILLIAM BROUGHTON ARRIVES IN LONDON

Lieutenant William Broughton had traveled across New Spain (Mexico) and the Atlantic Ocean
carrying dispatches from Captain George Vancouver and Vancouver's request
for further orders in negotiating a settlement with the Spanish regarding Nootka Sound
Broughton reached London -- July 1793
he was informed the entire matter had been taken out of Vancouver's hands
as the issue had been settled by the British and Spanish foreign offices
another person would be dispatched from London [November 11, 1794]
to conclude negotiations regarding the Nootka affair

VANCOUVER TURNS HIS ATTENTION TO (ALASKA'S CHICHAGOF ISLAND)

Sailing south from Prince William Sound Captain Vancouver
continued to minutely explore the (Alaskan) waters -- July 1794
Vancouver's *Discovery* and Lieutenant Peter Puget's *Chatham* sailed to (Chichagof Island)
Discovery and the armed tender *Chatham* anchored at what Vancouver named "Port Althorp"
on the northwest coast of (Chichagof Island) -- July 9, 1794
Master Joseph Whidbey was dispatched to the northeast with a boat expedition
to survey what he named "Favorite Channel" (north of today's Juneau, Alaska)
despite constant rain and more than one hostile encounter with a large group of Tlingit Indians,
Whidbey was able to explore "Lynn Canal" (to the vicinity of today's Haines, Alaska)
where he reached heads of (Chilkat Inlet) and (Chilkoot Inlet)
he followed the length of the west coast (of what Vancouver later named "Admiralty Island")
rounding its southern point to spend a night near ("Point Townshend") on its southeast coast
Tlingit Indians attacked and were defeated with loss of two of Whidbey's men wounded
this was the first attack to occur on the cruise
"Betton Island" was named in honor of one of the wounded men

JOSEPH WHIDBEY RETURNS TO *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Master Joseph Whidbey returned from his survey of the "Favorite Channel" region
in the vicinity of (today's Juneau, Alaska) -- July 27, 1794
After Whidbey's return preparations were undertaken
to move the base of operation to a new anchorage

VANCOUVER ESTABLISHES HIS LAST BASE OF OPERATIONS

Port Althorp was left behind as *Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed south along the west coast of (Chichagof Island) to (Baranof Island) which was reached -- August 2, 1794

Vancouver named a cove on southern tip of (Baranof Island) "Port Conclusion"

Two boat parties were dispatched from Port Conclusion -- August 3

Lieutenant James Johnstone charted the west, north and east coasts of (Kuiu Island) and the south and east shore of (Kupreanof Island)

Master Joseph Whidbey proceeded up "Stephens Passage" in the Alexander Archipelago he completed the survey of the east coast of "Admiralty Island"

including "Seymour Canal" and "Glass Peninsula" and the continental shore opposite

Whidbey investigated the channel to the east of (Kupreanof Island)

before being stopped by shoals (in the vicinity of today's Petersburg, Alaska)

Whidbey and Johnstone met each other off the northeast coast of (Kupreanof Island)

Master Joseph Whidbey noted: **"...that it is not possible for language to describe the joy that was manifested in every countenance on thus meeting their comrades and fellow adventurers, by which happy circumstance, a principal object of the voyage was brought to a conclusion."**¹²⁸

NO CHANGE HAS TAKEN PLACE REGARDING THE STATUS OF NOOTKA SOUND

Spain continued to maintain its Nootka Sound garrison at Fort San Miguel

and the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca although the future of that colony

and the colony located at Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) remained in doubt

Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo entered Nootka Sound on *Princesa* -- August 14, 1794

he brought word that Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra had died [March 26]

Lieutenant Fidalgo was accompanied by Commandant Brigadier General Jose Alava

who was ordered to deliver Fort San Miguel and the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca

to British Captain George Vancouver

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER CONCLUDES HIS DETAILED COASTAL SURVEY

Master Joseph Whidbey and Lieutenant James Johnstone returned to Port Conclusion

with their supplies completely exhausted -- August 19, 1794

According to the diaries of several officers, they felt great joy with the completion of their survey realizing they could now return home

Captain Vancouver further noted: **"In order that the valuable crews of both vessels on whom great hardships had fallen, and who had uniformly encountered their difficulties with unremitting exertion, might celebrate the day, that had thus terminated their labours in these regions; they were**

¹²⁸ Captain John T. Walbran, *British Columbia Coast Names*, P. 528.

served with such additional allowance of grog as was fully sufficient to answer every purpose of festivity on the occasion.”¹²⁹

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM SAIL FROM RUSSIAN-AMERICAN (ALASKA) WATERS

Within a few days of the return of Whidbey and Johnstone, Vancouver left Port Conclusion unfortunately, as they set out for Nootka Sound British sailor Isaac Wooden was lost in a boating accident off (Cape Ommaney) -- one of the few to die on the expedition Vancouver named these treacherous rocks “Wooden Rocks” in his memory

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM ARRIVE AT NOOTKA SOUND

Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget reached Nootka Sound -- September 1, 1794

Vancouver was to negotiate an end to the Nootka Sound Crisis Spanish Brigadier General Jose Alava, now the Commandant of Nootka Sound had arrived about two weeks before Vancouver found General Alava to be cooperative and friendly but no instructions had arrived for Vancouver to resolve the [1790] Nootka Sound Crisis thus neither Vancouver nor Alava knew how to properly conclude the Nootka affair Vancouver and his men were saddened to learn

that Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra had suddenly died Vancouver noted in his journal: **“The death of our highly valuable and much esteemed friend Senr (sic) Quadra, who in the month of March had died at St. Blas, universally lameneted. (sic) Having endeavoured, on a former occasion, to point out the degree of admiration and respect with which the conduct of Sen’r Quadra toward our little community had impressed us during his life, I cannot refrain, now that he is no more, from rendering that justice to his memory to which it is so amply intitled, (sic) by stating, that the unexpected melancholey (sic) event of his decease operated on the minds of us all, in a way more easily to be imagined than described: and whilst it excited our most grateful acknowledgements, it produced the deepest regret for the loss of a character so amiable, and so truly ornamental to civil society.”**¹³⁰

BOTH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER AND GENERAL ALAVA REMAIN ON FRIENDLY TERMS

Compatible relations were established

Vancouver and Alava investigated a branch of Nootka Sound they named “Tiupana Arm” (present-day Tlupana Inlet) -- September 27, 1794

both men attended a large celebration in Maquinna’s village of Tahsheis

Discovery and Chatham and their crews were anxious to set sail

¹²⁹ Gordon Speck, *Northwest Exploration*, P. 143-144.

¹³⁰ Captain George Vancouver, *A Voyage of Discovery to the North Pacific Ocean, and Round the World*, Vol. 3, P. 301.

both Vancouver and Alava decided to journey to Monterey, California
where they hoped instructions were awaiting them

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEAVES NOOTKA SOUND FOR THE LAST TIME

Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget sailed the *Discovery* and *Chatham*
out of Nootka Sound bound for Monterey, California -- October 6, 1794

Vancouver's supply ship, *Daedalus*, was sent back to England accompanied by a troublesome sailor
Thomas Pitt, fifteen years old when he first sailed with Vancouver, had been disciplined
for numerous infractions -- Vancouver dismissed him in disgrace

(Pitt, the cousin Prime Minister William Pitt [the Younger]

later became Thomas Pitt, 2nd Baron Camelford

his dismissal by Vancouver later had a major impact on the later life of Vancouver)

SPANISH COMMANDER OF NOOTKA SOUND ARRIVES IN MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

Commandant of Fort San Miguel and the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca Brigadier General Jose Alava
arrived in Monterey, California on the Spanish corvette *Princesa*
sailing under the command of Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo -- October 15, 1794

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER AND LIEUTENANT PUGET ARRIVE IN MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

Captain Vancouver and Lieutenant Puget reached Monterey, California
with the *Discovery* and *Chatham* -- November 6, 1794

there they joined Commandant Brigadier General Jose Alava
and learned there were still no instructions for Vancouver

(Spanish Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo had already sailed the *Princesa*
for San Blas, New Spain [Mexico])

Vancouver and Alava waited for documents to arrive from their governments

Vancouver used the time to recondition his ships for the long voyage back to London

UNITED STATES AND GREAT BRITAIN SIGN A TREATY TO RESOLVE ONGOING ISSUES

Questions regarding outstanding issues between the two countries left by the [1783] Treaty of Paris
that had ended the American Revolution were addressed in a treaty known by several names:

Treaty of Amity, Commerce, and Navigation, Between His Britannic Majesty and The United
States of America -- more commonly known as the Jay Treaty; and also as Jay's Treaty,
the British Treaty and the Treaty of London of 1794

in the United States it was named after the chief American negotiator John Jay

who was the head of the Federalist Party that believed in a strong federal government

but many of the terms of the agreement were introduced

by Secretary of State Alexander Hamilton

and were supported by President George Washington
of immediate concern was the establishment of the international boundary
between the United States and Canada in the Great Lakes region
What became known as the Jay Treaty in the United States was signed -- November 18, 1794
it called for arbitration to settle the U.S.-Canadian border
this was one the first times that arbitration had been used for diplomatic purposes
Jay Treaty eventually called for the removal of British troops from forts ceded to the United States
at the end of the Revolutionary War
and required that British trading posts operating in American territory be closed

DISCOVERY AND CHATHAM BEGIN THEIR JOURNEY BACK TO ENGLAND

(Although negotiations regarding the [1790] Nootka Sound Crisis
had been concluded in Europe this was unknown to Captain George Vancouver)
Discovery and *Chatham* sailed out of Monterey, California bound for London -- December 2, 1794
by way of Cape Horn thus circumnavigating the globe

OUTSIDERS IMPACT THE ONGOING CIVIL WAR IN THE SANDWICH ISLANDS (HAWAII)

(American Captain John Kendrick had sailed the *Lady Washington* to Macau, China [1792]
where finding buyers for his furs proved to be a very difficult task
he had sailed several times between the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) and Clayoquot Sound [1793]
trading with the *Lady Washington* apparently for himself in his unhurried fashion [1793-1794]
he had a brief reunion with his son who now commanded the Spanish ship *Aranzazu*)
China bound, from Clayoquot Sound Captain John Kendrick reached Honolulu -- December 3, 1794
two British vessels were in Karakakooa Bay:
•*Jackal* under Captain William Brown;
•*Prince Lee Boo* under a Captain Robert Gordon

Civil war had gripped the island of Oahu as Hawaiian tribes fought for control
when the island of Oahu was invaded by Kauai Island Chief Keekulani
Chief Kalanikupule of Oahu asked Captain Brown for assistance in defending his island
from the invading forces of his uncle
Captain Brown provided support and was joined by the first mate of the *Prince Lee Boo*
Captain Kendrick also probably sent some of his men to help Chief Kalanikupule
With the help of muskets fired by the sailors, Chief Kalanikupule drove Chief Keekulani
to hills above Honolulu and into a ravine
Chief Keekulani tried to escape but Brown's and Kendrick's men
saw his scarlet and yellow feather cloak and fired from their ships to reveal his location
Oahu warriors killed Keekulani along with his wives and chiefs

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK IS KILLED

While in Karakakoa Bay Captain John Kendrick fired a thirteen-gun salute to the British ship *Jackal* in celebration of their part in winning the victory for Oahu Chief Kalanikupule -- 10:00 a.m.

Jackal answered with a return salute -- December 12, 1794

one *Jackal's* cannons was accidently loaded with grapeshot

which pierced the side of the *Lady Washington*, wounded several of the crew,
and removed Kendrick's head as he sat at his table

Kendrick died from a round fired as a British salute in his honor

Captain Kendrick's body and the bodies of his shipmates were taken ashore and buried on the beach in a hidden cove of palm trees

VANCOUVER SAILS FROM MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA BOUND FOR ENGLAND

Although Captain George Vancouver had orders to avoid Spanish possessions in the Pacific Ocean he also had orders to survey as much of the coast as possible

Vancouver's expedition reached the Tres Maria Islands off the coast of New Spain (Mexico)

there they stopped for provisions -- December 17, 1794

and to allow Dr. Archibald Menzies to study the plant life

Christmas was spent at sea

STEPS ARE TAKEN TO RESOLVE THE LONG-STANDING NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS

Great Britain and Spain had long attempted to resolve the [1790] Nootka Sound Crisis

which centered around Spanish Commandant Francisco de Eliza

confiscating British vessels and land in Nootka Sound [1790]

Newly-named Commissioner Lieutenant Thomas Pierce of the British Royal Marines

was assigned to implement the "Convention for the Mutual Abandonment of Nootka

this was the third "Nootka Sound Claims Convention"

Commissioner Pierce replaced Captain George Vancouver as the diplomat responsible

Commissioner Pierce reached San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)

where he met with Spanish Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo

together they sailed north on the Spanish ship *Activa* to Monterey, California -- January 1795

accompanied by the small armed launch *San Carlos*

In Monterey Spanish Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo and British Commissioner Pierce

picked up Commandant Brigadier General Jose Alava who had replaced Spanish Commissioner

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra as Spain's representative

in implementing the Nootka Sound Claims Convention

COLUMBIA RIVER MYTHS LEADS TO MISCONCEPTIONS ABOUT NORTH AMERICA

Samuel Hearne had advanced the idea of a Continental Divide [1773]

that is, a range of mountains beyond which all rivers ran to the west
Following this idea, Aaron Arrowsmith, a London mapmaker,
drew on his maps of North America a single ridge of western mountains
his [1790] map showed these mountains extending south only to 48° north latitude
with the “River Oregon” flowing west
this suggested an easy passage to the coast from the headwaters of the Mississippi River
Robert Gray’s discovery of the Columbia River [1792]
demonstrated the Columbia River is in the same latitude as the upper Missouri River
perhaps a portage between the two river would be possible
this led Americans to believe they were on the verge of discovering a “Passage to India”
(search for this passage motivated Thomas Jefferson to send Lewis and Clark [1804-1806])
Mapmaker Aaron Arrowsmith’s map -- 1795
showed a single ridge of mountains extending to about 49° north latitude
(his [1798] map extended the Stony Mountains [or Rocky Mountains] south to about 38° north
he noted the mountains were only 3,520 feet high [a ridiculous figure acquired from nowhere]
and gave credence to the belief they would not be a formidable barrier
an updated version of Arrowsmith’s map [circa 1800]
shows the “R. Oregon” and “R. Columbia”
these were connected with a dotted line to the other side of the single mountain range
which suggested an eastern connection through the mountains)

REPRESENTATIVES OF GREAT BRITAIN AND SPAIN ARRIVE AT NOOTKA SOUND

British and Spanish government commissioners had conferred in Europe
to resolve the issues remaining regarding the Third Nootka Convention
where they had agreed on mutual abandonment of Nootka Sound
Spanish Commissioner Commandant Brigadier General Jose Alava
and British representative Lieutenant Thomas Pierce met formally
at the tiny piece of land where John Meares had built his schooner *Northwest America*
on the north side of Friendly Cove in Nootka Sound -- March 5, 1795
this time the instructions to resolve the Nootka Sound Controversy were complete
British Commissioner Thomas Pierce hoisted the British flag
over John Meares’ land claim as a token gesture of taking possession

NOOTKA SOUND IS VACATED BY THE SPANISH GOVERNMENT

Two papers written to preserve the honor of the signers of the various Nootka Agreements
were signed and exchanged by British Royal Marines Commissioner Lieutenant Thomas Pierce
and Spanish Commandant Brigadier General Jose Alava -- March 28, 1795
Nootka Sound Claims Convention [1794] required the Spanish military post be destroyed

Spanish Brigadier General Jose Manuel Alava, Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca gave the orders and Spanish sailors dismantled the little post of Fort San Miguel all the guns were placed aboard the Spanish ships *Activa* and the *San Carlos* they also took all of the moveable property from the second Spanish colony at Santa Cruz de Nuca (Neah Bay)

When the British and Spanish commissioners' ships departed, Nootka Sound was left to the native people who had lived there for thousands of years of course, all European visitors had completely disregarded native territorial claims but Chief Maquinna of the Mowachat band of the Nu-Cha-Nulth people was far from being an ignorant savage, he was a shrewd and astute leader of his people he witnessed the talks which took place between the Spanish and English representatives (although Maquinna appeared to favor the Spanish in the dispute, his statue is today included with other early leaders who grace Victoria's Legislative Buildings)

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS HOMEWARD VOYAGE

Only Spanish ports existed in the Pacific Ocean lack of places to provision his ships led to the men beginning to suffer from scurvy also, necessity required some refitting of *Discovery* and *Chatham* be undertaken Vancouver put in at Valparaiso in the Viceroyalty of Peru (today's Chile) -- March 35, 1795 there for five weeks repairs were undertaken with the help of the Spanish *Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed from Valparaiso -- May 5, 1795 Vancouver had intended to survey of the coast of Peru but this became impractical with the onset of the Southern Hemisphere's winter and the badly worn condition of the ships passage around Cape Horn would be hazardous

NORTH WEST COMPANY BUILDS FORT AUGUSTUS

Nor'Wester Angus Shaw established Fort Augustus on the bank of the Saskatchewan River about a mile upstream from the confluence of the North Saskatchewan River (near present day Edmonton, Alberta) -- 1795 this was an attempt to outdistance its Hudson's Bay Company competition and tap a new source for pelts

NORTH WEST COMPANY POSTS WERE USUALLY SIMILARILY CONSTRUCTED

Buildings at these posts were crude squared timber walls were chinked with mud whitewashed on the exterior with white mud and, perhaps, plastered with mud on the interior coniferous bark was the usual roofing material

occasionally substituted by mud and earth, or turf
fireplaces had stone fire-boxes
and wattle-and-daub (woven sticks and mud) chimneys
windows were covered with parchment paper -- not glass

EXCLUSIVE NORTH WEST COMPANY CLUB PROVIDES LEADERSHIP TO THE COMPANY

Beaver Club, located on Beaver Hall Hill in Montreal, was begun -- spring 1795
no North West Company partner was eligible for membership
unless he had spent at least one winter in the wilderness
men who had lived hardily through the rough life as a company "wintering partner"
could be relied upon to keep the Beaver Club from stagnating
members met each night to eat and drink and to toast the British King and each other
and all the lads of the North collectively and individually
Spring was a time of great joy in Montreal
for in spring the brigades came in with their furs
as April turned into May, hilarity broke out of the confining walls of the Beaver Club
and resounded through the streets and taverns of Montreal
and along the banks of the St. Lawrence River
boisterous scenes were enacted in the candle-lit banquet room of the Beaver Club
where brave and manly Scots sat wearing gold-braided uniforms,
eating from silver serving plates and drinking from silver goblets,
all engraved with the Club's crest -- a beaver
and the motto: *Fortitude in Distress*
revelers danced the Highland sword-dance
At length the concluding ceremony was held
as a tribute to the voyageurs lordly Nor'Westers and their guests knelt on the floor
with tongs, pokers, canes, or whatever would serve the purpose,
as they imitated the canoeman's swift, rhythmic strokes,
while they sang in rousing chorus one of the favorite paddle-songs¹³¹

NORTH WEST COMPANY BRIGADES ARRIVE AT FORT WILLIAM

When canoe brigades arrived at Fort William on Lake Superior
even wilder scenes than those of the Beaver Club were enacted
Nor'Westers did not own Montreal -- but Fort William was theirs
Fort William possessed a huge banquet hall where two hundred men could feast at their ease
portraits of King George III and British hero Admiral Lord Horatio Nelson adorned the walls
French chefs paid lordly salaries were convinced to risk their life and culinary reputation

¹³¹ Constance Lindsay Skinner, *Adventurers of Oregon*, P. 104.

to prepare venison steaks and buffalo tongues to a king's taste
fine wines had been carried over the long route from England to provide a glow of welcome
as casks were emptied allowing Nor'Westers who were able to sit astride them
to shout and sing
this would be the only civilization "wintering partners" may ever enjoy
and one of the few opportunities to speak with other white men

PREPARING TO RETURN WEST NORTH WEST COMPANY HELD ANNUAL BUFFALO HUNTS

Voyageurs, trappers and hunters weapons were overhauled by the company gun smith
Voyageurs wore little bells and jingling bits of metal to adorn his attire
Trappers garments were cut and fashioned -- probably by the trapper's Indian wife
he must have his moccasins colorfully beaded or worked with brightly dyed quills
leggings and jacket must be fringed
trappers wore wonderful gloves for handling traps and avoiding the human scent
Voyageurs and trappers could have a bright sash, a beaded cap, as well as a fur cap for cold weather
fur pouches for powder and shot
and perhaps a beaded bear's or swan's foot pouch for his tobacco
Sadly, hunters were forced to give up the little bells and jingling bits of metal
enjoyed by the voyageurs as the sound would warn their prey of being stalked
Nor'Westers hunted huge buffalo for pemmican and dried meat to use in returning west
they also needed skins for clothing and for bedding, for making tents, saddles and bull-boats
bone was used to supplement the trapper's steel weapons
sinew sometimes served as thread or cord

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER AND LIEUTENANT PUGET REACH ST. HELENA ISLAND

Discovery and *Chatham* put in at the island of St. Helena in the South Atlantic Ocean -- July 2, 1795
members of the crew learned that Great Britain was at war with Jamaica
(Second Maroon War would be an eight-month conflict)
Vancouver's battered ships were nearly the weakest vessels in the Atlantic Ocean
even so he managed to capture a Dutch East India merchant ship by surprise
this event required Vancouver to recruit additional crewmen
from among the non-sailors on his ship
during a storm he ordered Dr. Archibald Menzies' servant aloft to serve as a lookout
this left Menzies' plants untended
many plant specimens had suffered damage and some died
an angry Dr. Menzies was placed under arrest by Vancouver for "insolence and contempt"

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS HOMEWARD VOYAGE

In the vicinity of the Cape Verde Islands located off the North Africa coast in the Atlantic Ocean
Discovery caught up with a British convoy escorted by HMS *Sceptre*
Discovery arrived in relative safety at Shannon, Ireland as part of this British fleet
At Shannon Vancouver departed from his ship to report to the British Admiralty in London

AMERICAN GOVERNMENT SIGNS IT FIRST TREATY WITH THE INDIANS

When the architects of the American government created the U.S. Constitution,
they clearly recognized that treaties along with the Constitution itself
are the supreme law of the land

Indian people and Indian country loomed as a large threat that challenged national growth

President Washington's Administration negotiated its first Indian Treaty -- August 3, 1795
with seven northern tribes: Shawnee, Miami, Ottawa, Chippewa, Iroquois, Sauk and Fox
following the natives' loss at the Battle of Fallen Timbers a year earlier

Washington's government dealt with Indians as foreign nations like Great Britain and France
rather than as domestic subjects

primary goal of Washington's Indian policy was to acquire Indian lands -- in that he succeeded
his second goal, of far less importance to Washington and his government,
was to establish just policies for dealings with Indian people

Because the treaties recognized Indians as living in independent nations

each recognized Indian tribe has a government-to-government relationship with the United States
this tribal sovereignty assures certain federal benefits, services and protections are maintained

recognized tribes have the right to form their own government, exclude people from tribal land,
make and enforce their own civil and criminal laws, determine tribal membership, tax,
zone their land and license and regulate activities within their jurisdiction

furthermore, federally recognized tribes possess both the right and the authority
to regulate activities on their lands independently from state government control

they can enact and enforce stricter or more lenient laws and regulations

that differ from the laws of the state that surrounds their reservation

states have no authority over tribal governments

except when that control is expressly authorized by Congress

BRITISH CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER RETURNS TO LONDON, ENGLAND

Captain George Vancouver arrived in London -- September 1795

he had proven there was no Northwest Passage, Vancouver wrote: **"I trust the precision with which the survey of the coast of North West America has been carried into effect will removed every doubt, and set aside every opinion of a north-west passage, or any water communication navigable**

for shipping, existing between the North Pacific, and the interior of the American continent, within the limits of our researches.”¹³²

in addition Captain Vancouver had achieved several other notable goals:

- he had helped remove Spain as a power in the Pacific Northwest;
- he had assisted in the unification of the Kingdom of Hawaii under Kamehameha and further established British domination of Australia and New Zealand;
- he left the world hundreds, perhaps thousands, of place names as Dr. Archibald Menzies added hundreds of plant species names;

but Vancouver was disappointed he was not allowed to resolve the Nootka Sound Crisis that had taken so much of his time

HMS *DISCOVERY* ARRIVES IN LONDON

Lieutenant Joseph Baker, an America, brought *Discovery* safely home to Long Reach on the Thames in London, England -- September 12, 1795

Discovery had been at sea four and a half years

(armed tender *Chatham* under the command of Peter Puget arrived a few weeks later)

Vancouver, Puget and members of his expedition had minutely explored the Strait of Juan de Fuca, Puget Sound, the Salish Sea and Alaskan waters during their three-year visit beginning [April 26, 1792]

but British citizens and their government were more interested in the ongoing war with Jamaica than they were in Pacific explorations

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER DID NOT RECEIVE A HERO'S WELCOME

Captain George Vancouver faced difficulties when he returned to London

he seemed to have generated a certain amount of respect from his officers

and many of his crewmen -- even if he had few friends among them

even so, George Vancouver was accused of strict, even harsh, treatment of his crew

(Vancouver's shipmate on the James Cook's third expedition, Lieutenant William Bligh had lost his ship during the "Mutiny on the *Bounty*" [1789]

Captain Vancouver was constantly leery of an insurrection on his own ship)

Captain Vancouver was attacked by politically well-connected enemies:

- such as naturalist Dr. Archibald Menzies who was usually on good terms with Vancouver became upset when his plant specimens and been damage and some died because his servant had been pressed into service as a lookout during a storm
- Menzies who had been arrested by Vancouver for insolence and contempt
- also Vancouver demanded Menzies' journals but the doctor refused to give them up leading to the involvement of the British Admiralty and Sir Joseph Banks

¹³² Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest*, P. 90.

president of the British Royal Society of London for Improving Natural Knowledge

- sailing Master Joseph Whidbey placed a claim for additional pay as expedition astronomer
this claim was not supported by Vancouver
- young Thomas Pitt, 2nd Baron Camelford and cousin of Prime Minister William Pitt the Younger,
had been returned to England by Vancouver in disgrace aboard the supply ship, *Daedalus*
Thomas Pitt challenged Vancouver to a duel
but the captain refused to be held personally responsible for any professional decision
Pitt chose to stalk Vancouver and ultimately assaulted him on a London street corner
Vancouver's brother, Charles, attacked Pitt on a London street and had to be restrained
newspapers attacked Vancouver -- his career was effectively over
in the end one of Britain's greatest navigators was no match for the political powers
that had been thrust against him -- and he was dying

Vancouver's massive cartographical work was only a few hundred pages short of completion
when he died in obscurity at Petersham, Richmond, England at age forty-one [May 10, 1798]
less than three years after completing his voyage
his modest grave lies in St. Peter's churchyard, Petersham, England
his cartographical work was completed by Peter Puget

SPANISH HERO CAPTAIN ALESSANDRO MALASPINA'S REPORT IS NOT PUBLISHED

(France's scientific expedition [1786] led by Comte Jean Francoise de La Perouse [Count Galaup]
and British Captain George Vancouver's survey of the North Pacific Coast [1792-1795]
had resulted in reports that were published by the governments of France [1797]
and Great Britain and [1798])

Alejandro Malaspina, Spain's popular romantic hero and leader of her greatest scientific expedition,
came to the conclusion after examining the political situation in Spain's Pacific colonies
that instead of economically plundering her colonies Spain must develop a confederation
of states whose members would conduct international trade
managed by the Spanish from Acapulco

Malaspina prepared a very large report for the Spanish government
seven volumes with seventy maps and seventy other illustrations
but this report was never published
after his return to Spain Malaspina became involved in political intrigues
to overthrow Spanish Prime Minister Manuel de Godoy
Captain Alejandro Malaspina was imprisoned by the prime minister
for plotting against the state -- 1795
Spain had planned to publish a grand report and atlas about his expedition
but after his political downfall this became impossible
Malaspina's report and supporters were scattered

Spanish authorities, unwilling to publish Malaspina's report, which would have surpassed any other, settled on publishing only the account of Dionisio Alcalá Galiano's portion of the expedition
Malaspina's name and information was completely ignored
in effect, Galiano replaced Malaspina as Spain's great explorer of the late 18th Century
Alejandro Malaspina was released from prison after seven years
when France's Napoleon Bonaparte intervened on his behalf
Malaspina retired to Pontremoli, Spain where he died at age fifty-five [April 9, 1810]

ERA OF SPANISH CONTROL OF THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST COMES TO AN END

British Captain Charles Bishop's *Ruby* was the sister ship of Captain James Baker's *Jenny*
(*Jenny* was found at anchor in the Columbia River by Lieutenant William Broughton [1792])
Captain Bishop made a note in his ship's log -- October 1795
that after trading for furs in the north, he stopped "at a deserted Spanish village"¹³³
to gather boards to protect his ship and men from the weather
this could have been either Santa Cruz de Nuca at Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound
or Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)

EDMONTON HOUSE IS BUILT BY HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY

Edmonton House (also known as Fort Edmonton and as Fort-des-Prairies by French-Canadians)
was constructed by Hudson's Bay Company's William Tomison
on the Saskatchewan River -- fall 1795
within a musket shot of the Nor'Westers' Fort Augustus
Histories of Fort Augustus and Edmonton House were very closely linked as the two rival companies
carried the British flag and British commerce along the great rivers of Canada
from the shores of the Atlantic Ocean and Hudson Bay to the Pacific and Arctic Oceans
both of these forts served as the end point of the Carlton Trail, the main overland route
used by Metis freighters between the Red River Colony and the west

RUSSIAN TRADING ACTIVITIES EXPAND AS FAR SOUTH AS CALIFORNIA

Independent Russian trappers under the rule of leader Alexander Baranov
held the claim of settlement in Russian-America (Alaska) north of 54°-40' latitude -- 1796
In response to Captain George Vancouver's activities in Russian waters [1792-1795]
and the British captain's failure to meet with him
Alexander Baranov convinced Russian fur traders to migrate south
Indian hunters working for Russian traders expanded their operations
to include the coast of California
forts and trading posts were constructed into the Spanish claim below 42° north

¹³³ Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage*, P. 28

(today's Oregon-California border) as far south as the Russian River
(today's Sacramento) in California

Spain still claimed all of the territory of North America

in a dispatch to Russian Czar Paul who ascended the throne on Empress Catherine's death -- 1796

Spain protested the violation of Spanish claims by aggressive independent Russian fur trappers

Russian incursions into Spanish territory aroused Spanish activity once again

presidios (fortresses) and missions were built in Upper (Northern) California

Monterey became the capitol of California

Spanish expeditions were sent to block Russian advances

making landings and claiming land as far north as 60° north (today's Gulf of Alaska)

DAVID THOMPSON CHANGES COMPANIES

Hudson's Bay Company resident Chief at York Factory Joseph Colen

ordered company surveyor David Thompson to stop surveying

he was to confine his activities to trading

Thompson's soul must have fared poorly behind a desk or cramped behind a counter

trading furs for pots and pans and blankets

David Thompson became frustrated with Joseph Colen's interpretation of the company's policies

at age twenty-seven he quit Hudson's Bay Company

he walked eighty miles in the snow with most of his instruments and books

from Bedford House on Reindeer Lake, Saskatchewan to the North West Company's post
on the Reindeer River -- May 8, 1797

DAVID THOMPSON LEAVES HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY

Frustrated with the strong emphasis on trade that characterized Hudson's Bay Company

David Thompson decided to join the rival North West Company

which encouraged exploration and mapping

Thompson wrote in his journal -- May 23, 1797

“This day I left the service of the Hudson's Bay Company and entered that of the Company of the Merchants (North West Company) from Canada. May God Almighty prosper me.”¹³⁴

DAVID THOMPSON JOINS THE NORTH WEST COMPANY

Thompson set out from the North West Company post on the Reindeer River, Saskatchewan

he reached North West Company headquarters at Grand Portage on Lake Superior -- July 22, 1797

Thompson went to work as a fur trader and surveyor but he had not provided Hudson's Bay Company

one year's notice of his intention to resign as was the usual practice

this oversight upset his former employer

¹³⁴ Constance Lindsay Skinner, *Adventurers of Oregon*, P. 96.

Nor'Westers pronounced him the company astronomer, surveyor and geographer
Captain Cook's map which had just been published may have provided some inspiration
for the North West Company to compile accurate information in their area of operation
Thompson made an arrangement with the North West Company which was mutually agreed upon
he would combine fur trading with surveying
half of the North American continent was blank and Thompson set out to fill in the map

DAVID THOMPSON SETS OUT FOR THE U.S.-CANADIAN BORDER REGION

Thompson was assigned by the North West Company to identify the locations
of the company's trading houses and the water routes which were likely to be affected
by the [1794] Jay Treaty establishing the international boundary
between the United States and Great Britain's Canada

David Thompson set out from North West Company headquarters at Grand Portage -- August 9, 1797
on a remarkable journey of exploration

he traveled with experienced Nor'Wester Hugh McGillis
down the Rainy River to Rainy Lake, then to Lake of the Woods
and on to Lake Winnipeg before arriving at Lake Manitoba

Thompson carried a ten-inch brass sextant and set of charts and tables wherever he went
because he had no ocean, he used a small pan into which he poured mercury
creating an artificial horizon to reflect the sun, moon and stars

in his kit were two thermometers, drawing instruments and foolscap-sized (13" by 16") paper
he was more like a British sea captain than a trader -- his figures were remarkably accurate

Thompson's traveling companions often saw him gazing for hours into the skies
Indians called him Koo-Koo-Sint -- "the Man Who Looks at Stars"

Thompson noted: **"I told them it was to determine the distance and direction from the place I observed to other places, neither the Canadians nor the Indians believed me. Their opinions were that I was looking into futurity."**¹³⁵

DAVID THOMPSON'S SURVEY

David Thompson and Hugh McGillis traveled from Lake Manitoba and Lake Winnipegosis
there they borrowed horses from a Hudson's Bay Company post located nearby
to travel on to the Assiniboine River -- September 17, 1797

Nor'Westers David Thompson and Hugh McGillis took separate routes

McGillis proceeded on to Red Deer Lake to revisit Fort Red Deer River which he founded [1794]

David Thompson continued his surveying efforts for the next two months

he ascended the Shoal River to Swan River House

then traveled the Swan River Valley to the Assiniboine and Red Deer rivers

¹³⁵ *National Geographic*, May, 1996. Priit J. Vesilind. P. 122.

DAVID THOMPSON CONTINES HIS EFFORT TO SURVEY THE UPPER MISSOURI RIVER

Not content with this exploration, Thompson set out with nine men

Thompson set out from Grand Portage on Lake Superior

to try to accurately survey the Mandan Villages located along the banks of the Missouri River and two of its tributaries, the Heart and Knife rivers (in today's North and South Dakota) (Mandans had first encountered Europeans [1738])

it was estimated that at that time 15,000 Mandans resided in the nine villages on the Heart River their villages featured large, round earth lodges about forty feet in diameter

that surrounded a central plaza

they lived on bison and farmed as they actively traded goods with other Great Plains tribes they served as middlemen in the trade in furs, horses, guns, crops and buffalo products)

David Thompson arrived at the Mandan Villages

located along Lake Sakakawea on the upper Missouri River -- November 28, 1797

Thompson was given the task of developing trade with these Indians

he tried to persuade the Mandans to travel to the nearest North West Company post to trade

but they were fearful of the Sioux Indians who had long been their enemy

although he was unable to convince the Mandans to travel to trade,

he did manage to record 375 words of the Mandan vocabulary

DAVID THOMPSON CONTINUES HIS SURVERY OF THE UPPER MISSOURI RIVER

Thompson remained with the Mandan Indians until -- January 10, 1798

when he moved on to investigate the headwaters of the Mississippi River system

Thompson set out to survey the route linking the Mississippi River and Red River

with the North West Company headquarters at Grand Portage (Minnesota) on Lake Superior

then he pressed on to survey Lake Superior's southern shore

DAVID THOMPSON SETS OUT TO SURVEY THE RED RIVER (OF THE NORTH)

Thompson set out from Lake Superior bound for the Red River (of the North) -- January 26, 1798

he mapped the Red River which runs between (today's states of Minnesota and North Dakota)

it flows northward through the Red River Valley before emptying into Lake Winnipeg

and joins the Nelson River and ultimately enters Hudson Bay

David Thompson ascended the Red River and Red Lake Rivers to Red Lake (Minnesota)

where he waited for spring -- March 24, 1798

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE'S LATER LIFE

With his explorations of to the Arctic Ocean and across the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific Ocean

Alexander Mackenzie provided conclusive proof of no Northwest Passage North of 50° north

he discovered and described for others to follow a Northern route across the continent
although the Columbia River was inaccurately mapped
he was interested in creating a line of posts from the mouth of Columbia River
to connect with head of Saskatchewan River and on to Lake Winnipeg
and Nelson River to Hudson Bay
as he reported: **“By these waters that discharge themselves into Hudson’s Bay at Port
Nelson, it is proposed to carry on the trade to their source at the head of the Saskatchewan River,
which rises in the Rocky Mountains, not eight degrees of longitude from the Pacific Ocean. The
Tacouche Tesse, or Columbia [in this Mackenzie was in error as what he knew as the Tacouche Tesse is
today’s Fraser River] flows also from the same mountains and discharges itself likewise into the
Pacific in latitude forty-six degrees twenty minutes. Both of them are capable of receiving ships at
their mouths, and are navigable throughout for boats.”**¹³⁶

Alexander Mackenzie announced his retirement from the fur trade -- 1798

(Mackenzie went to London where his journal was published [1801])

Alexander Mackenzie’s Voyages From Montreal to the Frozen and Pacific Ocean in 1793

Mackenzie explained the lengthy time between the event and the publication: **“The delay
actually arose from the very active and busy mode of life in which I was engaged since the voyages
have been completed.”**¹³⁷

[his book was read by President Thomas Jefferson and was carried by Lewis and Clark]

Alexander Mackenzie was knighted by England’s King George III

for his efforts in exploring the northern and western portions of North America

Sir Alexander Mackenzie returned to Canada

he was elected to the legislature of Lower Canada [today’s Quebec in [1804-1808]

as a member of the Canadian Parliament he proposed the North West Company

and Hudson’s Bay Company unite and partner with the East India Company

this proved to be beyond the reach of even Alexander Mackenzie

unable to sell his grand scheme and not particularly interested in politics

Mackenzie returned to England at age forty-five

three years later married fourteen-year-old heiress Geddes Mackenzie of Avoch

two-thirds of the village of Avoch, Scotland was part of the Mackenzie estate

Alexander Mackenzie maintained two houses

one on the Avoch estate and another in London until his death [March 12, 1820])

DAVID THOMPSON CONTINUES HIS MAPPING OF THE NORTH WEST COMPANY ROUTE

Thompson journeyed eastward from Red Lake (Minnesota) -- March 24, 1798

he traveled toward Turtle Lake (Wisconsin) which he mistakenly declared

¹³⁶ Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations*, P. 231.

¹³⁷ Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations*, P. 234.

to be the headwaters of the Mississippi River
(he missed the river's source located at Lake Itasca about forty-five miles to the west)

DAVID THOMPSON COMPLETES HIS SURVEY OF THE UPPER MISSISSIPPI RIVER

Thompson continued on from the headwaters of the Mississippi River
to Lake Superior where he arrived -- May 1798
he surveyed its southern shore to Sault Ste. Marie
before surveying the northern shore of Lake Superior to Grand Portage
David Thompson completed his survey of 4,190 miles from Grand Portage, through Lake Winnipeg,
to the headwaters of the Assiniboine and Mississippi rivers,
as well as two sides of Lake Superior
Thompson located many North West Company trading houses
some of these were south of the new international border which meant
they would have to be given up to the Americans
As a result of Thompson's efforts North West Company relocated its headquarters
from Grand Portage to Fort Kaministiquia (later renamed Fort William)
on the north shore of Lake Superior at Thunder Bay, Ontario
to comply with demands of the [1794] Jay Treaty

DAVID THOMPSON CONDUCTS TRADE WITH THE INDIANS

David Thompson was given the task of developing trade with the Indians
he would have no liquor in his brigades nor would he use it in the trade for furs
once he was ordered by company partners
Donald McTavish and John McDonald of Garth
to take some kegs of whiskey for trade with the tribes in the mountains
Thompson selected a vicious, unbroken horse to pack the kegs
and then let it go through the rough country at its own speed
only splinters of the kegs remained when the brigade reached the trading post
Thompson reported he felt sure the same costly accident would occur
if another unwise attempt were made to transport liquor across the mountains
Nor'Wester David Thompson was goaded by his partners for his piety
devoutly religious, Thompson preached the moral life
to the voyageurs and coureurs-de-bois who traveled with him
seldom did an evening pass in camp that Thompson did not read aloud from his Bible
to his illiterate men as they smoked their clay pipes by the campfire
three chapters from the Old Testament
and three chapters from the New Testament,
and then he expounded their meaning

in “**most extraordinarily pronounced French**”¹³⁸

he grew to value the spiritual life of native Americans
Thompson was off again, this time through Rainy Lake to Lake Winnipeg -- July 14, 1798
he went up the Saskatchewan River to Hudson’s Bay Company’s Cumberland House
which was under the control of his friend Peter Fidler from the Grey Coat School days

DAVID THOMPSON AGAIN SURVEYS FOR NORTH WEST COMPANY

Half of the continent was blank and Thompson set out to fill in the map
arrangements with the North West Company to combine business with surveying
was mutually agreed upon
North West Company sent Thompson up to Lac La Biche (Alberta, Canada)
for this trip, he traveled by way of the Churchill River, through Lac La Ronge (Saskatchewan)
and on to Lac Ile-a-la-Crosse (Saskatchewan) then up the Beaver River
he arrived back at Lac la Biche -- September

DAVID THOMPSON EXPLORES NORTHERN ALBERTA

He set out from Lac la Biche (Alberta, Canada) -- March 1799
traveling first to Fort Augustus (near present day Edmonton)
before returning to Lac la Biche
He surveyed the Pembina River and Athabasca River to Lesser Slave Lake (all in Alberta)
he continued down the Athabasca River to the Clearwater River (at today’s Fort McMurray)
then traveled up the Clearwater River (then called tge Methy Portage River) to Methy Lake,
before moving on to Lac Ile-a-la-Crosse [where he arrived May 20])

DAVID THOMPSON TAKES A WIFE

David Thompson married at Ile-a-la-Crosse -- June 10, 1799
Charlotte Small was nearly fourteen years old and the daughter of a Cree Indian
and North West Company partner Patrick Small who had worked with Peter Pond
inter-racial marriages among whites and natives were accepted and even encouraged
by both sides to encourage kinship ties
Theirs was to be a lasting union, and perhaps a partnership as well
years later Thompson wrote “**My lovely wife is of the blood of these [Cree] people, speaking
their language, and well educated in the English language, which gives me a great advantage**”¹³⁹
(Charlotte’s first child, Fanny, was born two years later [1801]
seven sons and five more daughters followed
she accompanied him on many of his travels,

¹³⁸ Constance Lindsay Skinner, *Adventurers of Oregon*, P. 100.

¹³⁹ Jack Nisbet, *Source of the River*, P. 49.

and return with him to Montreal at the end of his career of exploration)
After his wedding, David Thompson traveled to Grand Portage
returning there with John McDonald of Garth (who married one of Charlotte's sisters)
as far as Fort George (near St. Paul, Alberta), Thompson spent the winter there

DAVID THOMPSON'S MAPS ARE ACCURATE

Latitude can be relatively easily fixed by observing the angle of the noonday sun
Longitude requires other methods
some of which involve knowing local time (observable from the sun)
and comparing it to the time at some other point
Thompson used Greenwich Observatory Time in England
Chronometers to keep Greenwich time were too fragile
to be carried across a roadless country
because of this surveying the wilderness lands presented far greater problems than at sea
Two methods of plotting longitude were used by Thompson
both of which took a lot of time
one was to observe Greenwich time, derivable from tables,
from the moment of an eclipse of one of Jupiter's moons,
observed through a telescope,
but considerable time had to be spent peering through the telescope
so as not to miss the exact moment of the eclipse
other method (called the method of lunar distances) involved observations
of the angle between the moon and two fixed stars
and then reference to a set of astronomical tables,
this was a reliable method but one which took about three hours to perform
Thompson spent endless hours making thousands of observations
for latitude and longitude by these methods
but through this work he was able to accurately fix the position
of thousands of points on his travels

ACTION HOUSE IS CONSTRUCTED BY HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY

James Bird had charge of Hudson's Bay Company's Edmonton House
he led a party of men up the Saskatchewan River to supervise the construction of Action House
near the North West Company's Rocky Mountain House -- 1799
Hudson's Bay Company hoped to attract the trade of the Kootenai Indians
who resided west of the Rockies
James Bird soon returned to Edmonton House
but probably resided at Acton House the following winter season 1799-[1800]

RUSSIAN-AMERICA COMPANY IS FOUNDED IN (TODAY'S ALASKA)

Czar Paul I consolidated the independent Russian traders into the Russian-America Company
he granted a trade monopoly of all coastal commerce above 55° north to run for twenty years
to the Russian-America Company headquartered in St. Petersburg, Russian-America (Alaska)
first company board meeting was held -- September 16, 1799
General Manager Alexander Andreyevich Baranov was named head of Russian-American Company
he was the sole governor of Russian-America and maintained his headquarters Kodiak (Alaska)
(company headquarters was moved to St. Petersburg [Alaska] in [1801])
Baranov provided leadership and stability to Russian trading operations in the New World
his devotion to the company and his fur traders resulted in vast prosperity for the organization
Baranov controlled settlements and trade as far north as Bristol Bay (Alaska)
and as far south as Ross, California
Russian-America was divided into several districts
each district had several storehouses or factories
each district was supervised by a sub-governor who reported to Baranov

ROCKY MOUNTAIN HOUSE IS ESTABLISHED BY THE NORTH WEST COMPANY

Nor'Wester Duncan McGillivry was instructed to set up Rocky Mountain House
on the Eastern side of the Rockies within close view of the great mountains
John McDonald of Garth led a North West Company party from Fort Augustus -- 1799
to construct Rocky Mountain House on the Saskatchewan River (near Calgary, Alberta)
(next year he was made a wintering partner in the North West Company)
Aboriginal peoples arrived at the site of Rocky Mountain House to build the fort
before construction could begin the site had to be cleared of a thick forest cover
felling trees, hauling logs, squaring timbers and sawing planks and boards
were the next back-breaking and time-consuming tasks
first structure constructed was the "trading house"
this was a large one-and-a-half or two-story building containing a trading room
storage room and "master's room"
second building put up was the "Victual House" where meat and other perishables
were preserved with ice cut from the river during the winter
next structure built was the blacksmith's house and forge
palisades and bastions and, lastly, the men's cabins were completed

MUCH MAINTANINCE WAS REQUIRED ON OUTPOSTS

Regular maintenance was required at the Rocky Mountain House
when the traders arrived in the autumn

tall grass would have to be cleared from around the fort
each autumn, the buildings were freshly chinked and whitewashed with mud
roofs were often re-insulated before the onset of (winter)
with hay lining the inside and soil on the outside
often, buildings needed to be replaced completely
or needed repairs to their roofs, chimneys, floors or windows
sections of the palisade, rotted or knocked down by wind, also might need replacing
snow removal was required in the (winter) months
When the site was vacated for the (summer), a controlled fire might be set around the fort
just prior to the traders' leaving to create a firebreak
and prevent bush fires from destroying the fort
doors and gates were often hidden in the woods
hardware, such as hinges, bolts and nails, usually made by the fort blacksmith,
were buried in a cache to prevent theft
on at least one occasion, the location of the cache, known only to two men
was forgotten and discovered by accident twenty years afterwards
(Spring) routine was reversed in the (autumn)
gates and doors were rehung and the fort put in order for another winter's business

TRADE FOR PELTS BEGAN TO DECLINE

Figures for the four year period [1798-1802] showed 48,500 skins were sold in China
where a capital investment of \$50,000 could yield \$284,000 in gross profits (before expenses)
One captain related he had collected as many as 6,000 fine furs in a single voyage
on one occasion he secured 560 of the best quality pelts in one day
Indians, however, had become independent contractors
they had become expert traders and negotiators -- they raised their prices
phenomenal profits could no longer be obtained [by 1802]

DIVIDING THE CONTINENT AT THE TURN OF THE NINETEENTH CENTURY

Spain controlled vast possessions in North America
in the area east of the Mississippi River Spain maintained weak control
over Florida and New Orleans by right of discovery, exploration and settlement
in the area West of the Mississippi River to the Rocky Mountains
Spain maintained control of the Southwest from (today's Texas to California)
Spain gave up her claim North of 42° (the California-Oregon border)
in the [1794] Third Nootka Convention
French possession in North America West of the Mississippi River was known as Louisiana Territory
this included all land to the Rocky Mountains south of Great Britain's Canada

which had been lost during the French and Indian War [1754–1763]
Great Britain claimed possession of both Canada and the Great Lakes region
she held the claims of discovery, exploration and settlement
Hudson's Bay Company and North West Company
were conducting a series of company wars along the western frontier
British maritime activities had slowed
only nine British vessels traded on the Northwest coast during the years [1800-1810]
Russia's possessions north of 55° north latitude were being developed
by the Russian-America Company's Alexander Andreyevich Baranov
but delivering trade goods from Russia to the company headquarters was difficult
and most furs were sold in China -- not Russia
but a lack of ships made this trade difficult and irregular
Baranov expanded his control south as far as California
United States maintained control of the Eastern seaboard of North America
in the region North of Spanish Florida, South of British Canada and East of the Mississippi River
thus surrounded the United States was trapped in the Appalachian Mountains and Eastward
and in the valley of the Ohio River which was contested by Great Britain